

teach  
yourself

# mandarin chinese

goal

all-around confidence

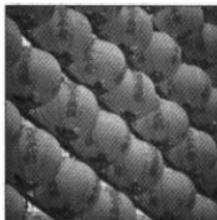
category

language

content

- learn to speak, understand and write chinese
- progress quickly beyond the basics
- explore the language in depth

be where you want to be with **teach yourself**



also available in a book/CD package

teach  
yourself

## **mandarin chinese**

elizabeth scurfield

- Do you want to cover the basics and progress fast?
- Do you want to be confident in a range of situations?
- Do you want to know how Chinese characters work?

**Mandarin Chinese** starts with the basics but moves at an energetic pace to give you a good level of understanding and speaking Mandarin, and reading and writing the Chinese characters that are used throughout the People's Republic. You will have lots of opportunity to practice the kind of language you will need to be able to communicate with confidence and understand Chinese culture.

**Elizabeth Scurfield** taught Chinese at the University of Westminster, London.

Why not try ● Mandarin Chinese Conversation  
● or visit [books.mcgraw-hill.com](http://books.mcgraw-hill.com)?

Cover ● ©Bohemian Nomad Picturemakers/Corbis ● Yellow Chinese lanterns

the leader in self-learning with more than 500 titles, covering all subjects  
be where you want to be with **teach yourself**



ISBN-13: 978-0-07-143032-6  
ISBN-10: 0-07-143032-6



5 1695

\$16.95 USA

\$22.95 CAN

9 780071 430326

**teach**<sup>®</sup>  
**yourself**

**chinese**  
elizabeth scurfield

For over 60 years, more than 50 million people have learnt over 750 subjects the **teach yourself** way, with impressive results.

be where you want to be  
with **teach yourself**

For UK order enquiries: please contact Bookpoint Ltd, 130 Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon, OX14 4SB. Telephone: +44 (0) 1235 827720. Fax: +44 (0) 1235 400454. Lines are open 09.00–17.00, Monday to Saturday, with a 24-hour message answering service. Details about our titles and how to order are available at [www.teachyourself.co.uk](http://www.teachyourself.co.uk)

For USA order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Customer Services, PO Box 545, Blacklick, OH 43004-0545, USA. Telephone: 1-800-722-4726. Fax: 1-614-755-5645.

For Canada order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Ryerson Ltd, 300 Water St, Whitby, Ontario, L1N 9B6, Canada. Telephone: 905 430 5000. Fax: 905 430 5020.

Long renowned as the authoritative source for self-guided learning – with more than 50 million copies sold worldwide – the **teach yourself** series includes over 500 titles in the fields of languages, crafts, hobbies, business, computing and education.

*British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data:* a catalogue record for this title is available from the British Library.

*Library of Congress Catalog Card Number:* on file.

First published in UK 1999 by Hodder Education, 338 Euston Road, London, NW1 3BH.

First published in US 1999 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc.

This edition published 2003.

The **teach yourself** name is a registered trade mark of Hodder Headline.

Copyright © 1999, 2003 Elizabeth Scurfield

*In UK:* All rights reserved. Apart from any permitted use under UK copyright law, no part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording, or any information, storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher or under licence from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited. Further details of such licences (for reprographic reproduction) may be obtained from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited, of Saffron House, 6–10 Kirby Street, London, EC1N 8TS.

*In US:* All rights reserved. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

Typeset by Graphicraft Limited, Hong Kong.

Printed in Great Britain for Hodder Education, a division of Hodder Headline, 338 Euston Road, London, NW1 3BH, by Cox & Wyman Ltd, Reading, Berkshire.

The publisher has used its best endeavours to ensure that the URLs for external websites referred to in this book are correct and active at the time of going to press. However, the publisher and the author have no responsibility for the websites and can make no guarantee that a site will remain live or that the content will remain relevant, decent or appropriate.

Hodder Headline's policy is to use papers that are natural, renewable and recyclable products and made from wood grown in sustainable forests. The logging and manufacturing processes are expected to conform to the environmental regulations of the country of origin.

Impression number	15	14	13	12	11	10
Year	2010	2009	2008	2007		

# contents

<b>Introduction</b>	the Chinese language, romanization, general introduction to sounds and tones, working through the book.	x
<b>list of abbreviations</b>		xxiii
<b>01</b>	<b>making friends (I)</b>  saying <i>Hello</i> , observing basic courtesies, saying <i>please</i> and <i>thank you</i> , the order of names in Chinese.	1
<b>02</b>	<b>making friends (II)</b>  making simple introductions, exchanging greetings, addressing people correctly, making simple apologies, measure words, numbers 0–99.	6
<b>03</b>	<b>making friends (III)</b>  asking someone if they have children, asking how old the children are, asking if someone is married or has a boyfriend/girlfriend, inviting someone to your home, telling the time, question words and their position in the sentence.	13
<b>04</b>	<b>at the LIs' (I)</b>  saying where you come from and what nationality you are, Chinese equivalents	25

	of foreign names, making appropriate remarks and responses during a meal.	
05	<b>at the Lis' (ii)</b> describing the rooms in an apartment/house, thanking your hosts for their hospitality and understanding their responses, asking questions in the form of alternatives, expressing direction towards or away from the speaker, auxiliary verbs.	37
06	<b>in the house</b> describing the appearance of a house and garden in simple terms, describing the furniture and appliances in each room, describing the most common items in each room.	51
07	<b>my family</b> talking about yourself and your family, saying how old you are, comparing and contrasting.	57
08	<b>my home</b> describing your living conditions, more about directional endings, using the conjunctions <i>before</i> , <i>when</i> and <i>after</i> , saying where places and things are.	68
09	<b>hotels</b> breakfast vocabulary for staying in a Chinese hotel, asking people if they have ever done something, using question words in a non-question way.	80
10	<b>weather, dates and seasons</b> the weather and seasons in Beijing, what Chinese people do when the weather is fine or when it is freezing, saying that something is happening, the months of the year, the days of the week, expressing the duration of something.	93
11	<b>In the restaurant</b> <b>guānxì</b> in China, expressing approximate numbers, saying <i>first</i> , <i>second</i> , <i>third</i> , etc., the difference between <b>cái</b> and <b>jiù</b> .	108

12	<b>grammar review</b>	122
	common measure words, denominations of money, time words and expressions, resultative verbs, directional endings or complements, auxiliary verbs, conjugations.	
13	<b>an introduction to Chinese characters</b>	132
	the earliest characters, the evolution of characters, how characters are composed, radicals or significs, how Chinese children learn to write characters, some basic rules for writing characters, recognizing some useful public notices and signs.	
14	<b>shopping</b>	149
	asking for things in shops, asking the price, Chinese money, the stroke order of useful Chinese characters and their radicals.	
15	<b>buying tickets (I)</b>	160
	buying tickets for entertainments, giving the date, more about the stroke order of characters, China's main dynasties.	
16	<b>buying tickets (II)</b>	168
	telephone numbers, describing the characters in your Chinese name, saying something is going to happen soon, more about radicals.	
17	<b>directions and transport</b>	177
	famous places of interest in and around Tiananmen Square, asking for and understanding directions, the points of the compass, expressing the distance between two points, place words, more about the stroke order of difficult characters.	
18	<b>at the post office</b>	189
	buying stamps, sending letters and parcels, moving the direct object in front of the verb using <i>bă</i> , more about the stroke order of difficult characters.	

19	<b>at the railway station</b>	200
	buying railway tickets, Chinese trains, expressing similarities, expressing percentages and fractions, Chinese festivals, more about foreign names expressed in Chinese.	
20	<b>change money?</b>	214
	changing money, opening an account in China, exchange rates, emphasizing that something has to be done.	
21	<b>traveller's notes</b>	225
	expressing two actions going on simultaneously, Chinese proverbs, abbreviations in Chinese, similarities and dissimilarities, expressing the passive, when to use <i>chuān</i> and when to use <i>dài</i> for <i>to wear</i> , <i>yīn</i> and <i>yáng</i> .	
22	<b>farewell to all that!</b>	241
	making a toast, giving presents and making appropriate remarks when receiving them, exclamations, the Chinese zodiac, more about Chinese proverbs, classical Chinese poetry.	
	<b>key to the exercises</b>	259
	<b>Chinese–English vocabulary</b>	284
	<b>English–Chinese vocabulary</b>	325
	<b>character texts for chapters 1–5 and 7–11</b>	343
	<b>index</b>	354

## Acknowledgements

My grateful thanks to all those who with their encouragement, criticism and help in all forms (from typing to welcome cups of tea) have made this publication possible.

My special thanks to Paula Jervis who willingly gave hours of her expertise on the text and recording and without whose hard work the Vocabularies would never have appeared.

## About the author

Elizabeth Scurfield graduated with a First Class Honours degree in Chinese from the School of Oriental and African Studies in London. She has over 30 years' experience of teaching Chinese to beginners successfully. She is former Chair of the Department of Modern Languages at the University of Westminster in London.

# introduction

x

The first question you may ask is Why learn Chinese? The answers could vary enormously based on your particular interests but I offer a few tentative suggestions here. The Chinese are the largest single ethnic grouping in the world, so a form of Chinese is spoken by more people than any other language. Chinese is also the world's oldest language, its written records stretching back about 3500 years. Surely a good reason for more people to learn it? Most people imagine Chinese must be a very difficult language to learn. However, after shedding some of the possible preconceptions about language that you may have, you may well find that spoken Chinese is not as difficult as you had thought – you may even find it comparatively easy! The written language is a different kettle of fish entirely, being made up of individual characters which do have to be memorized but hopefully Chapter 13 will whet your appetite and make you eager for more.

China's cultural and philosophical heritage is enormous, a rich storehouse of knowledge and wisdom waiting to be tapped and although it would be foolish to pretend that by working through this book you will have access to very much of it in the original, it will, at the very least, have given you the possibility of seeing a little into that inscrutable Oriental mind and of making interesting and valuable comparisons with your own culture and way of thinking. I have found these reasons stimulating enough to go on studying Chinese for over 30 years and propose to go on doing so for at least another 30 or so! The Chinese have a saying:

Xué dào lǎo, huó dào lǎo, hái yǒu sānfēn xué bu dào.  
Study reach old, live reach old, still have three-tenths study not reach.

This is certainly true as far as Chinese is concerned, but the rewards are great. It will take time, but if you can keep your mind open you will be surprised at the results.

*Zhù nǐ xuéxí yúkuài!*  
Wish you study happy!

You will find out what the ‘accents’ over the words mean on pp. xiii and xvi–xx.

## The Chinese language

Some of you will have heard of the term ‘Mandarin’ or ‘Mandarin Chinese’ which was how the West referred to the language spoken by the officials or ‘mandarins’ at the Imperial Court. It was then broadened to refer to the northern dialect, a version of which is spoken by over 70% of the Chinese or Han people and has become the *lingua franca* for the whole of China. This national language is known in China as *putonghua* ‘common speech’ which is now sometimes referred to in the West as Modern Standard Chinese although the term Mandarin still lingers on. Beijing (Peking) pronunciation is taken as the standard but there are many regional variations, some not easy to cope with. Try and find someone who claims to have a fairly standard accent to practise with in the first instance and listen hard to the recording which is available with this book. *Putonghua* is taught in schools and used in universities and colleges all over China. The majority of TV and radio programmes as well as films for the cinema are also made in *putonghua*. This means that hopefully you will be understood all over China although you will sometimes have difficulty in understanding non-standard accents. Chinese have this problem too!

*Putonghua* is known as *huayu* in overseas Chinese communities and as *guoyu* ‘national language’ in Taiwan, but it is all the same language. There are many different dialects in Chinese, some of which are as different from one another as say English is from French, although they all have the same written language. The Cantonese dialect *guangdonghua* is spoken in Canton, Hong Kong and the New Territories and by many of the Chinese you will find in Britain. Many more Hong Kong Chinese are now learning *putonghua* so this is the one to go for!

## Romanization

The written language does not have a phonetic alphabet but various systems have been devised for transcribing Chinese sounds into the Latin script. The standard form in use today is known as *pinyin* (literally 'spell sound') which was adopted as the official system of the People's Republic of China in 1958. It has now been almost universally adopted in the West for transliterating Chinese personal and place names, replacing the Wade-Giles system which had been used previously. A few examples using the two different systems are given below.

<i>Pinyin</i>	<i>Wade-Giles</i> (and earlier)
Deng Xiaoping	Teng Hsiao-p'ing
Mao Zedong	Mao Tse-tung
Beijing	Peking
Guangzhou	Kwangchow (Canton)
Tianjin	Tientsin

*Pinyin* is used as a tool to teach the correct pronunciation of the Chinese language to children starting elementary school and to enable them to write little essays in Chinese before they have mastered enough characters. It is taught for a relatively short time in the north where *putonghua* is widely spoken as a first language but for a longer period in the south where many children speak a different dialect at home. Difficult characters in children's books often have the *pinyin* in brackets next to them as an aid to learning. Many street signs in big cities are written in *pinyin* as well as characters, which can be quite useful when you are trying to find your way around!

Mao Zedong once expressed the aim of eventually turning the Chinese written language into an alphabetic system of writing but this idea seems to have been quietly dropped. Aesthetically and visually pleasing, Chinese characters are too much part of the Chinese national heritage to disappear without a very long struggle, if ever.

The Chinese language is essentially still based on the character, which is *per se* monosyllabic (one character representing one idea) so the single-syllable morpheme is the basic unit in Chinese. As a result, there is still discussion in China as to what units of speech should be written together in *pinyin*. In general I have tried to keep to the system adopted by the Beijing Language

[and Culture] University for its textbooks, using the *Xiandai Hanyu Cidian* (Modern Chinese Dictionary) produced by the Chinese Academy of Social Sciences as a definitive reference. Thus ‘syllables’ are written separately except where they are seen as being one idea. I have, however, kept verb-objects separate for clarity.

## Sounds and tones: general introduction

There are just over 400 basic monosyllables in Chinese which seems an incredibly small number and must be the result of sound-simplification over a few thousand years. It is not surprising therefore that the language has so many homophones, but the difficulty is alleviated somewhat by the fact that Chinese is a tonal language. Tones are obviously one way of coping with this phonetic poverty. There are four tones in *putonghua*, so by multiplying 400 by four we get a total of approximately 1600 separate items, although not all basic sounds exist in all four tones. The other way is by combining two syllables with a similar meaning into one ‘word’. For example, *ài* and *qíng* mean ‘love’ and ‘feelings’ respectively and could be confused with other ‘words’ if used separately, but together they can only mean ‘love’ *àiqíng*. This makes communication considerably easier all round.

What we mean by ‘syllable’ in Chinese is usually composed of an initial and a final. The initial, if there is one, is a consonant at the beginning of the syllable and the final is the rest of the syllable, e.g. *hang* in which *h* is the initial and *ang* is the final.

### Initials

Modern Chinese has 21 initials, 23 if you count ‘w’ and ‘y’ which some people regard as semi-vowels. There is also a sound ‘ng’ which only occurs at the end of a syllable as in English. These include six pairs (i.e. 12 initials of which six are aspirated and six are not). These 12 are all voiceless. (Aspirated means that the air is puffed out strongly when you make these sounds.) If you hold a piece of paper in front of your mouth it should move when you make an aspirated sound, but not when you make an unaspirated one. Voiceless means that the vocal chords do not vibrate. The six pairs are listed on the next page.

Unaspirated	Aspirated	Description (all voiceless)
'b' like b in <i>bore</i>	'p' like p in <i>poor</i>	labial plosive
'd' like d in <i>door</i>	't' like t in <i>tore</i>	alveolar plosive
'g' like g in <i>guard</i>	'k' like c in <i>card</i>	velar plosive
'z' like ds in <i>adds</i>	'c' like ts in <i>its</i>	blade-alveolar affricate
'zh' like j in <i>jelly</i>	'ch' like ch in <i>chilly</i>	blade-palatal (or retroflex) affricate <i>The tongue must be curled back</i>
'j' like g in <i>genius</i>	'q' like ch in <i>chew</i>	front-palatal affricate <i>Tongue flat, corners of lips drawn back as far as possible</i>

Other small groups could be:

'm' like m in <i>me</i> 'n' like n in <i>need</i> 'ng' like ng in <i>sing</i>	voiced, labial, nasal voiced, alveolar, nasal voiced, velar, nasal
'sh' like sh in <i>shy</i> 'r' like r in <i>ray</i>	voiceless blade-alveolar fricative <i>The tongue must be curled back</i> voiced, blade-palatal fricative <i>The tongue must be curled back with only slight friction</i>
's' like s in <i>say</i> 'x' like sh in <i>sheet</i>	voiceless blade-alveolar fricative <i>Tongue flat, corners of lips drawn back</i> voiceless, palatal fricative <i>Tongue flat, corners of lips drawn back as far as possible</i>
'f' like f in <i>fan</i> 'h' like ch in <i>loch</i>  'l' like l in <i>lie</i>	voiceless labio-dental fricative voiceless velar fricative <i>Arch the back of the tongue towards the roof of the mouth</i> voiced alveolar lateral
'w' like w in <i>way</i> 'y' like y in <i>yell</i>	voiced labial-velar approximant voiced palatal approximant

- i ‘c’, ‘q’ and ‘x’ bear little resemblance to Western alphabetic values so take particular care with them.
- ii Pay attention to the retroflexes ‘zh’, ‘ch’, ‘sh’ and ‘r’ which are made with the tongue curled back. Southern Chinese have difficulty with them too!

The above examples are only approximate equivalents. Purchase of the accompanying recording is strongly recommended.

## Difficult initials

 ‘z’, ‘c’, ‘s’ as in ‘za’, ‘ca’, ‘sa’	‘zh’, ‘ch’ as in ‘zhu’, ‘chu’
‘j’, ‘q’, ‘x’ as in ‘jian’, ‘qian’, ‘xian’	‘sh’, ‘r’ as in ‘she’, ‘re’, ‘he’
	
‘a’ like a in father ‘ai’ like i in bite ‘ao’ like ow in cow ‘an’ like an in man ‘ang’ like ang in bang	‘o’ like ore in more ‘ou’ like o in go ‘ong’ like ung in Jung
‘e’ like ur in fur ‘ei’ like ay in play ‘en’ like un in under ‘eng’ like ung in dung	‘u’ like oo in moo ‘ua’ like ua in suave ‘uo’ like war in war ‘uai’ like wi in swipe ‘ui’ like weigh in weigh ‘uan’ like wan in wangle ‘un’ like won in wondrous ‘uang’ like w-ong in wrong without the ‘r’ (very approximate)
‘i’ (after z, c, s, zh, ch, sh and r only) like er in wonder ‘i’ like ea in tea ‘ia’ like ja in German ja ‘iao’ like eow in meow ‘ie’ like ie in French Pierre ‘iu’ like yo in yo-yo ‘ian’ like yen in yen ‘in’ like in in bin ‘iang’ like yang in yang ‘ing’ like ing in ring ‘iong’ like Jung in Jung (the psycho-analyst)  (‘y’ replaces ‘i’ at the beginning of syllables if there is no initial consonant)	(‘w’ replaces ‘u’ at the beginning of syllables if there is no initial consonant)
	‘ü’ like eu in pneumonia ‘üe’ like eu of pneumatic plus air said quickly ‘üan’ like eu of pneumatic plus end said quickly ‘ün’ like eu of pneumatic plus pun said quickly  (Written as yu, yue, yuan and yun as complete syllables)
	er as in err making the ‘r’ retroflex

## Finals

There are 36 finals in Chinese. A final is a simple or compound vowel or a vowel plus a nasal consonant. A few ‘syllables’ may have no initial consonant but every one has to have a vowel. The tables above should be of some assistance in guiding you, although the recording is essential if you are to attempt more than an approximate pronunciation of the sounds.

- i The ‘-i’ in *zi*, *ci*, *si*, *zhi*, *chi*, *shi* and *ri* is quite different from the ‘-i’ with all the other consonants which is a long ‘-i’. This ‘i’ is more or less only there for cosmetic reasons because no syllable can occur without a vowel. Say the consonant and ‘sit on it’ and you have the sound.
- ii ‘e’ is made by dropping the jaw straight down. Get hold of your jaw, pull it down and make the sound!
- iii ‘a’, ‘i’, ‘o’, ‘u’ and ‘ü’ – the degree to which the mouth is opened gets narrower and narrower as the lips get rounder and rounder. (Look in a mirror!)
- iv ‘ang’, ‘eng’, ‘ong’ are nasalized vowels. The mouth aperture gets narrower, the lips rounder. Hold your nose as you practise these sounds. You should be able to feel the vibration!
- v ‘-ian’ is pronounced as ‘-ien’.
- vi ‘ü’ occurs only with the consonants ‘n’, ‘l’, ‘j’, ‘q’ and ‘x’. As ‘j’, ‘q’ and ‘x’ cannot occur as j+u, q+u or x+u, the Chinese in their wisdom have seen fit to omit the umlaut (‘·’) over the ‘u’ in *ju*, *qu* and *xu*! N and l, however, occur as both *nu* and *nü*, *lu* and *lü* so the umlaut has been retained.
- vii The ‘-r’ suffix may be added to some words e.g. *bian* → *bianr*, *wan* → *wanr*, *hai* → *hair*, *tian* → *tianr* and is used extensively in the Beijing dialect. Normal ‘spelling’ practice is to add the ‘-r’ but you can choose whether or not to say it. I have sometimes used it so that you can become familiar with it.

## Tones

The tone is the variation of pitch whether it be rising, falling or continuing. In speech we move smoothly from one tone to another, not in leaps and bounds. Every syllable in Chinese has its own definite tone and so tones are as important as vowels and consonants in forming syllables. *Putonghua* has four distinct tones so almost every basic monosyllable can be rendered in four different ways. These four tones all fall within your natural voice range, so some people speak Chinese at a higher or lower pitch than others because their voices are naturally higher or

lower. You don't have to have a particular type of voice to speak Chinese. Now to the four tones themselves.

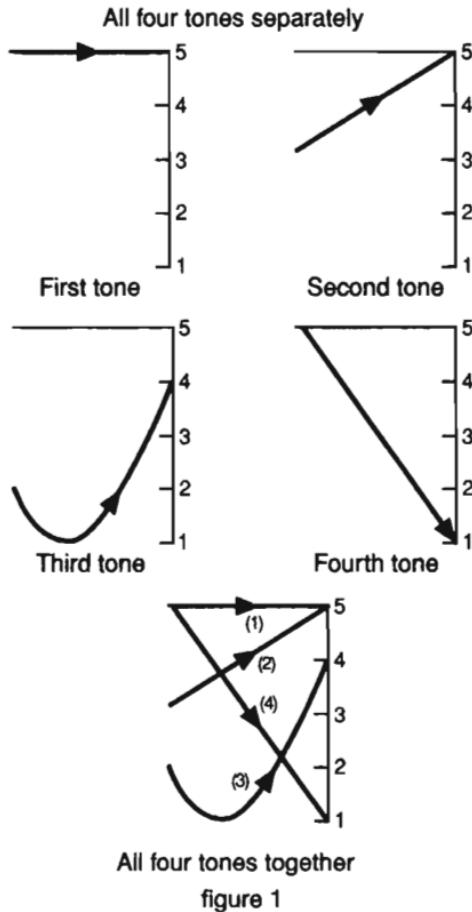
The first tone is a high, level tone and is represented as ˉ. The tonemark is placed over the vowel (if there is only one vowel) e.g. *zhōng* 'middle' or on the main vowel of a syllable where there are two or three vowels, e.g. *gāo* 'tall', but *tiē* 'to stick'.

The second tone is a high, rising tone and is represented by the tonemark ˊ, e.g. *guó* 'country'.

The third tone is a falling and rising tone. It descends from below the middle of the voice range to nearly the bottom and then rises to a point somewhere near the top. It is represented by the tonemark ˇ, e.g. *jiǎn* 'to cut'.

The fourth tone is a falling tone. It falls from high to low and is represented by the tonemark ˋ, e.g. *zhù* 'to live'.

Figure 1 may help to make this clearer:



The common problems that occur are:

- a pitching the first tone too high,
- b getting the second and fourth tones confused,
- c getting down on the third tone but not being able to get up again.

Below are the solutions and how to practise the tones (you may need a mirror):

*First tone:* Pitch it where *you* feel comfortable. Say ‘oo’ as in ‘zoo’ and keep going for as long as you can. You should be able to keep it up for maybe half a minute. When you have got used to that, change to another vowel sound and practise that in the same way and so on.

*Second tone:* Raise your eyebrows every time you attempt a second tone until you get used to it. This is infallible!

*Third tone:* Drop your chin onto your neck and raise it again. Then practise the sound doing the movement at the same time.

*Fourth tone:* Stamp your foot gently and then accompany this action with the relevant sound.

Try saying two third tones together. Difficult isn’t it? When this happens, the first one is said as a second tone but it is still marked as a third in the text, otherwise you may think that the syllable in question is always a second tone, which it is not: *Nǐ hǎo* is said as *Ní hǎo* ‘How are you?’ If *three* third tones occur together, the first two are said as second tones: *Wǒ yě hǎo* is said as *Wó yé hǎo* ‘I’m OK too’.

*Bù* (不) is *fourth* tone but it becomes second before another fourth tone. As this is a straightforward rule I have marked *bu* as second tone when it occurs before a fourth in the text.

*Yi* (一) is first tone as an ordinary number: *yī* ‘one’, *shíyī* ‘eleven’, *yīyuè* ‘January’ but when it precedes other syllables it is fourth tone before first, second or third tones and becomes second tone before another fourth tone: *Yìxiē* ‘some’, *yìqǐ* ‘together’, *yílù* ‘all the way’. It has been so indicated in the text. (Many dictionaries always list *bu* and *yi* as fourth tone and first tone respectively.)

Note that in the phrase *yí ge rén* ‘one measure word person’ the *ge* is said without a tone, although it is actually fourth, but it still carries enough weight to change the *yi* into a second tone.

**Neutral tone:** some syllables in Chinese are toneless or occur in the neutral tone.

- i Particles are always in the neutral tone.
- ii The second half of a reduplicated word is often in the neutral tone: *gēge* ‘elder brother’, *māma* ‘mum’, *bāba* ‘dad’, *mèimeimei* ‘younger sister’.
- iii Syllables such as *zi* that only have a ‘fill-in’ function (i.e. to make the word disyllabic) are toneless: *bēizi* ‘cup’, *bèizi* ‘duvet’, *zhuōzi* ‘table’, *yǐzi* ‘chair’.
- iv The second syllable in compound words is sometimes toneless and is so indicated in the text. In another context it may have a full tone. Some people may pronounce certain words with a tone, some without, as in the word *dōngbiān* ‘east side’ which may also be pronounced as *dōngbian* particularly when ‘r’ is added: *dōngbian(r)*.

In actual speech, tones are rarely given their full value but they have to be learnt as if they were. Stress and intonation are also very important but this is best learnt by imitating the speakers on the recording as closely as possible without thinking too much about individual tones, and by listening to any Chinese native speaker. Intonation does not *remove* tones, it only modifies them. Learn the tone which goes with a word and as you listen and speak more you will hopefully find that you increasingly pick up the correct tones and intonation.

Just as a final word on tones, it’s amazing how much most Chinese understand even if your tones are largely wrong so don’t give up just because you think you haven’t got the right ear! The Chinese love punning so I expect they enjoy lots of jokes at our expense, but does it really matter? Tones come with practice, listening and imitating – don’t try too hard with them.

The following ten sounds, each written in the four different tones and therefore represented by four different characters, should serve to illustrate some of the points I have been making.

## 四声 (Four tones)

1 一	姨	椅	亿
yī (one)	yí (aunt)	yǐ (chair)	yì (hundred million)
2 屋	无	五	雾
wū (house)	wú (none)	wǔ (five)	wù (fog)
3 烟	盐	眼	燕
yān (cigarette)	yán (salt)	yǎn (eye)	yàn (swallow)
4 妈	麻	马	骂
mā (mother)	má (hemp)	mǎ (horse)	mà (scold)
5 八	拔	把	爸
bā (eight)	bá (to pull up)	bǎ (to hold)	bà (father)
6 靴	学	雪	血
xuē (boot)	xué (study)	xuě (snow)	xuè (blood)
7 汤	糖	躺	烫
tāng (soup)	táng (sugar)	tǎng (to lie down)	tàng (scalding hot)
8 腰	摇	咬	药
yāo (waist)	yáo (shake)	yǎo (to bite)	yào (medicines)
9 枪	墙	抢	呛
qiāng (gun)	qiáng (wall)	qiǎng (to rob)	qiāng (irritate the throat)
10 书	熟	鼠	树
shū (book)	shú (ripe)	shǔ (a rat)	shù (tree)

## Working through the book

A few sentences introduce the text of each chapter. By Chapter 20 this introduction is also written in Chinese. Almost all the texts are dialogues which allow scope for good, colloquial Chinese to be used, but the continuous passages used in

Chapters 7–10 mean that a great deal of useful vocabulary can be introduced in a fairly natural way.

Chapters 1–5 are in *pinyin* romanization with a literal translation directly underneath to enable you to see how the ‘nuts and bolts’ of the language work. There is an idiomatic translation on the right.

Chapter 6 shows many of the objects to be found in a house and lists the vocabulary for them. This can be used for reference at a later stage.

Chapters 7–10 are in *pinyin* with an English translation directly underneath. The beginning and end of each sentence in Chinese and English is indicated with a ‘/’ to enable you to mentally ‘line up’ the two more easily.

Chapter 11 has the dialogue in *pinyin* with an English translation following. This will give you a real chance to see how much you have learnt without referring to the English as soon as you hit a problem!

Chapter 12 is a small reference grammar, expanding on a few of the points referred to in the chapters themselves. Some of them are presented in tabular form for ease of reference.

Chapter 13 gives an introduction to Chinese characters, their background and how to write them, with many useful examples.

The characters used in this book are always in the simplified script. Simplified characters are used in the People’s Republic of China, Singapore and increasingly in overseas Chinese communities. They are commonly taught to foreign students learning Chinese. Full-form characters are used in Taiwan and Hong Kong (although this may change in the future in the case of Hong Kong).

Chapters 14–18 are in characters with the *pinyin* romanization underneath. The vocabularies show all the new characters used in that chapter even if they have appeared in *pinyin* in previous chapters. In addition the vocabularies of 14 and 15 show the radicals or significs of all the characters introduced in that particular chapter. 14–18 also contain tables showing the stroke order of Chinese characters.

Chapters 19–22 have the character text in a block followed by the *pinyin* also in a block. You can decide to work in *pinyin* or characters or both.

Some of you may not want to get too involved in the learning and writing of characters, so I have made it possible to work through the entire book almost solely in *pinyin*, but do still read the introductory chapter on characters (Chapter 13) to understand how they work, as this is essential background knowledge as well as good fun. Conversely, those who are particularly interested in characters can go back to Chapters 1–11 and write out the texts in Chinese characters for extra practice. You will find the character texts for Chapters 1–5 and 7–11 at the back of the book, pp.343–53.

Within each chapter, the text appears first followed by the vocabulary in the order in which it appears. In the vocabularies I have sometimes split up a word by means of a dash to show how the different parts fit together but have kept to the orthodox system in the text, grammar points and exercises. The grammar section deals with the new grammar points, also in the order in which they appear in the text. Any exercise relating to a particular grammar point follows on directly after that grammar point. Each chapter also contains at least one item of interest about the Chinese way of life (i). It should be noted, however, that China is changing so fast that some situations and any prices or figures and percentages that occur in the book should not be taken as accurate.

At the end of each chapter are exercises of a more general kind. Both these and the information passages often contain useful supplementary vocabulary. The new words in the exercises which do not appear in the vocabulary proper of a subsequent chapter are included in the Vocabularies at the back of the book, but without a chapter number. This is to avoid confusion with the new words which occur in the texts. (It was impossible to include all supplementary vocabulary for reasons of space.)

A Key to the Exercises precedes the Chinese (*pinyin*)–English Vocabulary and the English–Chinese (*pinyin*) Vocabulary which give all the vocabulary items (*pinyin* and English) which have occurred in the texts in alphabetical order. Note that in the English–Chinese (*pinyin*) Vocabulary, entries beginning with ‘be’ have been listed under the second item for ease of reference so that ‘be willing’ for instance will be found under ‘willing’, ‘to be engaged’ under ‘engaged’ and so on. This also applies to similar entries such as ‘feel jealous’ which are glossed under ‘jealous’. Do remember that variations are possible in some of the answers to the exercises so don’t assume you’re always

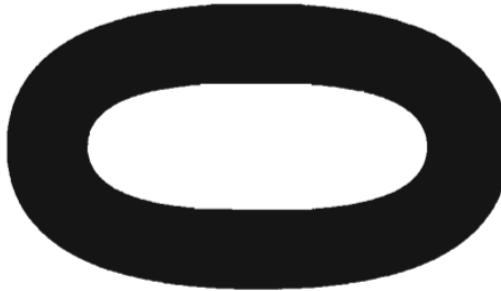
wrong. Bear in mind too that the exercises are there to help you to learn as well as to practise what you have learnt, so not all the answers will be immediately obvious.

A final note regarding Chinese grammar. Over 30 years of experience have taught me that I should never be too categorical as far as Chinese grammar is concerned and always to preface remarks with 'nearly', 'always', 'almost invariably', etc. If I have forgotten to do so at any point in this book please regard it as said. *Putonghua* is still developing as a language so that even Chinese linguistics experts may, for example, hold a three-day meeting to discuss '*le*'. It is as exciting to be in on this as it is to be learning a language with its roots 3500 years in the past – with Chinese you have both!

## List of abbreviations

adj.	adjective	n	noun
adv.	adverb	N	proper name
aux. v.	auxiliary verb	num.	numeral
CDE	compound	o	object
	directional ending	pp	pronoun plural
coll.	colloquial	ps	pronoun singular
conj.	conjunction	PW	place-word
DE	directional ending	prep.	preposition
dem. adj.	demonstrative	QW	question word
	adjective	RV	resultative verb
dem. p.	demonstrative	RVE	resultative verb
	pronoun		ending
interj.	interjection	s	subject
MW	measure word	TW	time word
neg.	negative	v	verb
		v-o	verb-object

*Note:* I have chosen what I feel to be the most helpful grammatical descriptions. Other people may well use another term for auxiliary verb, resultative verb and so on.



# making friends (I)

In this chapter you will learn

- how to say *hello*
- how to observe basic courtesies
- how to say *please* and *thank you*
- the order of names in Chinese

► Mr King (*Wáng xiānsheng*) has come to China to teach English at Beijing University. Mr Li (*Lǐ xiānsheng*) is a friend and colleague of Mr King's Chinese teacher in Britain. The meeting takes place in Mr Li's office.

<b>Lǐ</b>	<i>Wáng xiānsheng, nǐ hǎo!</i> King/first-born/you/good/	How do you do, Mr King.
<b>Wáng</b>	<i>Lǐ xiānsheng, nǐ hǎo!</i> Li/first-born/you/good/	How do you do, Mr Li.
<b>Lǐ</b>	<i>Qǐng zuò.</i> Invite/sit/	Please, sit down.
<b>Wáng</b>	<i>Xièxie.</i> Thank/	Thank you.
<b>Lǐ</b>	<i>Qǐng hē kāfēi.</i> Invite/drink/coffee/	Have some coffee.
<b>Wáng</b>	<i>Xièxie, wǒ bù hē kāfēi.</i> Thank/I/not/drink/coffee/	No thanks, I don't drink coffee.
<b>Lǐ</b>	<i>Nàme, Zhōngguó chá</i> So/middle country/tea/	Would you like some
	<i>xíng bu xíng?</i> be OK/not/be OK/	China tea then?
<b>Wáng</b>	<i>Xíng, xièxie nǐ! Wǒ hěn</i> Be OK/thank/you/I/very/	Yes, thank you, I'm very
	<i>xǐhuan hē Zhōngguó chá.</i> like/drink/middle country/tea/	fond of China tea.

<b>xiānsheng</b> (n)	<i>Mr, gentleman</i>
<b>nǐ</b> (ps)	<i>you</i>
<b>hǎo</b> (adj.)	<i>good</i>
<b>qǐng</b> (v)	<i>to invite</i>
<b>zuò</b> (v)	<i>to sit</i>
<b>hē</b> (v)	<i>to drink</i>
<b>kāfēi</b> (n)	<i>coffee</i>
<b>xièxie</b> (v)	<i>to thank</i>
<b>wǒ</b> (ps)	<i>I, me</i>
<b>bù</b> (neg.)	<i>not</i>
<b>nàme</b>	<i>in that case, so</i>
<b>Zhōngguó</b> (N)	<i>China</i>
<b>chá</b> (n)	<i>tea</i>
<b>xíng</b> (v)	<i>to be all right</i>
<b>hěn</b> (adv.)	<i>very</i>
<b>xǐhuan</b> (v)	<i>to like</i>

# Grammar

## 1 Names

In Chinese, names always appear in the following order: surname, given name (Christian name), title (when used), e.g. *Máo Zédōng tóngzhì*, where *Máo* is the surname, *Zédōng* the given name and *tóngzhì* ‘comrade’.

## 2 *Nǐ hǎo*

Some Chinese adjectives can also function as verbs so *hǎo* means ‘to be good’ as well as ‘good’. (Some people call such adjectives stative verbs.) Thus no separate verb for ‘to be’ is used. Note word order in ‘*Wáng xiānsheng, nǐ hǎo*’. Mr King comes first in Chinese.

## 3 Use of *qǐng*

*Qǐng* means ‘to invite or to request somebody to do something’. Do not think of it as ‘please’ as this will create problems with word order later on. Note also that Chinese verbs are invariable, the same form is used throughout.

## 4 Negation with *bù*

With one exception (the verb ‘to have’ *yǒu*), all verbs are negated by putting *bù* in front of them.

## 5 Questions ‘*xíng bu xíng?*’

One common way of asking a question in Chinese is to put the positive and negative forms of the verb together in that order: *Xíng bu xíng?* ‘Is it all right (or not)?’ The answer is not ‘yes’ or ‘no’ but either the positive form of the verb, in this case *xíng* or the negative form, i.e. *bù xíng*. (This construction is often referred to as the choice-type question form.) Note that the second half of the question, i.e. *bù* plus the verb, is sometimes written without tones as it is normally said unstressed in everyday speech. I have followed this convention at times to familiarize you with it.

## 6 Position of adverbs

Most adverbs in Chinese precede the verb, e.g. 'I like you very much' is *Wǒ hěn xǐhuān nǐ*.

## 7 Tone of *bù*

*Bù* is normally fourth tone (·) but changes to second tone (·) when followed by another fourth tone, e.g. *bú zuò* not *bù zuò*. Also note that in *Xíng bu xíng?*, *bu* is toneless.

### Exercise 1.1

Make the following sentences negative:

*Wǒ hē kāfēi* → *Wǒ bù hē kāfēi*. (Check the tone-mark on *bu* is correct).

- 1 *Wǒ zuò.*
- 2 *Nǐ hǎo.*
- 3 *Wǒ hē chá.*
- 4 *Nǐ xǐhuān Zhōngguó.*
- 5 *Lǐ xiānsheng xièxie wǒ.*
- 6 *Wáng xiānsheng qǐng nǐ hē Zhōngguó chá.*

### Exercise 1.2

Make the following statements into questions and then answer them first in the positive and then in the negative:

*Nǐ hē chá.* → *Nǐ hē bu hē chá?* → *Wǒ hē chá.*  
*Wǒ bù hē chá.*

- 1 *Wǒ xǐhuān hē kāfēi.*
- 2 *Nǐ xièxie wǒ.*
- 3 *Wáng xiānsheng qǐng wǒ zuò.*
- 4 *Lǐ xiānsheng xǐhuān hē shuǐ* (water).

### Exercise 1.3

Translate into colloquial English:

- 1 *Wáng xiānsheng qǐng wǒ hē Zhōngguó chá.*
- 2 *Lǐ xiānsheng hěn bù xǐhuān Wáng xiānsheng.*
- 3 *Wáng xiānsheng yě* (also) *bù hěn xǐhuān Lǐ xiānsheng.*
- 4 *Nǐ bù xièxie wǒ, nàme wǒ yě bù xièxie nǐ.*

### Exercise 1.4

Translate into Chinese:

- 1 How do you do, Mr King. Please sit down.
- 2 I don't drink tea.

- 3 In that case, will coffee do?
- 4 Thank you, coffee would be marvellous.
- 5 I like you very much.
- 6 Please have [some]\* China tea.
- 7 He (*tā*) doesn't like me either. (Use *yě*.)

\* English words in square brackets should *not* be translated into Chinese.

## i On meeting people

On meeting somebody for the first time on a formal occasion, the Chinese will usually shake hands and incline the head a little at the same time in greeting. This will probably be accompanied by such questions as *Nín guìxìng?* 'What is your surname?' (Lit. you [polite form] expensive surname) or *Qǐng wèn dàmíng?* 'May I ask your (famous) name?' or *Jiùyǎng, jiùyǎng.* 'I'm very pleased to meet you' (Lit. long time raise head looking for you to come).

In less formal situations, an older person may pat a younger one on the shoulder, close friends of the same sex may hug each other and pat each other on the back a few times and say for instance, *Nǐ hái huózhe?* 'You're still alive!' or *Shénme fēng bǎ nǐ chuí lái?* 'What wind blew you here?'. Secondary school students still stand up when the teacher comes in and chorus out *Lǎoshī hǎo!* 'How do you do teacher' (Lit. teacher good!) and the teacher will normally answer *Tóngxuémen hǎo!* 'How do you do students' (Lit. fellow students good).

Hopefully this will give you a few guidelines which you can then supplement from your own observations.

# making friends

In this chapter you will learn

- how to make simple introductions
- how to exchange greetings
- how to address people correctly
- how to make simple apologies
- what measure words are
- numbers 0–99

Mr King has invited Mr and Mrs Li (*Lǐ tàitai*) to his room for a drink.

Wáng	Wáng xiānsheng, wǒ gěi nǐ King/first-born/I/give/you/	Mr King, may I introduce my wife, Zhou Dejin?
Wáng	Lǐ tàital, nín hǎo! Li/Mrs/you/good/	How do you do, Mrs Li.
Lǐ (t.)	Wáng xiānsheng, nín hǎo! King/first-born/you/good/ <i>Rènshi</i> nín, wǒ zhēn gāoxìng. Know/you/I/really/happy/	How do you do, Mr King. I'm really pleased to meet you.
Wáng	Qǐng zuò, qǐng zuò. Hē Invite/sit/invite/sit/Drink yì bēi jiǔ ba. one/cup/alcohol//	Please sit down. How about a drink?
Lǐ	Xièxie, wǒ hē yì bēi. Thank/I/drink/one/cup	Thanks, I'll have one.
Wáng	Lǐ tàital ne? Li/Mrs//	What about you, Mrs Li?
Lǐ (t.)	Xièxie, wǒ bú huì Thank/I/not/know how to/ hē jiǔ. drink/alcohol/	No thanks. I don't drink.
Wáng	Nàme, júzizī hǎo ma? So/orange juice/good//	What about an orange juice then?
Lǐ (t.)	Hǎo, xièxie nín. Good/thank/you/	Fine, thank you.

\* Extra obliques (//) signify the existence of a Chinese word which has no simple English equivalent.

gěi (prep.; v)	for; give
jìeshào (v)	to introduce
yíxlà	see Exercise 2.2
zhè (dem. p./adj.)	this
shì (v)	to be
àiren (n)	husband, wife
tàital (n)	Mrs, wife
nín (ps)	you (polite form)
rènshi (v)	to know, recognize

<b>zhēn</b> (adv.; adj.)	<i>really; true, real</i>
<b>gāoxìng</b> (adj.)	<i>happy</i>
<b>yī</b> (num.)	<i>one</i>
<b>bēi</b> (MW)	<i>cup (ful)</i>
<b>jiǔ</b> (n)	<i>alcohol</i>
<b>ba</b>	<i>particle indicating suggestion</i>
<b>ne</b>	<i>question particle</i>
<b>hùi</b> (aux. v.)	<i>to know how to; can; will</i>
<b>júzi-zhī</b> (n)	<i>orange juice</i>
<b>ma</b>	<i>question particle</i>

## 02

## Grammar

### 1 Use of *gěi*

*Gěi* may be used in several ways. Its basic meaning is as a verb meaning ‘to give’: *Wǒ gěi nǐ júzizhī* ‘I’ll give you orange juice’ or it can stand with a personal noun or pronoun *before* the verb with the meaning of doing the action of the verb *for* that person: *Wǒ gěi nǐ hē* ‘I’ll drink (it) for you’. ‘To introduce A to B’ is *gěi B jièshào A* in Chinese.

### 2 *Yíxià*

The subtlety of the Chinese language lies in the way it conveys nuances of meaning. In this context *yíxià* softens the abruptness of *Wǒ gěi nǐ jièshào* without having any specific meaning, although in other contexts it can mean ‘on one occasion’ or ‘have a little go at doing the action of the verb’.

### 3 Use of *shì*

The verb ‘to be’ is used much less in Chinese than in English. It is mostly to be found in A=B sentences: *Lǐ tàitai shì nǐ àiren* ‘Mrs Li is your wife’. The test of whether *shì* has been used correctly is to turn the sentence round and if it still makes sense (albeit clumsily) then the *shì* is correct: *Nǐ àiren shì Lǐ tàitai* ‘Your wife is Mrs Li’. Note that *shì* is unstressed unless the speaker wishes to emphasize it: *Tā (she) shì nǐ àiren* ‘She is your wife’. (Doubt having been cast as to whether or not she was.)

## 4 Nín

*Nín* is the polite form of *nǐ* but it is not used frequently. It is used to indicate respect, e.g. when addressing one's 'elders and betters'. It is *not* used in the plural. The table below lists the other personal pronouns.

### Personal pronouns

wǒ	<i>I, me</i>	wǒmen	<i>we, us</i>
nǐ	<i>you (sing.)</i>	nǐmen	<i>you (pl.)</i>
nín	<i>you (sing. polite)</i>	tāmen	<i>they, them</i>
tā	<i>he, she, it</i>		

## 5 Topic construction

The Chinese are very fond of this construction and use it frequently. It consists of stating what you are going to talk about *first*, often in the very broadest sense, and *then* going on to state your view or reaction to it.

Rènshí nín, wǒ zhēn gāoxìng.  
topic            reaction

## 6 Measure words

In Chinese something called a measure word has to be used between a number and its noun. Different measure words are used with different categories of nouns. For example *běn* is used for books and magazines whereas *zhāng* is used for rectangular, flat objects such as tables, beds, maps, but is not a true measure as to length or anything else. Some measure words like *bēi* are actual indicators of quantity. The noun accompanying the number and measure word is often omitted when it is clear from the context what this is. For example, Mr Li says in answer to Mr King's question that he will *hē yì bēi* (*jiù* 'understood'). For a more comprehensive table of measure words see Chapter 12, pp.123–4.

## 7 Ba

*Ba* is placed after a verb or phrase to denote a suggestion or to ask for confirmation of a supposition: *Hǎo ba* 'Is that all right then?'.

## 8 Ne

When the same question is put to two or more people consecutively *ne* is usually used to replace the question which has been put to the first person. For example, Mr King suggests to Mr Li that he might like a drink and then turns to Mrs Li and asks: *Lǐ tāitai ne?*

## 9 Hui

One of several auxiliary verbs expressing ‘to be able to, can’. *Hui* conveys the idea of ‘knowing how to, having learnt it’. It is used to express knowledge of a foreign language: *Wǒ huì Yīngwén* ‘I know English’ and ability to smoke or drink, etc. ‘I don’t drink (alcohol)’ becomes *Wǒ bù huì hē jiǔ* (‘I don’t know how to drink alcohol’) in Chinese. Its other meaning is to express the possibility that something ‘will happen in the future’: *Tā huì lái* ‘He will come’. Both meanings are used in the exercises.

## 10 Question particle

The addition of *ma* at the end of any statement makes it into a question. For example: *Júzizhī hǎo* becomes *Júzizhī hǎo ma?*

## 11 Numbers 0–99

0	líng	8	bā	16	shíliù
1	yī	9	jiǔ	17	shíqī
2	èr	10	shí	18	shíbā
3	sān	11	shíyī (10 + 1)	19	shíjiǔ
4	sì	12	shí'èr (10 + 2)	20	èrshí (2 × 10)
5	wǔ	13	shísān	30	sānshí
6	liù	14	shísl	65	liùshíwǔ
7	qī	15	shíwǔ	99	jiǔshíjiǔ

An apostrophe (‘) is used to show where the break comes between two syllables if there is any possible ambiguity in pronunciation, so it is *shí'èr* and not *shíèr*.

## i Female equality

In the People's Republic of China (PRC) *àiren* means 'husband' or 'wife', but in overseas Chinese communities such as Singapore and Hong Kong it can still mean 'lover', so be careful how you use it! A Chinese woman, married to a Mr Zhang is seldom, if ever, addressed as Mrs Zhang (*Zhāng tàitai*), unless she is an overseas Chinese or is being addressed by a foreigner. She keeps her maiden name and when being introduced, this will be given together with her 'Christian or given name', e.g. *Zhōu Déjīn*. A foreigner married to a Mr King may be variously addressed as *Wáng tàitai* or *Wáng fūrén*.

### Exercise 2.1

True or false?

- 1 *Lǐ xiānsheng bù hē jiǔ.*
- 2 *Lǐ tàitai hē júzizhī.*
- 3 *Lǐ xiānsheng gěi Wáng xiānsheng jièshào tā àiren.*
- 4 *Lǐ tàitai rènshi Wàng xiānsheng bù gāoxìng.*
- 5 *Zhōu Déjīn huì hē jiǔ.*

### Exercise 2.2

Re-arrange the words given to produce the meaning in brackets:

*Yì bēi hē huì wǒ jiǔ.* [I (can) drink a little alcohol.]  
→ *Wǒ huì hē yì bēi jiǔ.*

- 1 *Gāoxìng Lǐ tàitai nín rènshi zhēn wǒ.* [I'm really happy to meet you, Mrs Li.]
- 2 *Ba júzizhī nàme hǎo.* [How about an orange juice, then.]
- 3 *Hē wǒ xǐhuān hěn jiǔ.* [I adore drinking.]
- 4 *Bù hē sì huì bēi pútáojiǔ* (grape alcohol) *nín.* [You won't drink four glasses of wine.]
- 5 *Gěi wǒ àiren Lǐ xiānsheng wǒ jièshào.* [I introduce my wife to Mr Li.]

### Exercise 2.3

Translate into colloquial English:

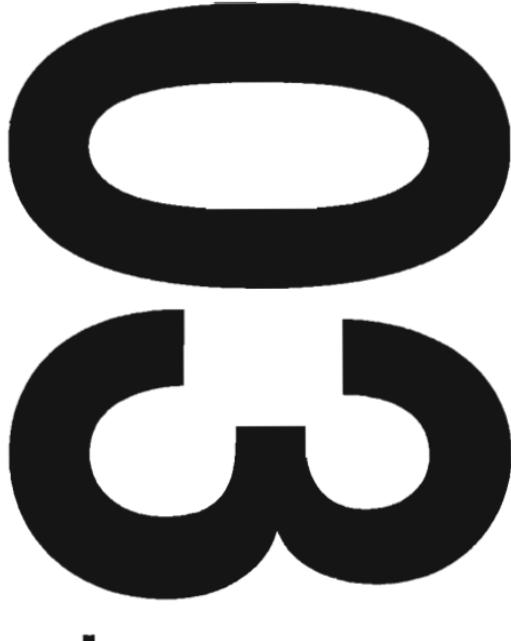
*Wáng xiānsheng qǐng Lǐ xiānsheng hē jiǔ.* *Lǐ xiānsheng hěn gāoxìng.* *Tā hěn huì hē jiǔ.* *Tā àiren Zhōu Déjīn ne?* *Tā àiren bù huì hē jiǔ.* *Tā hē júzizhī.* *Tā yě hěn bù xǐhuān Lǐ xiānsheng hē jiǔ.*

**Exercise 2.4**

Translate into Chinese:

- 1 Do you drink?
- 2 I'm a teetotaller. What about you? (Use *nín*.)
- 3 Mr Zhou, may I introduce you to my wife?
- 4 Does she know him?
- 5 [When]\* my husband smokes (*xī yān* v-o), I'm very cross.
- 6 How about [some]\* coffee? (Use *ba*.)
- 7 Mr Zhang (*Zhāng*) doesn't know English (*Yīngyǔ*).
- 8 You won't drink seven glasses of wine.

\* NB The English words in square brackets should not be translated into Chinese.



# making friends (

**In this chapter you will learn**

- how to ask someone if they have children
- how to ask how old the children are
- how to ask if someone is married or has a boyfriend/girlfriend
- how to invite someone to your home
- to tell the time
- about question words and their position in the sentence

Mr King continues his conversation with Mr and Mrs Li.

- |         |   |  |
|---------|---|--|
| Wáng    | <i>Lí xiānsheng, nǐmen yǒu<br/>Li/first-born/you (pl)/have/<br/>xiǎoháir ma?<br/>children//</i>   | Do you have any<br>children, Mr Li?                            |
| Lí      | <i>Yǒu, wǒmen yǒu liǎng gè -<br/>Have/we/have/two/MW/<br/>yí ge nánhái, yí ge<br/>one/MW/male child/one/MW/<br/>nǚhái.<br/>female child/</i>          | Yes, we have two; a boy<br>and a girl.                         |
| Wáng    | <i>Nánhái jǐ suì?<br/>Male child/how many/years/<br/>Nǚhái jǐ suì?<br/>Female child/how many/<br/>years/</i>  | How old are they?  |
| Lí      | <i>Nánhái shísì suì, nǚhái<br/>Male child/14/years/female<br/>jiǔ suì.<br/>child/9/years/</i>   | The boy is 14, the girl is 9.                                  |
| Lí (t.) | <i>Wáng xiānsheng,<br/>King/first-born/<br/>jié hūn le ma?<br/>tie marriage///</i>  | Are you married, Mr King?                                      |
| Wáng    | <i>Méi yǒu.<br/>Not/have/</i>   | No, I'm not.   |
| Lí (t.) | <i>Yǒu duixiàng ma?<br/>Have/facing image//</i>   | Do you have a steady<br>girlfriend?                            |
| Wáng    | <i>'Duixiàng' shì shénme<br/>Facing image/be/what/<br/>yìsì?<br/>meaning/</i>   | What does the word<br><i>duixiàng</i> mean?                    |
| Lí      | <i>'Duixiàng' shì nǚ<br/>Facing image/be/female/<br/>péngyou de yìsì. Nǐ yǒu<br/>friend//meaning/You/have/<br/>nǚ péngyou ma?<br/>female/friend//</i> | <i>Duixiàng</i> means girlfriend.<br>Do you have a girlfriend? |

Wáng	Yǒu. Have/	Yes, I do.
Lǐ (t.)	Tā zài nǎr? Tā yě She/be at/where/She/also/ zài Zhōngguó ma? be at/middle country//	Where is she? Is she in China too?
Wáng	Duì, tā yě zài Zhōngguó. Correct/she/also/be at/ middle country/	Yes, she is.
Lǐ	Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nǐmen I/feel like/invite/you (pl)/ qù wǒmen jiā wánr, hǎo ma? go/our/home/play/good//	I'd like to invite you both over to our home. What do you say?
Wáng	Nà tài hǎo le. That/too/good//	That would be great.
Lǐ (t.)	Nǐmen míngtiān You (pl)/tomorrow/ wǎnshang yǒu kòng ma? evening/have/space//	Are you free tomorrow evening?
Wáng	Yǒu kòng. Have/space/	Yes, we are.
Lǐ	Nàme, qǐng nǐmen liǎ So/invite/you (pl)/two/ míngtiān wǎnshang qù tomorrow/evening/go/ wǒmen jiā chī fàn ba. our/home/eat/cooked rice//	Then how about you both coming over for a meal tomorrow evening?
Wáng	Nà tài xièxie nǐmen le! That/too/thank/you (pl.)// Jǐ diǎn zhōng qù ne? How many/point/clock/go//	Thank you very much indeed. What time shall we come?
Lǐ (t.)	Liù diǎn zěnmeyàng? 6/point/how about it/	How would 6 o'clock suit you?
Wáng	Xíng, jiù liù diǎn ba. Be all right/then/6/point//	Fine, 6 o'clock then.

yǒu (v)	<i>to have</i>
xiǎoháil (n)	<i>child (small)</i>
liǎng (num.)	<i>two</i>
gè (MW)	<i>see 3.1*</i>
nán (adj.)	<i>male</i>
nǚ (adj.)	<i>female</i>
Jǐ (QW)	<i>how many (less than ten)</i>
sui (n)	<i>year (of age)</i>
jié hūn (v-o)	<i>to marry, to get married</i>
le	<i>modal particle</i>
méi (neg.)	<i>not (only used with yǒu)</i>
duixiàng (n)	<i>steady boy- or girlfriend</i>
shénme (QW)	<i>what</i>
yìsi (n)	<i>meaning</i>
péngyou (n)	<i>friend</i>
de	<i>marker</i>
zài (v; prep.)	<i>to be at; at</i>
nǎr (QW)	<i>where</i>
yě (adv.)	<i>also, too</i>
dúi (adj.)	<i>correct</i>
xiǎng (aux. v.; v)	<i>to feel like doing something;</i> <i>to think</i>
qù (v)	<i>to go</i>
jiā (n)	<i>home; family</i>
wán(r) (v)	<i>to have fun</i>
nà (dem. p./adj.)	<i>that</i>
tài (adv.)	<i>too</i>
míngtiān (TW)	<i>tomorrow</i>
wǎnshang (TW)	<i>evening</i>
yǒu kòng (v-o)	<i>to have free time</i>
liǎ (num + MW)	<i>two</i>
chī fàn (v-o)	<i>to eat (meal)</i>
diǎn zhōng (MW + n)	<i>o'clock</i>
zěnmeyàng (QW)	<i>what about (it)?, how?</i>
jìù (adv.)	<i>then; just, only, merely</i>

\* i.e. Chapter 3, grammar point 1.

# Grammar

## 1 More on measure word *ge*

*Gè* is by far the most common measure word in Chinese and is used with a whole range of nouns which do not have their own specific measure word. When in doubt as to which measure word to use, use *gè* – not all Chinese get their measure words right every time either! When said in normal speech, *gè* is usually toneless (see p.xix).

## 2 More on numbers *èr* and *liǎng*

*Liǎng* (two of a kind) is used with measure words instead of *èr*, so ‘two children’ is *liǎng ge xiǎoháir* not *èr ge xiǎoháir*. Some people find it helpful to think of *liǎng* as the bound form ‘two of a kind’. *Liă* (an abbreviated form for *liǎng ge*) is often used with personal pronouns we, you (plural), they, instead of *liǎng ge*, thus ‘the two of us’ may either be *wǒmen liă* or *wǒmen liǎng ge*.

## 3 Question words and their position

In Chinese, question words such as *jǐ* ‘how many’ (generally expecting an answer less than ten), which is always used with a measure word, *duōshao* ‘how many’ (indicating any number), *shénme* ‘what’, *shénme shíhou* ‘when’ (Lit. what time), *shéi* ‘who’ (also pronounced *shuí*), *nǎr* ‘where’, *jǐ diǎn (zhōng)* ‘what time’ (Lit. what o’clock), *zěnmeyàng* ‘what about it, how’, appear in the sentence in the same position as the word which replaces them in the answer. *Tāmen jǐ suì?* ‘How old are they?’ *Nánháir shísì suì, nǚháir jiǔ suì.* (Note that no verb is necessary when stating age in terms of years.) *Tā zài nǎr? Tā yě zài Zhōngguó.*

The particle *ne* is often to be found at the end of the sentence containing a question word and has a softening effect. It also helps to make the sentence feel more balanced. Try saying such sentences with and without *ne* and hear the difference:

*Jǐ diǎn zhōng qù?*  
*Tā zài nǎr?*

*Jǐ diǎn zhōng qù ne?*  
*Tā zài nǎr ne?*

Note that sentences containing question words do not take *ma*.

**Exercise 3.1**

Replace the bold words with an appropriate question word:

Nánháir **wǔ** suì → Nánháir **jǐ** suì?

- 1 Wǒmen hē júzizhī.
- 2 Lǐ xiānsheng hé (and) Lǐ tàitai yǒu liǎng ge xiǎohái.
- 3 Pútáojiǔ hěn hǎo.
- 4 Wáng xiānsheng de nǚ péngyou zài Běijīng.
- 5 Tāmen míngtiān wǎnshàng qī diǎn zhōng qù chī fàn.
- 6 Wáng xiānsheng qǐng tāmen chī fàn.

## 4 Verbal suffix -le

*Le* is the delight of all Chinese grammarians, but only its more straightforward aspects will be dealt with in this book. Here it is put *after* the verb to indicate that the action of the verb has been completed:

Wáng xiānsheng jié hūn *le* ma? If he had been married the answer would have been: *Jié hūn le*. The negative form of this construction is *méi yǒu* + *verb* where the *yǒu* may be omitted. The *verb* may be omitted when answering a question with *-le* in the negative but *yǒu* then has to be retained, so Mr King could equally well have replied: *Méi yǒu jié hūn* or *Méi jié hūn* instead of *Méi yǒu*. There is no completed action indicated in the negative so there is no *-le*. Note that the negative form of *yǒu* is *méi yǒu* not *bù yǒu*. This is the one exception to the rule that all verbs are negated by *bù*. (See 1.4.)

The question form is made by adding *ma* to the statement or *méi yǒu* after it:

Wáng xiānsheng jié hūn *le* ma? or Wáng xiānsheng jié hūn *le méi yǒu*? This is identical to the choice-type question form found in 1.5 except that the verb is not repeated. (*Yǒu* is never omitted in this type of question form.) Another alternative question form is: Wáng xiānsheng *jié hūn méi jié hūn*?; the answers, whether positive or negative, being as before.

## 5 Marker *de*

Two nouns may be linked by *de*, the first being subordinate to the second. Whatever comes *after* *de* is the main idea, i.e. what is being talked about, and what precedes *de* gives additional information about that main idea. Thus the sentence: *Duìxiàng shi nǚ péngyou de yìsi* tells us that the *yìsi* ‘meaning’ of *duìxiàng*

is *nǚ péngyou*. In *péngyou de xiāoháir* we are told that the *xiāoháir* is ‘a friend’s’ (*xiāoháir*).

*De* is also used with pronouns in the same way: *Nǐ de jiā* ‘your home’; *wǒ de bēizi* ‘my cup’. For obvious reasons some students tend to regard this *de* as being possessive, but as can be seen from the first example this may be misleading. One way out of this difficulty might be to regard *wǒ de*, *nǐ de*, etc. simply as possessive adjectives meaning ‘my’, ‘your’ and not as *wǒ + de*, etc.

In close personal relationships: *tā māma* ‘his mum’, *nǐ àiren* ‘your husband/wife’, *wǒ péngyou* ‘my friend’ the *de* may be omitted. A Chinese newspaper article or official spokesman will also refer to China and to the Chinese government as *Wǒ guó* (‘my country’ – ‘China’) and *Wǒ zhèngfǔ* (‘my government’ – ‘the Chinese government’).

## 6 Answering questions

Although questions in Chinese are not answered with ‘yes’ or ‘no’ (see 1.5) the answer is sometimes prefaced with a *duì* ‘correct’ or a *bú duì* (which is often reduced to a simple *bù*). The text provides a good example of this: Mr Li asks if Mr Wang’s girlfriend is in China too and he replies: *Duì, tā yě zài Zhōngguó*. If the answer had been negative, he might well have replied: *Bù, tā bù zài Zhōngguó* or *Bù, tā zài Yīngguó* (Britain).

## 7 *Tài* verb *le*

As *le* is Chinese grammar’s *bête noire*, any hints on its usage are indispensable. For example, it is almost invariably to be found together with the adverb *tài* ‘too’ as in *tài hǎo le* ‘great’, *tài xièxie nǐmen le* ‘thank you very much indeed’. Don’t ask me why!

## 8 Adverbial phrases of time (time when)

As is stated in 1.6, most adverbs in Chinese precede the verb. Adverbs of ‘time when’ are no exception to this rule (for adverbs of ‘time how long’ see 10.12), so that in *Qǐng nǐmen míngtiān lái* ‘Please come tomorrow’ *míngtiān* precedes *lái*. This is the reverse of normal English usage. Such adverbs can also precede the subject or topic for emphasis. For example *Wǒ jīntiān lái, míngtiān wǒ bù lái* ‘I’ll come today, (but) I am not coming tomorrow’.

## 9 Verb-object constructions

This construction is a feature of the Chinese language so that whereas an English speaker is quite happy with simply stating that 'He likes eating' or that 'She is going to eat', a Chinese will normally say that he likes 'eating cooked rice' or that she is 'going to eat cooked rice' (*chī fàn*), where *chī* is the verb 'to eat' and *fàn* the object 'cooked rice'. There are numerous examples of this construction, some of the most common are given in the following table.

<b>chī fàn</b>	<i>to eat</i>	<b>shuì jiào</b>	<i>to sleep</i>
cooked rice		sleep sleep	
<b>dú shū</b>	<i>to study</i>	<b>shuō huà</b>	<i>to speak, talk</i>
read books		speak speech	
<b>huà huà</b>	<i>to draw, paint</i>	<b>tán huà</b>	<i>to chat</i>
draw drawings		chat speech	
paint paintings		<b>xī yān</b>	<i>to smoke</i>
<b>jiāo shū</b>	<i>to teach</i>	smoke tobacco/ cigarettes	
teach books		<b>zǒu lù</b>	<i>to walk</i>
<b>kāi chē</b>	<i>to drive</i>	walk road	
drive vehicle		<b>zuò chē</b>	<i>to go (by some form of transport)</i>
<b>kàn shū</b>	<i>to read</i>	sit vehicle	
read books			
<b>lù yīn</b>	<i>to record</i>		
record sound			
<b>qǐng kè</b>	<i>to invite somebody for a meal</i>		
invite guest			

Even *jié hūn* (tie marriage) is strictly speaking a verb-object construction and not a compound verb. The test is whether *le* can be inserted between the two parts or not. If it can, (and only finding or hearing examples can sometimes tell you this) then it is a verb-object construction, so we can say *chī le fàn* but we cannot say *xiè le xiè* (*xièxiè*) or *xǐ le huan* (*xihuan*). Classical Chinese is monosyllabic (one-syllabled), whereas modern Chinese has become increasingly disyllabic (two-syllabled) so the verb-object construction can be seen as conforming to this trend. Of course if the verb in question already has an object, then these 'fill-in' objects are not used.

NB There is great confusion as to whether these verb-objects should be written as one or two words in pinyin. I have kept them separate in the interests of clarity.

## 10 Telling the time

Question: *Xiànzài (now) jǐ diǎn (zhōng)?* (lit. Now/how many/points/clock)

Answer: *Xiànzài yì diǎn zhōng.* (lit. Now/one/point/clock)

*Zhōng* is normally omitted except when asking the time or on the hour, where it is optional.



*liǎng diǎn (zhōng)*



*sān diǎn (líng)  
wǔ fēn (minute)  
líng 'zero' is  
optional*



*sì diǎn shíwǔ fēn  
or sì diǎn yí kè  
(one quarter)*



*wǔ diǎn sānshí fēn  
or  
wǔ diǎn bàn (half)*



*liù diǎn sìshíwǔ fēn  
or liù diǎn sān kè  
(three quarters) or  
chà yí kè qī diǎn  
(lack/one/quarter/7/  
point)*



*qī diǎn wǔshí fēn or  
chà shí fēn bā diǎn  
(lack/10/unit/8/point)*

For more information on time in general see Chapter 12,  
pp.124–5.

**Exercise 3.2**

What time is it on each of the clocks below?

1



5



2



6



3



7



4



8



## 11 The adverb *jiù*

*Jiù* is used in many different ways, some of which you will meet in this book. Here it is used to link two clauses together and at the same time show acceptance: *Xíng, jiù liù diǎn ba.* As an adverb, *jiù* can never precede a noun or pronoun. Note that *ba* also expresses agreement or approval here (cf. 2.7).

### i Chinese straight talking

The Chinese love to know everybody else's business and do not feel at all inhibited about enquiring how much you paid for your house, your car, your CD-player, your television, your clothes or anything else. They are always particularly interested in your age, marital status and whether you have children and if not why not! Although customs are changing gradually, it is still extremely unusual for a Chinese adult in his or her 30s to be unmarried or childless. Conversely it is quite in order for you to ask the same sort of questions. Being of a 'curious' disposition myself I have always felt very much at home in China. Of course, as contact with the outside world increases, many more Chinese are learning that some foreigners regard such questions as impolite and therefore may, on occasions, restrain their natural curiosity (and genuine openness) on such matters.

#### Exercise 3.3

The following sentences are incorrect, they contain common errors (the Chinese call such sentences *bìngjù* 'sick sentences'). Give the correct version. *Tā jié hūn míngtiān* → *Tā míngtiān jié hūn*

- 1 *Wǒ yǒu èr ge xiǎoháir.*
- 2 *Tā bù yǒu nǚháir.*
- 3 *Nǐmen yǒu liù péngyou.*
- 4 *Zhōngguó shi nǎr?*
- 5 *Jǐ suì tāmen?*
- 6 *Wǒmen qù shí diǎn zhōng.*
- 7 *Zěnmeyàng hé lǜ (green) chá?*
- 8 *Zhōu Déjīn méi yǒu jié hūn le.*
- 9 *Wáng tàitai bù chī fàn wǎnshàng.*
- 10 *Zhāng xiānsheng xiǎng qǐng wǒmen, jiù wǒmen bù qǐng tā.*

**Exercise 3.4**

Translate the following passage into colloquial English:

Wǒmen yǒu sì ge xiǎoháir, sān ge nǚháir, yí ge nánháir. Wǒ de péngyou hěn duō (many). Wǒ qǐng liǎng ge péngyou míngtiān wǎnshàng lái (come) wǒmen jiā chī fàn. Wǒ àiren hěn bù gāoxìng yīnwèi (because) tā bù rènshi tāmen.

**Exercise 3.5**

Translate into Chinese:

- 1 The girl is three years old, the boy is two.
- 2 Is he married? No, he isn't.
- 3 Are you (plural) going to his home for a meal tomorrow evening?
- 4 Where is she now (*xiànzài* TW)? She is in London (*Lúndūn*).
- 5 Do you (singular) have a steady boyfriend? No I don't. I am only (use *cái*) 15!
- 6 The two of us are really fond of coffee.
- 7 What time will you be at home?/How about 7 o'clock?/Fine, 7 it is then. (Use *jiù*.)
- 8 My wife is smashing, but (*dànshi*) she doesn't like talking much (*shuō huà*).
- 9 Where is your friend? I'd like to invite him for a meal.

# Q

# 4

at the  
list,

**In this chapter you will learn**

- how to say where you come from and what nationality you are
- the Chinese equivalents of foreign names
- to make appropriate remarks and responses during a meal

Mr King and his girlfriend Miss Scurfield (*Shǐ xiǎojie*) have arrived at the Lis' for dinner.

Wáng	<i>Wǒ gěi nǐmen jièshào yíxià,</i> I/give/you/introduce// <i>zhè wèi shì wǒ de nǚ</i> this/MW/be/my/female/ <i>péngyou, Shǐ Aili. Zhè wèi</i> friend/Shi Aili/This/MW/ <i>shì Lǐ xiānsheng, zhè wèi</i> be/Li/first-born/this/MW/ <i>shì Lǐ tàitai.</i> be/Li/Mrs/	May I introduce you to my girlfriend, Shi Aili? This gentleman is Mr Li and this is Mrs Li.
Lǐ	<i>Shǐ xiǎojie, nín hǎo!</i>	How do you do, Miss Scurfield.
Lǐ (t.)	<i>Shi/Miss/you/good/</i>	How do you do, Mr and Mrs Li.
Shǐ	<i>Lǐ xiānsheng, Lǐ tàitai,</i> Li/first-born/Li/Mrs/ <i>nǐmen hǎo!</i> you/good/	
Lǐ	<i>Qǐng suībiàn zuò ba.</i> Invite/follow convenience/sit//	Please make yourselves comfortable.
Lǐ (t.)	<i>Shǐ xiǎojie, nín yě shì cóng</i> Shi/Miss/you/also/be/from/ <i>Yīngguó lái de ma?</i> hero country/come///	Are you from Britain too, Miss Scurfield?
Shǐ	<i>Shi, wǒ yě shì cóng</i> Be/I/also/be/from/ <i>Yīngguó lái de.</i> hero country/come//	Yes, I am.
Lǐ	<i>À, nǐmen liǎ dōu shì</i> Ah/you/two/both/be/ <i>Yīngguórén.</i> hero country people/	Ah, you are both British.
Lǐ (t.)	<i>Shǐ xiǎojie, nín zài zhèr zuò</i> Shi/Miss/you/at/here/do/ <i>shénme?</i> what/	What are you doing here Miss Scurfield?
Shǐ	<i>Wǒ zài zhèr xuéxí Hànyǔ.</i> I/at/here/study/Chinese language/	I'm studying Chinese language here.
Lǐ	<i>Nín zài nǎ ge xuéxiào</i> You/at/which/MW/school/ <i>xuéxí Hànyǔ?</i> study/Chinese language/	Which school are you (studying Chinese language) at?

Shī	Wǒ zài Běijīng Dàxué xuéxí I/at/Beijing/big study/study/ Hànyǔ. Chinese/	I am studying (Chinese language) at Beijing University.
Lǐ	Xuéxiào lǐ shēnghuó School inside/life/ zěnmeyàng? how/	What's it like there?
Shī	Hěn bùcuò! Very/not wrong/	It's great!
Lǐ (t.)	Nǐmen yídìng hěn è le. You/definitely/very/hungry// Wǒmen chī fàn ba. Jīntiān We/eat/meal//Today/ wǎnshàng chī Zhōngguó cài evening/eat/China/dish(es)/ xíng ma? be OK//	You must be ravenous. Let's eat. We are going to eat Chinese tonight, if that's all right with you?
Wáng	Hǎo jíle! Good/extremely/	Marvellous!
Lǐ	Bié kèqì, zìjǐ lái ba. Don't/be polite/self/come// Nǐmen huì yòng kuàizī ma? You/know/use/chopsticks//	Make yourselves at home. Do help yourselves. Can you use chopsticks?
Wáng	Huì yòng, dànshì yòng de bù Know/use/but/use/not/ hǎo. good/	Yes, but not very well.
Lǐ	Méi guānxi . . . Ng, nǐmen Not/concern/Hm/you/ dōu yòng de bùcuò a! both/use/not bad//	It doesn't matter . . . Hm, you are both pretty good.
Lǐ (t.)	Wǒ zuò cài, zuò de bù I/make/dish/make/not hǎo, qǐng yuánliàng. good/invite/forgive/	Sorry, I'm not much of a cook.
Shī	Nín zuò cài, zuò de hěn You/make/dish/make/very/ hǎo. good/	You cook very well.
Lǐ (t.)	Shī xiǎojie huì zuò cài ma? Shi/Miss/know/make/dish//	Can you cook, Miss Scurfield?
Shī	Huì yìdiǎnr, dànshì Can/one drop/but/	A little, but I am a very plain cook.

	<i>jíshù bù gāo!</i> technique/not/tall/	
Wáng	Tā Yīngguó cài She/hero country/dish/ <i>zuò de fēicháng hǎo.</i> make/extremely/good/	She cooks wonderful English food.
Lǐ	Zhōngguó cài zuò de Middle country/dish/make/ <i>zěnmeyàng?</i> how/	What about Chinese food?
Shí	Wǒ Zhōngguó cài I/middle country/dish/ <i>zuò de bù zěnmeyàng.</i> make/not/how/	I'm not much good at making Chinese food.
Lǐ (t.)	Nǐmen zuihǎo shǎo shuō You/most good/less/speak/ <i>huà, duō chī fàn ba,</i> speech/more/eat/meal// <i>yào bù rán cài dōu liáng le!</i> /otherwise/dish/all/cool//	You'd better talk less and concentrate more on your food, otherwise it'll all get cold!

wèi (MW)	for persons (polite)
xiaojie (n)	Miss, young lady
suǒbiàn	do as one pleases
shì . . . de	see 4.4
cóng (prep.)	from
Yīngguó (N)	Britain, England
lái (v)	to come
à (interj)	ah, oh
dōu (adv.)	both, all
Yīngguórén (n)	British (person)
zhèr (PW)	here
zuò (v)	to do, to make
xué(xí) (v)	to study
Hànyǔ (n)	Chinese language
nǎ (QW)	which?
xuéxiào (n)	school
Běijīng Dàxué (N)	Beijing University
(n +) lì	inside (+ n)
shēnghuó (n, v)	life; to live
búcuò	pretty good
yídīng (adv.)	certainly, definitely
è (adj.)	hungry

<b>le</b>	<i>new situation</i>
<b>jīntiān (TW)</b>	<i>today</i>
<b>cài (n)</b>	<i>dish; vegetable</i>
<b>(adj. +) jíle</b>	<i>extremely (+ adj.)</i>
<b>bié (adv.)</b>	<i>don't</i>
<b>kèqì (adj.)</b>	<i>polite (lit. guest air)</i>
<b>zìjǐ (p)</b>	<i>oneself</i>
<b>yòng (v)</b>	<i>to use</i>
<b>kuàizi (n)</b>	<i>chopsticks</i>
<b>dànshí (conj.)</b>	<i>but</i>
<b>-de</b>	<i>see 4.8</i>
<b>méi (yǒu) guānxì</b>	<i>it doesn't matter</i>
<b>ñg (interj.)</b>	<i>hm</i>
<b>yuánlìàng (v)</b>	<i>to forgive</i>
<b>yídiǎn(r) (n)</b>	<i>a little</i>
<b>jíshù (n)</b>	<i>technique</i>
<b>gāo (adj.)</b>	<i>tall, high</i>
<b>fēicháng (adv.)</b>	<i>extremely</i>
<b>bù zěnmeyàng</b>	<i>not up to much</i>
<b>zuì (adv.)</b>	<i>most</i>
<b>zuìhǎo (adv., adj.)</b>	<i>had better; best</i>
<b>shǎo (adv., adj.)</b>	<i>less; few</i>
<b>shuō huà (v-o)</b>	<i>to speak, talk</i>
<b>duō (adj., adv.)</b>	<i>more; many</i>
<b>yàobù(rán) (conj.)</b>	<i>otherwise</i>
<b>liáng (adj.)</b>	<i>cool</i>

## Grammar

### 1 More on measure words

When *zhè* 'this' and *nà* 'that' occur with a noun in the singular or as pronouns (with a singular noun understood) or with a number, then the appropriate measure word must be inserted:

*zhè wèi xiǎojie* 'this MW (unmarried) young lady'

*nà wèi xiānsheng* 'that MW gentleman'

*zhè wèi* 'this MW one (person understood)'

*nà liǎng ge rén* 'those two MW people'

This rule applies equally well to such question words as *jǐ* 'how many' and *nǎ* 'which': (both of which must be followed by measure words):

**Question:** Tā gěi nǐ jǐ bēi jiǔ?

'How many glasses of alcohol did he give you?'

**Answer:** Tā gěi wǒ sān bēi jiǔ.

'He gave me three.'

**Question:** Nǐ zài nǎ ge xuéxiào xuéxí Hànyǔ?

'Where do you study Chinese?'

**Answer:** Wǒ zài Běijīng Dàxué xuéxí Hànyǔ.

'I study Chinese at Beijing University.'

Note that *wèi* is normally used with more formal nouns such as *xiānsheng*, *xiǎojie*, etc. but not with nouns such as *rén*. The *xiǎo* in *xiǎojie* is pronounced second tone in practice, as *jiě*, though neutral here, still carries enough weight to turn *xiǎo* into a second. Convention has us write it as third tone however.

### Exercise 4.1

Insert the missing measure words in the following sentences:

Nà xuéxiào bùcuò → Nà ge xuéxiào bùcuò.

- 1 Zhè xiǎojie zài Běijīng Dàxué xuéxí Hànyǔ.
- 2 Nǎ xiānsheng shì nǐ àiren?
- 3 Wáng tàitai yǒu jǐ xiǎoháir?
- 4 Nà wǔ rén dōu shì nǐ péngyou ma?
- 5 Tāmen jǐ zhōng lái wǒmen jiā chī fàn?

## 2 Foreign names (I)

Certain very common and/or very well-known foreign surnames and Christian/given names have set equivalents in Chinese, e.g. Smith: *Shímìsi* (*Shǐ mì sī*), John: *Yuēhàn* (*Yuē hàn*). Thus John Smith would be written *Yuēhàn•Shímìsi*, the ‘•’ between the two indicating that the name is foreign. Since the majority of Chinese names consist of three characters or ‘syllables’, most foreigners who regularly come into contact with Chinese people often adopt a three syllable name. Sometimes all three syllables are an approximate transliteration of the foreign surname, otherwise the Chinese practice of generally having one syllable for the surname and two for the given or Christian name is adopted. Thus Miss Scurfield has adopted the Chinese surname *Shǐ* ‘history’ and the given name *Aǐlǐ* (*ài lǐ*) ‘loves principle’. Almost all Chinese given names have a meaning, hence the origin of such names as ‘Beautiful Jade’ and ‘Flowering Plum Blossom’ which appear in some English translations of Chinese literature and a good transcription of a foreign name should follow this practice.

### 3 Adverbial phrases of place

Adverbial phrases of place usually consist of a preposition and a place-word and are generally put before the verb as in:

*Wǒ zài zhèr xuéxí Hánnyǔ.* ‘I study Chinese here.’

Other prepositions such as *cóng* ‘from’ and *dào* ‘to’ also function in this way:

*Tā cóng Zhōngguó lái.* (Lit. He/from/China/comes)

‘He comes from China.’

*Wǒmen dào Měiguó qù.* (Lit. We/to/beautiful country/go)

‘We go to America.’

When an adverbial phrase of ‘time when’ (see 3.8) and an adverbial phrase of place both occur before the verb, the rule is time before place:

*Nǐmen jīntiān zài wǒ jiā chī fàn.* ‘You are eating at my home today.’ (Lit. You/today/at/my home/eat/cooked rice/.)

Note that words such as *-lǐ* ‘inside’, ‘on’, ‘under’, etc. occur after the noun to which they refer. These will be dealt with in more detail in Chapter 17.

### 4 *Shì...de*

An adverbial phrase of time, manner or place is emphasized by putting *shì* in front of it and *de* after it. This construction can only be used where the action of the verb has been completed, it cannot be used for present or future actions:

*Question: Shǐ xiǎojie, nín yě shì cóng Yīngguó lái de ma?*

*Answer: Shì, wǒ yě shì cóng Yīngguó lái de.*

A negative answer might have been:

*Bù, wǒ shì cóng Dégúó (Germany) lái de.*

The stress does not always show in the English translation but the following examples may illustrate the point more clearly:

*Question: Nǐ shì bā diǎn zhōng lái de ma? Did you come at 8?* (Was it at 8 that you came?)

*Answer: Bù, wǒ shì qī diǎn bàn lái de. ‘No, at 7.30’ (It was at 7.30 that I came.)*

*Question: Nǐ shì zuò chē (sit vehicle) lái de ma? ‘Did you come by bus/car?’ (Was it by bus/car that you came?)*

**Answer:** *Bù, wǒ shì zǒu lù lái de.* ‘No I came on foot.’ (It was on foot that I came.)

## 5 Abbreviations

You might be forgiven for thinking that given the nature of the Chinese language, abbreviations would be out of the question, but you would be wrong. The Chinese love abbreviations, the pithiness of which has echoes of their classical past. Hence *Bēijīng Dàxué* ‘Beijing University’ becomes *Bēidà*, *Nánjīng Dàxué* ‘Nanjing University’ becomes *Nándà* and so on. As you can see the first syllable from each word has been picked out to form the abbreviation. The most likely targets for abbreviations are institutions and political movements.

## 6 The particle *le*

When *le* occurs at the end of a sentence it is often referred to as the ‘modal particle *le*’. In this text it is used to indicate that a new state of affairs or situation has appeared:

*Nǐmen yídìng hěn è le* ‘You must be starving’ (whereas previously you weren’t);

*Cài dōu liáng le* ‘All the food is getting/will get cold’ (whereas previously it was piping hot!)

You might find it helpful to think of this as the ‘new situation’ *le* or the ‘change of state’ *le*. This has to be accepted in its very broadest sense as the Chinese almost always use it with such questions as:

*Xiǎohái jǐ suì le?* ‘How old is the child?’ (Lit. Child/how many/years/become)

*Xiànzài jǐ diǎn le?* ‘What time is it?’ (Lit. Now/how many/o’clock/become)

where the concept of a change of state has been stretched to its limits.

## 7 Don't! *bié*

The negative imperative is formed by putting *bié* in front of the verb or adjective acting as a verb:

*Bié kèqì!* ‘Don’t stand on ceremony!’

*Bié shuō huà!* ‘Don’t speak!’

If *le* is added after the verb or adjective acting as a verb, the command is softened and sounds much less like an order:

*Bié hé jiǔ le!* ‘Now, now, no drinking!‘.

## 8 De with the complement of degree

The Chinese character for this *de* is quite different from the *de* in Chapter 3, but they are identical in *pinyin* because they are the same sound and are both toneless. The function of this *de* is to indicate what the Chinese call the complement of degree, i.e. it is used with a word indicating manner or degree as in the following pattern:

*Yòng de hěn hǎo* ‘to use something (very) well’.

The table below shows the essential workings of the complement of degree.

a Positive form:	S V <i>de</i> CD <i>Tā yòng de hěn hǎo.</i>	He uses it (very) well.
b Negative form:	S V <i>de bu</i> CD <i>Tā yòng de bù hǎo.</i>	He doesn't use it well.
c Question form with <i>ma</i> :	S V <i>de</i> CD <i>ma?</i> <i>Tā yòng de hǎo ma?</i>	
d Question form without <i>ma</i> :	S V <i>de</i> CD <i>bu</i> CD <i>Tā yòng de hǎo bu hǎo?</i>	Does he use it well?
e Question form using <i>zěnmeyàng</i> :	S V <i>de zěnmeyàng?</i> <i>Tā yòng de zěnmeyàng?</i>	How does he use it?
f With an object:	S V <sub>1</sub> O V <sub>1</sub> <i>de</i> CD <i>Tā yòng kuàizi yòng de hěn hǎo.</i>	
g With an object omitting the first verb:	S O V <i>de</i> CD <i>Tā kuàizi yòng de hěn hǎo.</i>	He uses chopsticks well.
h With object as topic:	O S V <i>de</i> CD <i>Kuàizi tā yòng de hěn hǎo.</i>	i As for chopsticks he uses them (very) well. ii He uses chopsticks (very) well.

Note that:

- 1 It is the complement of degree and not the verb which has things done to it when we use this construction in the negative or question form (see table above a–e).
- 2 The complement of degree marker *de* must always directly follow its verb. If there is an object then the construction is as in f or g above.
- 3 If we wish to emphasize the object this may be put before the subject and the first verb is omitted as in h. This has the effect of making the object into a kind of topic which the speaker then goes on to talk about (see 2.5).
- 4 When adjectives such as *hǎo* act as verbs and are standing alone, they are normally preceded in the affirmative by the adverb *hěn* ‘very’. Although in these cases *hěn* does not have the full force of the English word ‘very’ its function is to indicate that the statement is absolute. Without *hěn* some kind of contrast or comparison is implied:

*Tā hǎo.* ‘He is nice’ (implying that someone else isn’t)

*Tā hěn hǎo.* ‘He is (very) nice’ is complete in itself and has no such overtones.

The same rule applies when these adjectives are used as complements of degree in the positive form (see a, f, g and h above); but not in the negative or question forms (see b, c, d and e).

### Exercise 4.2

Make the following statements into sentences using the complement of degree given in brackets. Give more than one form where appropriate:

*Tā chī fàn (hěn duō)* → *Tā chī fàn, chī de hěn duō.*  
                                     → *Tā fàn chī de hěn duō.*  
                                     → *Fàn tā chī de hěn duō.*

- 1 *Wǒmen xuéxí (hěn shǎo)*
- 2 *Nǐmen shuō Hànyǔ (búcuò)*
- 3 *Tā shēnghuó (bù zěnmeyàng)*
- 4 *Nà ge rén zuò Zhōngguó cài (hěn hǎo)*
- 5 *Zhè ge péngyou shuō huà (bù duō).*

### Exercise 4.3

Turn the following statements into questions (three forms) and then answer them in the negative:

Nà ge xiǎoháir zuò de hěn hǎo.

- Nà ge xiǎoháir zuò de hǎo ma?
- Nà ge xiǎoháir zuò de hǎo bu hǎo?
- Nà ge xiǎoháir zuò de zěnmeyàng?
- Negative → Nà ge xiǎoháir zuò de bù hǎo.

1 Tā shuō Hán yǔ shuō de hěn hǎo.

2 Wǒ yí ge péngyou (my one MW friend = one of my friends) hē jiǔ hē de hěn duō.

3 Shǐ xiǎojie xuéxí de hěn màn (slow).

4 Gōngrén (worker) jǐntiān lái de hěn shǎo.

5 Yīngguórén zuò Yīngguó cài, zuò de hěn hǎo.

## 9 Duō/shǎo + verb

Duō or shǎo before the verb conveys the idea of doing more or less of the verb: *shǎo shuō huà* ‘speak less’, *duō chī fàn* ‘eat more’. This construction can only be used with full verbs and not with adjectives used as verbs. (*Shǎo gāo* does not mean ‘to be less tall’. This phrase would be meaningless.)

### i Interrogation – Chinese style?

Mr and Mrs Li have not previously met Miss Scurfield so they are anxious to find out who she is and what she does where. This is very typical of a first meeting – somewhere, you are being fitted into an imaginary filing system!

## Modesty

When talking to a second party, the Chinese have a long cultural tradition of denigrating themselves and their achievements but of praising the other party. They will do this both spontaneously and in response to compliments paid. As food is a major topic of conversation for the Chinese, this cultural tendency is often very pronounced when the quality and quantity of a meal are under discussion. Remarks by the host and the hostess that it is only ‘a very simple meal’ *yí dùn biàn fàn* (Lit. one/MW/simple/cooked rice) and ‘there are no dishes worth speaking of’ *méi shénme cài*, are almost *de rigueur* even though guests know they have gone to enormous trouble and expense to prepare the meal. Good examples of this modesty are Mrs Li’s *Wǒ zuò cài, zuò de bù hǎo, qǐng yuánliàng* and Miss Scurfield’s very Chinese answer to the question as to her own cooking ability: *Huì yìdiǎnr, dànshi jǐshù bù gāo*. Of

course it is common practice for the listener to follow up such remarks with a compliment to the speaker as occurs here. Mrs Li's cooking is delicious *Nǐ zuò cài, zuò de hěn hǎo*, and Miss Scurfield cooks wonderful English food *Tā Yīngguó cài zuò de fēicháng hǎo!*

### Exercise 4.4

Answer the following questions on the text:

- 1 *Wáng xiānsheng de nǚ péngyou shì shéi* (who)?
- 2 *Shǐ xiǎojie shì bu shi Yingguórén?*
- 3 *Shǐ xiǎojie zài Zhōngguó zuò shénme?*
- 4 *Zài Běijīng Dàxué shēnghuó hǎo ma?*
- 5 *Tāmen jǐntiān wǎnshàng chī shénme cài?*
- 6 *Wáng xiānsheng hé (and) Shǐ xiǎojie kuàizi yòng de hǎo bu hǎo?*
- 7 *Lǐ tàitai zuò cài zuò de zěnmeyàng?*
- 8 *Shǐ xiǎojie huì bu hui zuò Yīngguó cài?*

### Exercise 4.5

Translate the following passages into colloquial English:

- 1 *Wǒ huì zuò cài dànshi zuò de bù hǎo. Wǒ de nǚ péngyou shuō wǒ de jìshù bù gāo. Wǒmen yǒu hěn duō Zhōngguó péngyou, tāmen zuò Zhōngguó cài zuò de búcuò. Tāmen yòng kuàizi yě yòng de hěn hǎo. Nǐ ne?*
- 2 *Wǒ yí ge péngyou qù Fǎguó (France) gōngzuò (to work). Fǎguó cài hěn hǎo chī-tā chī de hěn duō. Xiànzài tā hěn pàng (fat) le. Tā àiren shuō: 'Nǐ shǎo chī fàn, duō gōngzuò zěnmeyàng?'. Wǒ péngyou shuō: 'Shǎo chī fàn hǎo dànshi duō gōngzuò bù hǎo!'*

### Exercise 4.6

Translate into Chinese:

- 1 I myself (*zìjǐ*) can't cook but my husband cooks marvellously.
- 2 Are you French? We are both French too.
- 3 Did that gentleman come at 2.30? No, he came at 3. (Use *shì...de*)
- 4 Where are you studying Chinese? How are you getting on?
- 5 He came from America. He is working here.
- 6 What's the time? You must be starving!
- 7 I've got no free time today but I'm not working tomorrow. Would 10 o'clock suit you? (Use *xíng*.)
- 8 She's not very good at using chopsticks but she cooks really good Chinese food.

# at the list

Lis't  
at the  
(i:)

**In this chapter you will learn**

- how to describe the rooms in an apartment/house
- how to thank your hosts for their hospitality and to understand their responses
- how to ask questions in the form of alternatives
- how to express direction towards or away from the speaker
- about auxiliary verbs

► Mr King and Miss Scurfield are just finishing their meal at the Lis'.

Lǐ	<i>Bié kèqì, zài duō chī yídiǎn(r). eat/a little/</i>	Don't stand on ceremony, go on, eat a bit more.
Wáng	<i>Chī bǎo le, cài dōu hěn hǎo chī. good/eat/</i>	I've had enough, it was delicious.
Lǐ (t.)	<i>Nǐmen yuàn yì hē kāfēi háishi hē chá? drink/tea/</i>	Would you like tea or coffee?
Wáng	<i>Wǒ suíbiàn. I/follow convenience/</i>	I'm easy.
Shī	<i>Hē chá ba. Drink/tea//</i> <i>(Hē wán le chá) Drink finish//tea/</i>	Let's have tea. (After having tea)
Lǐ (t.)	<i>Shǐ xiǎojie, kàn yìkàn wǒmen de xiǎo fángzì ba? /little/house//</i>	Would you like to have a look round our little house, Miss Scurfield?
Shī	<i>Hǎo, xièxie nín. Good/thank/you/</i> <i>Yǒngshòu, nǚ Eternal longevity/you/</i> <i>péi Lǐ xiānshèng tán huà accompany/Li/Mr/chat/ba . . . speech//</i>	Yes, please. Yongshou, you chat to Mr Li.
Lǐ (t.)	<i>Zhè shì chúfáng, dìfang hěn xiǎo, suǒyǐ bīngxiāng, xǐyījī dōu fàng zài wàimian tīng lǐ. Wǒmen zhǐ yǒu sān ge fángjiān, érzi yì jiān, nǚ'ér yì room/son/1/MW/daughter/</i>	This is the kitchen, it's very small so we have put the fridge and the washing machine in the hall outside. We only have three rooms, one for our son, one for our daughter . . .

	<i>jiān . . .</i> 1/MW/	
Shī	<i>Háizimen yǒu zìjǐ de fángjiān</i> Children/have/own//room/ <i>kěyǐ ānānjìngjìng de dú shū.</i> can/quiet//read/book(s)/	Children can study in peace if they have their own room.
Lǐ (t.)	<i>Wǒ hé lǎo Lǐ de fángjiān zhǐ</i> I/and/old/Li//room/only/ <i>hǎo yòu dāng</i> good/again/serve as/ <i>wòshì yòu dāng</i> bedroom/again/serve as/ <i>kètīng.</i> living-room/	Old Li's and my room has to serve both as bedroom and living-room.
Shī	<i>Nǐmen de kètīng bùzhì de</i> You//living-room/decorate/ <i>hěn piàoliang. Diànshí</i> very/beautiful/Television/ <i>shì cǎisè de háishi</i> be/colour//or/ <i>hēi-bái de?</i> black and white//	Your living-room is beautifully furnished. Is it a colour TV or black and white?
Lǐ (t.)	<i>Shì cǎisè de. Yào bu yao</i> Be/colour//Want/not/want/ <i>kàn yíxià?</i> look//	It's colour. Would you like to watch something?
Shī	<i>Bú yòng le. Shíjiān bù zǎo le,</i> Not/use//Time/not/early// <i>wǒmen (yīng)gāi huí qu le.</i> we/ought to/return/go//	No, thanks. It's getting late, we ought to be getting back.
Wáng	<i>Shíjiān guò de zhēn kuài. Lǐ</i> Time/pass/really/fast/Li/ <i>xiānsheng. Lǐ taitai, wǒmen</i> Mr/Li/Mrs/we/ <i>děi zǒu le, xièxie nǐmen de</i> must/leave//thank/you// <i>rèqíng zhāodài.</i> warm-hearted/hospitality/ <i>Wǒmen wánr de fēicháng</i> We/have fun/extremely/ <i>gāoxìng, gěi nǐmen tiān le bù</i> happy/for/you/add//not/ <i>shǎo máfan.</i> few/trouble(s)/	The time's flown. Mr and Mrs Li, we must be on our way, thank you for your marvellous hospitality. We've had a wonderful time and caused you no end of trouble.

Lǐ	<i>Méi shénme, huānyíng</i> Not have/what/welcome/ <i>nǐmen zài lái wánr.</i> you/again/come/have fun/	Not at all, feel free to come again.
Wáng/	<i>Yíding lái. Xièxie nǐmen.</i>	Thank you, we certainly will. Goodbye.
Shí	Certainly/come/Thank/you/ <i>Zàijiàn.</i>	

From Chapter 5 onwards, the appropriate measure word (MW) is placed in square brackets after its noun unless it is *ge*, in which case it is omitted. Some nouns have two measure words, *ge* and a more formal one. Where this is so, both have been indicated.

<b>zài</b> (adv.)	<i>again</i>
<b>chī-bǎo</b> (RV)	<i>to eat one's fill</i>
<b>hǎo chī</b> (adj.)	<i>tasty, delicious</i>
<b>yuàn yì</b> (aux. v)	<i>to be willing; to want</i>
<b>háishi</b>	<i>or (used in questions)</i>
<b>-wán</b> (RVE)	<i>to finish verb + -ing</i>
<b>kàn</b> (v)	<i>to look; to see; to watch;</i> <i>to read</i>
<b>xiǎo</b> (adj.)	<i>small</i>
<b>fángzì</b> (n) [ <b>suō</b> , <b>ge</b> ]	<i>house</i>
<b>péi</b> (v)	<i>to accompany</i>
<b>tán huà</b> (v-o, n)	<i>to chat; conversation</i>
<b>chúfáng</b> (n) [ <b>jiān</b> , <b>ge</b> ]	<i>kitchen</i>
<b>dìfang</b> (n)	<i>place</i>
<b>suǒyǐ</b> (conj.)	<i>therefore</i>
<b>bīngxiāng</b> (n)	<i>refrigerator</i>
<b>xǐyījī</b> (n) [ <b>tái</b> ]	<i>washing machine</i>
<b>fàng</b> (zài) (v)	<i>to put (in)</i>
<b>wàlmìlàn</b> (PW)	<i>outside</i>
<b>tīng</b> (n)	<i>hall</i>
<b>zhǐ</b> (adv.)	<i>only</i>
<b>fángjiān</b> (n)	<i>room</i>
<b>érzi</b> (n)	<i>son</i>
<b>jiān</b> (MW)	<i>for room</i>
<b>nǚ'ér</b> (n)	<i>daughter</i>
<b>háizi</b> (n)	<i>child</i>
<b>kěyǐ</b> (aux. v)	<i>can, may</i>
<b>ānjing</b> (adj.)	<i>quiet</i>

<b>... de</b>	<i>see 5.6</i>
<b>dú shū</b> (v-o)	<i>to study</i>
<b>hé</b> (conj.)	<i>and</i>
<b>lǎo</b> (adj.)	<i>old</i>
<b>zhǐ hǎo</b> (adv.)	<i>have to</i>
<b>yòu . . . yòu</b>	<i>both . . . and . . .</i>
<b>dāng</b> (v)	<i>to serve as; be</i>
<b>wòshì</b> (n)	<i>bedroom</i>
<b>kètīng</b> (n)	<i>living-room, lounge</i>
<b>bùzhì</b> (v)	<i>to decorate</i>
<b>piàoliang</b> (adj.)	<i>beautiful</i>
<b>diànshì</b> (jī) (n) [tái]	<i>television</i>
<b>cǎisè</b> (n)	<i>colour, multicoloured</i>
<b>hēi-bái</b> (adj.)	<i>black and white</i>
<b>yào</b> (aux. v, v)	<i>want to, must, to want</i>
<b>bù . . . le</b>	<i>not . . . any more</i>
<b>shíjiān</b> (n)	<i>time</i>
<b>zǎo</b> (adj.)	<i>early</i>
<b>(yīng)gāi</b> (aux. v)	<i>ought, should</i>
<b>huí</b> (v)	<i>to return</i>
<b>guò</b> (v)	<i>to pass, to cross</i>
<b>kuài</b> (adj.)	<i>quick, fast</i>
<b>děi</b> (aux. v)	<i>must, need</i>
<b>zǒu</b> (v)	<i>to leave, to walk, to go</i>
<b>rèqíng</b> (adj.)	<i>warm-hearted, enthusiastic</i>
<b>zhāodài</b> (n, v)	<i>hospitality, to entertain</i>
<b>tiān</b> (v)	<i>to add, increase</i>
<b>máfan</b> (n/v, adj.)	<i>trouble, troublesome</i>
<b>méi (yǒu) shénme</b>	<i>it's nothing</i>
<b>huānyíng</b> (v)	<i>to welcome</i>
<b>zàijiàn</b>	
<b>màn</b> (adj.)	<i>slow</i>

## Grammar

### 1 Resultative verbs (I)

Not all compound (two syllable) verbs are resultative, e.g. *rènshí*, *jièshào* and *xuéxí* are not. At this stage the easiest way to recognize resultative verbs is by their endings. We have three examples of common resultative verb endings (or complements of result) in this chapter viz. *-bǎo*, *-wán* and *-qu*. *Chī bǎo* means to 'eat one's fill' where *chī* is the verb and *bǎo* is the resultative

verb ending expressing satisfaction of appetite. *Bǎo* can only be used with *chī* in this way but it can stand on its own, meaning ‘to be full’.

Wǒ *bǎo* le ‘I’m full’ (change of state *le*). *Hē wán* means ‘to finish drinking’ where *hē* is the verb and *wán* is the resultative verb ending expressing completion. Unlike -*bǎo*, -*wán* may be found with many different verbs, e.g. *kàn*, *zuò*, *shuō*, *chī*.

## Resultative verbs (II): Simple directional endings

...-*qù* is a directional ending indicating direction away from the speaker or point of reference and is used with verbs of motion and transference of something or somebody from one place to another. Thus *huí qu* means to go back:

Wǒmen *gāi huí qu* le ‘We ought to be going back’ (change of state *le*), i.e. previously we didn’t have to go back, now we do...-*lái* is used in exactly the same way but to indicate direction towards the speaker or point of reference. *Huí lái* would mean ‘to come back’, the point of reference being where the speaker is when using it. For other common resultative verb endings of both types see the relevant sections in Chapter 12, pp.126–7. NB *Lái* and *qù* are normally toneless when used as simple directional endings.

### Exercise 5.1

Insert *lái* or *qù* in the following sentences depending on the position of ‘the speaker’ which is given in brackets:

Zhào xiānsheng *huí dàxué* \_\_\_\_ *le*. (We all stayed in town) →  
Zhào xiānsheng *huí dàxué qu* *le*.

- 1 *Dèng xiǎojie yào huí Zhōngguó* \_\_\_\_\_. (Point of reference is where she is now, i.e. *Yīngguó*)
- 2 *Érzi jìn* (*enter*) *kètīng* \_\_\_\_ *le*. (Everybody is in the lounge)
- 3 *Tā jìn wòshì* \_\_\_\_ *le*. (Everybody is in the lounge)
- 4 *Nǐmen yīnggāi huí jiā* \_\_\_\_\_. (Parents to children on the phone)
- 5 *Wǒ xiǎng huí Yīngguó* \_\_\_\_\_. (Speaker is in China).

## 2 Hái shi in questions

*Hái shi* ‘or’ is placed between two statements thereby making them alternatives from which the listener must choose one:

Nǐmen yuànyì hē kāfēi háishi hē chá? ‘Would you like tea or coffee?’

If the subject or object in both halves is the same it need not be repeated (this holds true for any two clauses, not just ones using *háishi*, and is a feature of Chinese), but there must be a verb in both halves even if it is the same verb:

Nǐ mǎi (buy) bīngxiāng háishi tā mǎi? ‘Are you buying the fridge or is he?’

Note in another example from the text:

*Diànshì shì cāisè de háishi hēi-bái de?* The *shì* in *háishi* is allowed to stand for the verb *shì* in the second half – this is the only exception to the rule. Try saying *háishi shì* and you’ll understand why.

### Exercise 5.2

Make the two statements into one question using *háishi*:

Nǐmen kàn diànshì.  
Nǐmen kàn shū (v-o read). } → Nǐmen kàn diànshì háishi kàn shū?

- 1 Tāmen xǐhuan chī fàn.  
Tāmen xǐhuan shuō huà.
- 2 Dèng tàitai yào mǎi (buy) bīngxiāng.  
Dèng tàitai yào mǎi xǐyǐjī.
- 3 Zhōu xiānsheng qù Fāguó.  
Zhāng xiānsheng qù Fāguó.
- 4 Shíjiān guò de kuài.  
Shíjiān guò de mǎn.
- 5 Wǒ péngyou de fángzi méi yǒu chúfáng.  
Wǒ péngyou de fángzi méi yǒu yùshì (bathroom).
- 6 Nǐ xuéxí Hànyǔ.  
Nǐ xuéxí dīlǐ (geography).

## 3 Reduplication of verbs

In much the same way as *yíxià* in 2.2, repeating the verb has the effect of softening the suggestion, question or statement. Monosyllabic verbs often have *yi* inserted between the two parts when they are repeated e.g. *kānyikàn*. Disyllabic verbs cannot be treated in this way so *jièshàoyijièshào* would be incorrect. Again, like *yíxià*, repeating the verb can also convey the meaning of ‘having a little go’ at doing the action of the verb in both the sense of a trial and in doing something fairly quickly. It

can also indicate repetition of the action with verbs such as *fùxí* ‘to revise’.

## 4 *Fàng + zài*

*Zài* + Place-Word is used after certain verbs such as *fàng* ‘to place’, *xiě* ‘to write’, *jì* ‘to record’, *zhù* ‘to live’, *shuì* ‘to sleep’, *zuò* ‘to sit’ and *zhàn* ‘to stand’. As we have seen in 4.3, adverbial phrases of place generally occur before the verb so these are exceptions to that rule. Some people say that *zài* is acting as a resultative verb ending in such cases, i.e. that something or somebody comes into existence at some place as a result of the action of the verb. (It may just be simpler to memorize these verbs separately when they are used in this way.)

## 5 Pluralizer suffix -men

We have already met *-men* used after pronouns in the singular to make them plural, *wǒ* becomes *wǒmen*, etc. Where it is deemed necessary to avoid ambiguity it can also be used after nouns indicating people to show that these are plural, although it is used quite sparingly and often only under certain conditions. The suffix *-men* is commonly used when addressing people in a speech.

*Péngyoumen!* ‘Friends’, *Tóngzhimen!* ‘Comrades’ (This could be thought of as the Friends, Romans and Countrymen use of *-men!*) or when making a statement about people in general as in the text:

*Háizimen yǒu zìjǐ de fángjiān . . .*

but is not used when the people are specified in any way:

*Chúfang lǐ de háizi* ‘The children in the kitchen’ (and not *Chúfang lǐ de háizimen*). It is probably best avoided unless you are sure of your ground.

## 6 Adverbs + *de*

Certain adjectives can be used both before verbs as adverbs (adverbial adjuncts) and after verbs as complements of degree. Such adverbs indicate the manner or state of an action and are used with the particle *de* before the verb:

Tā hěn gāoxìng de qù tāmen jiā wánr ‘He went off very happily to their home (to enjoy himself)’.

The Chinese character for this *de* is again quite different from the *de* we met in Chapters 3 and 4 but it is identical in *pinyin*. *De* may be omitted if the adverb is not itself modified, i.e. if there is no *hěn*, *fēicháng*, etc. in front of it:

Tā nǔlì xuéxí Hányǔ ‘She studies Chinese hard’.

## 7 Adjectives

Monosyllabic adjectives generally occur directly before the noun they refer to but as soon as they are modified by *hěn*, *fēicháng*, etc., the marker *de* (see 3.5) must be inserted between the adjective and its noun:

*Hǎo rén* ‘Good person/people’ but *Hěn hǎo de rén* ‘Very good person/people’.

## 8 Reduplication of adjectives

Some adjectives can also be repeated to indicate some degree of intensification:

*hóng liǎn* ‘(a) red face’ but *hónghóng de liǎn* ‘a really red face’.

With disyllabic adjectives the first syllable is repeated and then the second:

*gāogāoxìngxìng* (not *gāoxìnggāoxìng*) with the fourth syllable being stressed. Adjectives are often reduplicated when used as adverbs as in 5.6, with reduplicated disyllabic adjectives generally taking *de* before the verb. The *de* is optional with reduplicated monosyllabic adjectives:

*Háizimēn gāogāoxìngxìng de qù xuéxiào* ‘The children go happily to school’.

*Nǐmen gāi hǎohāor (de) xuéxí* ‘You ought to study hard’.

Note that in spoken Chinese, the second syllable of a reduplicated monosyllabic adjective is often pronounced in the first tone and takes an ‘r’ on the end. Not all adjectives can be reduplicated or used as adverbs in this way so it is advisable to learn them as you go along. In addition to *hǎo*, monosyllabic adjectives such as *kuài*, *màn* and *zǎo* frequently occur in this capacity.

## 9 Hé

Hé 'and' cannot be used nearly so frequently as 'and' in English. It can only be used to join two noun constructions or pronouns, but not to join two verbs or two verbal clauses:

Wǒ hé Lǐ xiānsheng 'Mr Li and I' (in Chinese *wǒ* normally comes first).

Zhōngguórén hé Fǎguórén dōu xǐhuan chī fàn. 'The Chinese and the French both enjoy eating'.

Now, however, some intellectuals who have been exposed to European languages may use *hé* to join two verbs or two verbal clauses.

## 10 Lǎo and xiǎo

Instead of using the Chinese equivalent of Christian or given names when addressing colleagues or people in your peer group on an informal basis, *lǎo* or *xiǎo* is often put before the surname depending on whether the person in question is older or younger than you. Thus an older colleague with the surname *Zhāng* would become *lǎo Zhāng*, whereas a younger colleague called *Dīng* would be *xiǎo Dīng*. There is no hard and fast rule about this, however, and some people in the same peer group who become *xiǎo* or *lǎo* will still be *xiǎo* or *lǎo* even in their fifties, sixties and beyond within that peer group. The choice of which one to use largely depends on your own judgement, but normal practice is to follow the form of address used by your colleagues who have been there longer. It also conveys a feeling of intimacy, note that *Lǐ tàitai* refers to her husband as *lǎo Lǐ*. It is not generally used when addressing foreigners.

## 11 Yòu...yòu...

*Yòu...yòu...* is used with two verbs or with two adjectives acting as verbs to express the meaning 'both... and...'

Tā yòu gāo yòu hǎokàn. 'He's both tall and good-looking' (good look/see).

Wǒ hé lǎo Lǐ de fángjiān zhǐ hǎo yòu dāng wòshì yòu dāng kètīng. 'Lao Li's and my room has to serve both as bedroom and sitting-room.'

## 12 The nominalizer *de*

- a Following on from 3.5 we see that *de* placed after a pronoun or adjective makes it into a noun:

*Diànshì shì cǎisè de hāishi héi-bái de?* ‘It is a colour TV or (a) black and white (one)?’

*Nán de sì suì.* ‘The boy (Lit. the male one) is 4.’

*Xiǎoháir shi tā de.* ‘The child is his/hers.’

Thus *wǒ de* on its own means ‘mine’, *nǐ de* ‘yours’, etc.

- b Where an adjective and a noun form one idea, *de* is omitted:

*Rèqíng zhāodài* ‘kind hospitality’.

*Fǎwén zázhì* ‘French magazines’.

## 13 *Bù* verb *le*

The negated form of the change of state *le* (see 4.6) is *bù* verb . . . *le* which conveys the meaning that the subject (if there is one) no longer does the action of the verb or that the situation as stated by the verb is no longer the case:

*Shíjiān bù zǎo le* (Lit. time not early any more) ‘It’s getting late’.

*Wǒ bù hē jiǔ le* (Lit. I not drink wine any more) ‘I’ve given up drinking’.

This is the only case in which *bù* can occur with *le*. Note that if the verb is *yǒu* then *méi* has to be used instead of *bù*:

*Wǒ méi yǒu diànshì le* ‘I no longer have a TV’.

## 14 Auxiliary verbs

There are several examples of auxiliary verbs in the text, viz. *yuànyì*, *kěyǐ*, *yào*, *gāi* and *děi*. (We have already met *xǐhuan* and *xiǎng* in previous chapters.) These occur before action verbs or verbal expressions and cannot take verbal endings or verbal suffixes. Compare the seven examples below:

*Wǒ yuànyì hē kāfēi* ‘I’m for coffee’ (as opposed to anything else).

*Wǒ xiǎng hē kāfēi* ‘I’d like some coffee’ (now or in the near future).

*Wǒ xǐhuan hē kāfēi* ‘I like (drinking) coffee’ (permanent state of mind).

Wǒ yào hē kāfēi 'I want some coffee' (now or in the near future, expressing a stronger desire than xiǎng).

Wǒ (yīng)gāi hē kāfēi 'I ought to drink coffee' (it is less fattening, etc.).

Wǒ děi hē kāfēi 'I must drink coffee' (necessity).

Wǒ kěyǐ hē kāfēi 'I can drink coffee' (capability or permission).

For further information on auxiliary verbs see Chapter 12, pp.127–30.

## 15 Duō and shǎo + noun

Duō and shǎo are exceptions to the rule that monosyllabic adjectives directly precede their nouns or that when modified they must take *de*. They cannot stand on their own before the noun but occur with *hěn* and without *de*:

*Hěn duō rén* 'many people'.

*Shǎo* is more likely to occur with *bù* with the meaning of 'quite a lot of' or 'quite a few':

*Bù shǎo máfan* 'quite a lot of trouble'.

It is important to note, however, that Chinese usage differs from the English in that a sentence such as 'many people go/want' is much more likely to be expressed as *qù de rén hěn duō* rather than *hěn duō rén qù*, although both are grammatically correct.

## 16 Punctuation

In a list, even if it only consists of two items, e.g. *bīngxiāng*, *xǐyǐjī*, the Chinese use a form of pause-mark or *dùnhào* (,) between the items and not a comma. A comma is reserved for longer pauses.

### Polite talk

The Chinese have a whole series of expressions for almost every social occasion ranging from *Chī bǎo le ma?* 'Have you eaten your fill?' or *Chī fàn le ma?* 'Have you eaten?' to *Huí lái le ma?* 'Have you come back?'. You might only have gone out to pump up your bicycle tyres but are still asked if you are back when you return five minutes later! Such expressions serve as a means of phatic communion between individuals, giving a feeling of community at very little cost.

to the individuals themselves. Mr King's little speech as he and Miss Scurfield are about to leave contains several typical examples of this 'polite talk' which we would consider as clichés but which appear very natural to the Chinese. *Gěi nímen tiān le bù shǎo máfan* is a wonderful example of this. *Màn* 'slow' features quite widely in polite talk with such exhortations as *Nímen mānmānr chī* 'Take your time (over eating)' if somebody has finished eating and he or the host does not wish the others to feel they have to follow suit. *Nímen mānmānr zuò ba* 'Sit slowly' you are told when the person you have come to see is nowhere to be seen and you are in for a long wait! When taking leave of somebody, the standard parting remark is 'go slowly' (usually repeated) *Màn zǒu, màn zǒu*. (If you are on your bicycle [or horse] it becomes *Màn qí, màn qí* 'Ride (astride) slowly!).

### Exercise 5.3

Correct the word order in the following sentences:

*Nǐ kàn diànshì zài zhèr* → *Nǐ zài zhèr kàn diànshì*.

- 1 *Dìfang xiǎo, bīngxiāng, xǐyǐjī dōu zài zhèr fàng.*
- 2 *Xiāohái hē niúnǎi* (milk) *zài chúfáng xiànzài.*
- 3 *Tā yuànyì qù zǎozāo.*
- 4 *Wǒ tiān le hěn duō máfan gěi nímen.*
- 5 *Lǐ láoshi* (teacher) *huí gāogāoxìngxìng de dàxué qu le.*
- 6 *Rén de wàimiàn dōu shì nánde.*

### Exercise 5.4

Translate into colloquial English:

*Jīntiān wǎnshàng xiāohái qù wǒ māma nàr* (my mum's place). *Dìfang hěn dà, bīngxiāng, xǐyǐjī tā dōu yǒu.* *Háizi xǐhuan wánr, wǒ māma yě xǐhuan dài* (to take) *tāmen qù kàn diànyǐng* (film) *dànshi tā yòu méi yǒu qián* (money) *yòu méi yǒu shíjiān; zhǐ hǎo ràng* (let) *tāmen zài dà huāyuán* (garden) *lǐ wánr.* *Wánr wán le tāmen kěyǐ zuò zài chúfáng lǐ tán huà, chī fàn.* *Chī wán fàn tāmen kěyǐ kàn* (cāisè) *diànshì.*

### Exercise 5.5

Translate into Chinese:

- 1 My friend and I (5.9) would like to go to America (*Měiguó*).
- 2 Where is he watching TV? In the bedroom or in the sitting-room? (Leave out *lǐ*.)
- 3 Father (*Fùqīn*) says he doesn't recognize you any more.
- 4 (When) he got old, (he) (*jiù*) gave up drinking. (Use *jiù* in the second clause and change of state *le* in both clauses.)

- 5 She likes teaching and studying. (Use *yòu . . . yòu* plus v-o constructions.)
- 6 He's no alternative but to stand (*zhàn*) there. (Use *zhǐ hǎo*.)
- 7 I'll finish decorating the living-room and then (*jiù*) quietly read a book.
- 8 Thank you for your wonderful hospitality. I'll certainly come again.

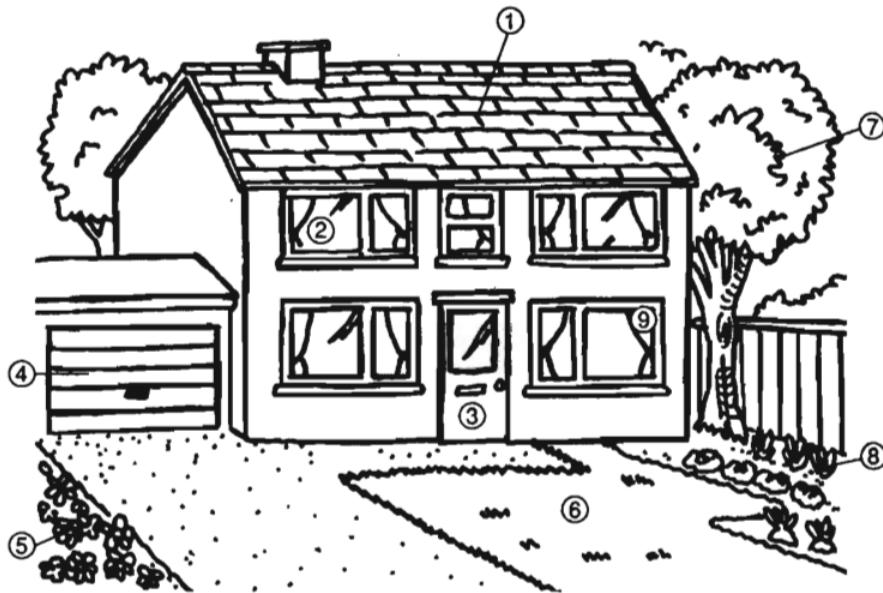


# house in the

**In this chapter you will learn**

- how to describe the appearance of a house and garden in simple terms
- how to describe the furniture and appliances in each room
- how to describe the most common items in each room

## a house, fángzǐ [suō, ge]

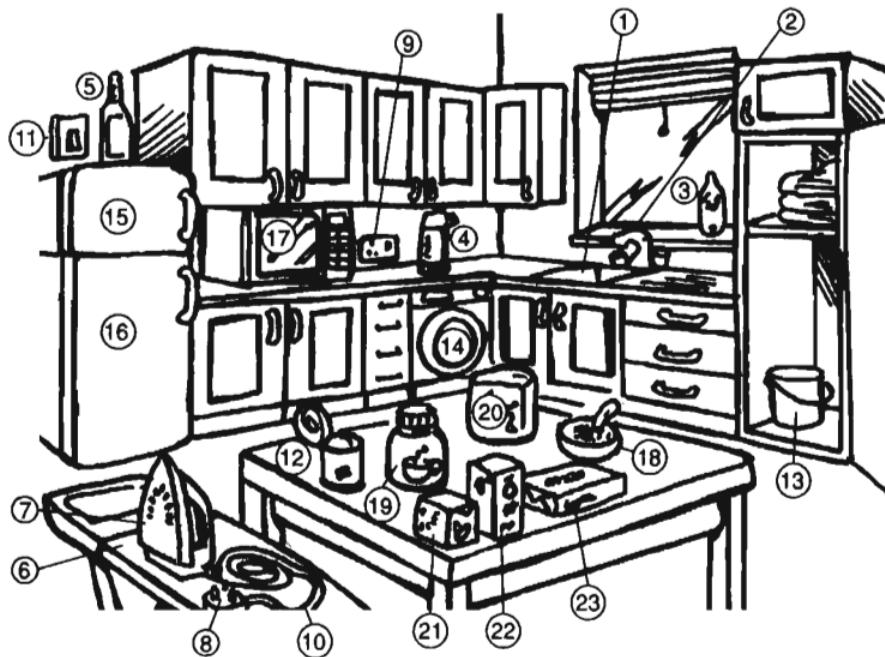


1	roof	<i>wūdǐng</i>	7	tree	<i>shù</i> [kē]
2	window	<i>chuānghu</i>	8	vegetables	<i>shūcài</i>
3	door	<i>mén</i>	9	curtain	<i>chuānglián</i>
4	garage	<i>chēkù</i>		ground floor	<i>yílóu</i>
5	flowers	<i>huā</i> [duō]		first floor	<i>èrlóu</i>
6	garden	<i>huāyuán</i>			

living-room, *kètīng*; dining-room, *fàntīng*

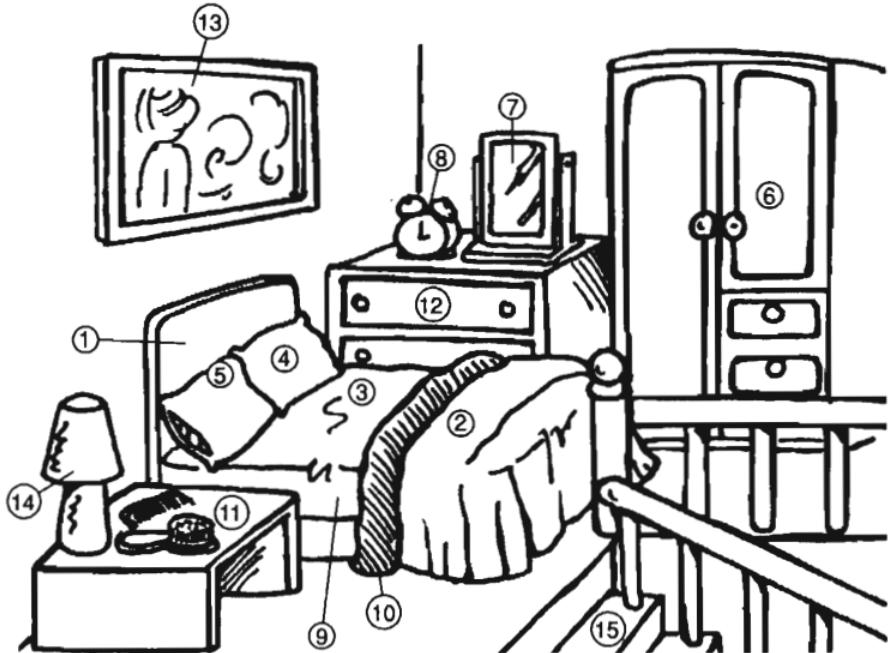
1 sofa	<i>shāfā</i>	18 radio	<i>shōuyīnjī</i>
2 chair	<i>yǐzi</i> [bǎ]	19 CD player	<i>guāngpán</i>
3 window	<i>chuānghu</i>	20 DVD player	<i>bōfàngjī</i>
4 curtain	<i>chuānglián</i>	21 coffee	<i>chájī</i>
5 carpet	<i>dìtān</i> [kuài]	22 table	<i>[zhāng, ge]</i>
6 electric fan	<i>diànshàn</i>	23 knife	<i>zhuōzi</i>
7 picture	<i>huàr</i> [zhāng]	24 fork	<i>[zhāng]</i>
8 bookcase	<i>shūjìà</i>	25 spoon	<i>dāozi</i> [bǎ]
9 vase	<i>huāpíng</i>	26 salt	<i>chāizi</i> [bǎ]
10 dictionary	<i>zìdiǎn</i> [běn]	27 pepper	<i>sháozi</i>
11 novel	<i>xiǎoshuō</i> [běn]	28 mustard	<i>yán</i>
12 book	<i>shū</i> [běn]	29 glass	<i>hújiāo</i>
13 telephone	<i>diànhuà(jí)</i> [tái]	30 vinegar	<i>jièmo</i>
14 television	<i>diànshì(jī)</i> [tái]	31 soya sauce	<i>bōlibēi</i>
15 table lamp	<i>táidēng</i>	32 cup	<i>cù</i>
16 electric light	<i>diàndēng</i>	33 radiator	<i>jiàngyóu</i>
17 ashtray	<i>yānhuīgāng</i>	(central heating	<i>bēizi</i>
			<i>nuǎnqìpiàn</i>
			<i>nuǎnqì</i> )

## kitchen, chúfáng [jīān, gē]

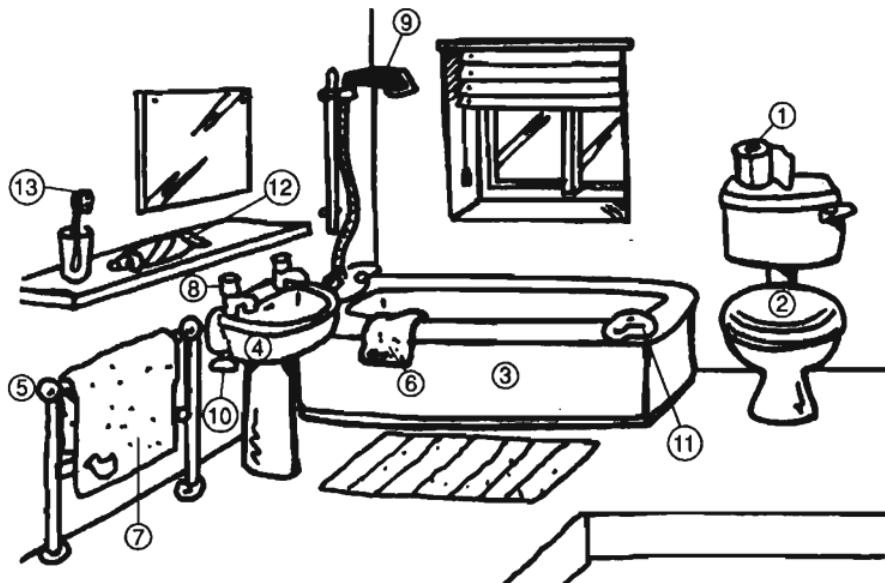


1 sink	xǐwǎncí, chízi	12 tin/can	guàntóu
2 tap	lóngtou	13 pail, bucket	shuǐtōng
3 bottle	píngzì	14 washing	xǐyījī
4 Thermos flask	rèshuǐpíng	machine	[tái]
5 wine bottle	jiǔpíng	15 freezer	bīngguì
6 ironing board	tàngyījìà	16 refrigerator	bīngxiāng
7 iron	yùndǒu	17 microwave	wēibōlú
8 plug	chātóu	oven	
9 socket	chāzuò	18 sugar	táng
10 electric cable	dìànxiàn	19 coffee	kāfēi
	[gēn]	20 flour	miànfěn
11 switch	kāiguān	21 Indian tea	hóngchá
		22 Chinese tea	lùchá
		23 Jasmine tea	huāchá

## bedroom, wòshì [jiān]



1	double bed (single bed,	shuāngrén- chuáng [zhāng] dānrén- chuáng)	7	mirror alarm clock mattress blanket brush or comb	jìngzi [kuài] nàozhōng chuángdiàn tǎnzi [zhāng] shūzi [bǎ]
2	duvet, quilt	bèizi [chuáng]	12	chest of drawers	wǔdōuchú, wǔdōugui
3	sheet	chuángdān	13	picture	huàr [zhāng]
4	pillow	zhěntou	14	table lamp	táidēng
5	pillow case	zhěntào	15	stairs, staircase	lóutī
6	wardrobe	yīgui			



1	toilet paper	wèishēngzhǐ [juān]	7	bath towel	yùjīn, dà móojīn [kuài]
2	toilet	cèsuō	8	tap	lóngtou
3	bath	xǐzǎopén, yùpén	9	shower	(linyù)
4	washbasin	xǐliǎnpén	10	plug	pēntóu
5	towel rail	máojīnjì	11	toilet soap	xiāngzào
6	face flannel	miànjīn, móojīn [kuài]	12	toothpaste	[kuài] yágāo [tōng]
			13	toothbrush	yáshuā [bǎ]

Although an increasing number of Chinese possess some modern appliances, some of the washing machines, showers, toilets and such like that you will see in less affluent homes, hotels or work units definitely belong to another era.



# my family

In this chapter you will learn

- how to talk about yourself and your family
- how to say how old you are
- how to compare and contrast

► Zhang Zhanyi is an attendant at the Beijing Hotel. In this lesson he introduces himself and his family:

Wǒ jiào Zhāng Zhānyī. / Wǒ jiā zài Běijīng. / Wǒ jiā yǒu wǔ kǒu rén / –  
My name is Zhang Zhanyi. / My home is in Beijing. / There are 5 people in my family / –

bàba, māma, gēge, jiějie hé wǒ. / Wǒ méi yǒu didi, yě méi yǒu mèimei. /

Mum, Dad, an elder brother, an elder sister and me. / I haven't got any younger brothers or sisters. /

Wǒ jiějie sānshí sui, hái méi yǒu zhǎo dào duixiàng ne (= hái méi yǒu jié hūn ne!),

My elder sister is 30 and still hasn't got a steady boyfriend (i.e. is still unmarried),

zhè zhōng qíngkuàng zài Zhōngguó hěn shǎo. / Gēge bǐ jiějie xiǎo liǎng sui,

this is very unusual in China. / My brother is 2 years younger than my sister,

bǐ wǒ dà yí sui bàn. /

but 1½ years older than me. /

Bàba, māma niánjiù bìjiào dà le. / Bàba jīnnián liùshíyī sui, shì (yí) ge lǎo jiàoyuán,

Mum and Dad are getting on a bit. / Dad is 61 this year, he has been a teacher for many years,

zài Běijīng Yǔyán Xuéyuàn jiāo wàiguó liúxuéshēng Hànyǔ. /

and teaches foreign students Chinese at the Beijing Languages Institute.\*

Māma bǐ bàba xiǎo sān sui, yǐqián shì ge gōngrén,

Mum is 3 years younger than Dad, she used to be a (factory) worker

xiànzài yǐjīng tuixiū le. / Tāmèn liǎ shèntǐ fēicháng hǎo. /

but she's (already) retired now. / They are both in excellent health. /

Jiějie zài yīyuàn dāng yīshēng, gēge zài bùduì dāng bīng,

My sister is a doctor in a hospital, my elder brother is in the army,

suǒyǐ tāmen bù cháng(cháng) zài jiā. /

so they are not at home very much. /

Wǒ zài Běijīng Fàndiàn dāng fúwùyuán, gōngzuò yǒu yìdiǎn(r) dāndiào

I am an attendant at the Beijing Hotel, my work is a bit monotonous

dànshí wǒ hé tóngshímen de guānxì hěn hǎo, suǒyǐ hái guò de qù. /

but my workmates and I all get along very well so it's not too bad. /

Wǒmen yì jiā rén gǎnqíng yě dōu hěn hǎo, rìzì guò de hái búcuò! /

We're a very close family too, so life is pretty good on the whole! /

\* Now known as Běijīng Yǔyán Dàxué (Beijing Language [and Culture] University).

<b>jiào</b> (v)	<i>to be called, to call</i>
<b>kǒu</b> (MW)	<i>for family members</i>
<b>bàba</b> (n)	<i>daddy, dad</i>
<b>māma</b> (n)	<i>mummy, mum</i>
<b>gēge</b> (n)	<i>elder brother</i>
<b>jiějie</b> (n)	<i>elder sister</i>
<b>dìdi</b> (n)	<i>younger brother</i>
<b>mèimei</b> (n)	<i>younger sister</i>
<b>zhǎo</b> (v)	<i>to look for</i>
<b>-dào</b> (RVE)	<i>to manage to do the action of the verb, up to</i>
<b>zhǒng</b> (MW)	<i>sort, kind</i>
<b>qíngkuàng</b> (n)	<i>situation</i>
<b>bǐ</b> (prep.)	<i>compared with</i>
<b>dà</b> (adj.)	<i>big, grown up</i>
<b>bàn</b> (num)	<i>half</i>
<b>nánjī</b> (n)	<i>age</i>
<b>bìjiào</b> (adv.)	<i>relatively</i>
<b>Jīnnián</b> (TW)	<i>this year</i>
<b>Jiàoyuán</b> (n)	<i>teacher (as a profession, not a title)</i>
<b>Běijīng Yǔyán</b>	<i>Beijing Languages Institute*</i>
<b>Xuéyuàn*</b> (N)	
<b>jiāo</b> (v)	<i>to teach</i>
<b>wàiguó</b> (adj., n)	<i>foreign (country)</i>
<b>llúxuéshēng</b> (n)	<i>student studying abroad</i>
<b>yǐqián</b> (adv., conj.)	<i>previously, before</i>
<b>gōngrén</b> (n)	<i>worker</i>
<b>xiànzài</b> (TW)	<i>now, at present</i>
<b>yǐjīng</b> (adv.)	<i>already</i>
<b>tuìxiū</b> (v)	<i>to retire</i>
<b>shēntǐ</b> (n)	<i>health, body</i>
<b>yīyuàn</b> (n)	<i>hospital</i>
<b>yīshēng</b> (n)	<i>doctor (as a profession, not a title)</i>
<b>bùduì</b> (n)	<i>army</i>
<b>bīng</b> (n)	<i>soldier</i>
<b>cháng</b> (cháng) (adv.)	<i>often</i>
<b>Běijīng Fàndiàn</b> (N)	<i>Beijing Hotel</i>
<b>fúwùyuán</b> (n)	<i>attendant</i>
<b>gōngzuò</b> (n, v)	<i>work, to work</i>
<b>dāndiào</b> (adj.)	<i>monotonous, dull</i>
<b>tóngshì</b> (n)	<i>colleague, fellow worker</i>
<b>guānxì</b> (n)	<i>relation(ship)</i>
<b>hái</b> (adv.)	<i>still, in addition</i>
<b>gǎnqíng</b> (n)	<i>feeling, emotion</i>
<b>rìzì</b> (n)	<i>day, date</i>

\* Běijīng Yǔyán Xuéyuàn is now known as Běijīng Yǔyán Dàxué (Beijing Language [and Culture] University).

# Grammar

## 1 More on names

A Chinese wishing to know your name can either ask for your surname *Nǐ xìng shénme?* (*Lit.* You surnamed what?) ‘What is your surname?’, to which the reply is *Wǒ xìng Zhāng/Lǐ/Wáng*, etc. or for your given name, which in the reply is almost invariably prefaced by the surname. Thus *Nǐ jiào shénme míngzì?* (*Lit.* You called what given name) ‘What is your name?’ normally elicits the response *Wǒ jiào* or *Wǒ (de) míngzì jiào* Surname (one character) + given name (normally two characters though single ones do exist).

## 2 ‘Mum and dad’ or ‘Dad and mum’?

Note the word order of the following: *bàba* precedes *māma*, *gēge* precedes *jiějie* and *dìdì* precedes *mèimeimei*.

## 3 Use of *yě*

*Yě* joins two verbal clauses here and although its basic meaning remains unchanged it may be translated as ‘either’ or ‘and’ when used in this way. The example from the text: *Wǒ méi yǒu dìdi yě méi yǒu mèimeimei* could also have read *Wǒ méi yǒu dìdi hé mèimeimei*. (NB *hé* can only join two noun constructions or pronouns). To an English speaker the latter appears neater but the Chinese seem to like the construction with *yě* and use it frequently:

*Wǒ jiāo Yīngyǔ, yě jiāo Fǎyǔ* ‘I teach English and French’ although *Wǒ jiāo Yīngyǔ hé Fǎyǔ* would be equally correct.

Note that when *dōu* and *yě* occur together *yě* always precedes *dōu*. (See the example in the text.)

## 4 *Hái méi yǒu . . . ne*

*Méi yǒu* (*Lit.* not have) precedes the verb to indicate that the action of the verb has not taken place. *Yǒu* may be omitted:

*Tā méi (yǒu) jié hūn* ‘He/she isn’t/hasn’t married’.

The addition of *hái* before *méi* and *ne* at the end of the clause convey the idea that the situation is ongoing, thus in:

Wǒ jiějie . . . hái méi yǒu zhǎo dào duìxiàng ne

the expectation appears to be that she will or that at least she's still in with a chance!

## 5 The comparative with *bǐ*

The simplest form of comparative is *A bǐ B + appropriate adjective:*

*Gēge bǐ jiějie xiǎo* (Lit. Elder brother/compared with/elder sister/small)

'Elder brother is younger than elder sister.'

*Gēge bǐ wǒ dà* (Lit. Elder brother/compared with/me/big)

'Elder brother is older than me.'

The amount by which B is older or younger than A comes after *dà* or *xiǎo*:

*Gēge bǐ jiějie xiǎo liǎng suì* 'Elder brother is two years younger than elder sister.'

*Gēge bǐ wǒ dà yí suì bàn* 'Elder brother is 1½ years older than me.'

### Exercise 7.1

Make each of the two statements below into one comparative sentence using *bǐ*:

*Wǒ sānshí suì.*  
*Wǒ péngyou èershíliù suì.* } → *Wǒ bǐ wǒ péngyou dà sì suì.*

1 *Érzi shísì suì.*

*Nǚ'ér jiǔ suì.*

2 *Jiějie sānshíwǔ suì.*

*Mèimei èrshíjiǔ suì.*

3 *Shǐ Àilǐ èrshíyī suì.*

*Wáng Yōngshòu èrshísān suì.*

4 *Lǐ tàitai sìshíqī suì.*

*Lǐ xiānsheng wǔshí suì.*

5 *Zhōngguó chá hǎo hé.*

*Zhōngguó jiǔ bù hǎo hé.*

6 *Zhōngguó cài hǎo chī.*

*Yīngguó cài bù hǎo chī.*

7 *Tā de shéntǐ hǎo.*

*Nǐ de shéntǐ bù hǎo.*

8 *Wǒ nán péngyou gāoxìng.*

*Wǒ bù gāoxìng.*

## 6 *Dà* and *xiǎo*

With the basic meaning 'big' and 'small', respectively, *dà* and *xiǎo* are used here to express age, usually in the comparative sense even if this is not explicit. When asking a child her/his age the question form *Nǐ jǐ suì le?* is used but for adults it is:

*Nǐ niánjì duō dà le?* (Lit. You/year record/how/big/) or  
*Nǐ duō dà niánjì le?* (Lit. You/how/big/year record/)

the modal particle *le* being used to convey the idea that the record of years has become big. *Duō* is used in a similar way with other adjectives such as *cháng* ‘long’, *kuān* ‘wide’ to ask the degree of length, width, etc. and is translated as ‘how’ in such cases as above: *Duō cháng?* ‘How long?’ Other compounds with *dà* and *xiǎo* are: *dàren* (big person) ‘adult’; *dàxué* (big study) ‘university’; *xiǎoxué* (small study) ‘primary school’; *dàjiā* (big home) ‘everybody’. NB *xiǎorén* (small person) ‘a mean person’! As a verb, *dà* conveys the idea of growing up:

*Háizi dà le* ‘The child(ren) has/have grown up’ (Lit. got big).

When stating that an adult is old or young in absolute terms then the adjectives *lǎo* (old) and *niánqīng* (years light) are used not *dà* and *xiǎo*.

## 7 *Yi* + measure word

When *yi* occurs with a measure word in the spoken language, the *yi* is often omitted:

*Wǒ yǒu (yi) ge hǎo tóngshì* ‘I have a good colleague!’

*Bāba . . . shì (yi) ge lǎo jiàoyuán* ‘Dad’s been a teacher for many years.’

## 8 Job + *yuán*

In post-1949 China many job descriptions were changed to convey a greater sense of equality. *-yuán* was added to the end of the description to indicate the person engaged in such an activity, e.g. *jiàoyuán* (teach/person) ‘teacher’; *fúwùyuán* (serve/person) ‘attendant’; *shòuhuòyuán* (sell/goods/person) ‘shop assistant’; *shòupiàoyuán* (sell/ticket/person) ‘bus conductor, booking office clerk, box-office clerk’. *Yuán* also has the meaning of ‘member’, e.g. *dǎngyuán* ‘party member’.

## 9 Indirect object before direct object

This basically follows English usage:

*Bāba . . . zài Běijīng Yǔyán Xuéyuàn jiāo wàiguó liúxuéshēng*  
(I.O) *Hànyú* (D.O).

## 10 Sentence final particle *le*

Although used in the same position as the change of state *le* (see 4.6), i.e. at the end of a sentence, this *le* indicates that a certain state of affairs has already taken place. Some people call this the accomplished fact *le*. *Māma . . . xiànzài yǐjīng tuìxiū le.* Even the Chinese find it difficult to use *le* consistently so any pointers are invaluable. One such is that *le* is almost invariably found at the end of a clause with *yǐjīng* ‘already’ as in the example taken from the text. The question form is made by adding *ma* to the statement ending with *le* or by adding *méi yǒu* after it:

*Māma tuìxiū le ma?*

*Māma tuìxiū le méi yǒu?\**

*Māma tuìxiū méi tuìxiū?* is also possible.

(Light stress only on *méi* with *yǒu* becoming toneless.)

} ‘Has mum retired?’

\* This is identical to the choice-type question form found in 1.5 except that the verb is not repeated. *Yǒu* is never omitted in this type of question form. The negative form is made with *méi yǒu* + verb where *yǒu* may be omitted.

*Māma méi yǒu tuìxiū.*

} ‘Mum hasn’t retired.’

## 11 More on the topic construction

In the two sentences

*Tāmen liǎ shèntǐ fēicháng hǎo* (Lit. [As for] they/two/body/ extremely/good) and

*Wǒmen yì jiā rén gǎnqíng yě dōu hěn hǎo* (Lit. [As for] our/one/ family/people/feelings/also/all/very/good)

both *tāmen liǎ* and *wǒmen yì jiā rén* are acting as topics, the subject of the two sentences being *shèntǐ* and *gǎnqíng* respectively. The direct object can also be emphasized by putting it at the beginning of the sentence as a topic which is often ‘resumed’ with *dōu* before the verb. In this case, *dōu* refers back to the object and not to the subject. Note that *dōu* can never refer to a direct object which follows the verb:

*Bīngxiāng, xǐyījī wǒ dōu yǒu* (Lit. [As for] fridge/wash clothes machine/I/both/have) ‘I’ve got a fridge and a washing machine’.

As was said in 2.5 this is a favourite construction of the Chinese with its own distinctive flavour.

## 12 *Yǒu yìdiǎn(r) + adjective*

'A little + adjective'. When the adjective used conveys a negative or derogatory sense, even if this is only subjective on the part of the speaker, then *yǒu yìdiǎn(r)* is put in front of the adjective. If no such sense is implied then the order is adjective + *yìdiǎn(r)*:

*Rè yìdiǎn(r) hǎo.* 'A bit hotter would be better.'

*Yǒu yìdiǎn(r) rè.* 'It's a bit on the hot side.'

## 13 Potential resultative verbs

(For resultative verbs see 5.1.) A potential result is indicated by the insertion of *de* for the positive form ('can') and *bu* for the negative form ('cannot') between the verb of action and its resultative ending:

*Guò qu* 'to pass' (as of one's days), *guò de qù* 'able to pass', *guò bu qù* 'unable to pass'; *kànjiàn* 'to see'; *kàn de jiàn* 'can see', *kàn bu jiàn* 'can't see'.

The question form can either be made by adding *ma* to the positive form of the statement or by putting the positive and negative forms together as in 1.5:

*Tā zhǎo de dào zhǎo bu dào duìxiàng?* } Can he/she find a  
*Tā zhǎo de dào duìxiàng ma?* } marriage partner?

(Note that the tone comes back onto simple directional endings and onto the first 'half' of compound directional endings when they form part of a potential resultative verb.)

## 14 *Yí + noun*

In this context *yí* + noun conveys the idea of 'all', 'whole':

*Yí jiā rén* 'the entire family', *yí shēn hàn* (Lit. all/body/sweat)  
'covered in perspiration',

*yí liǎn hóng* (Lit. whole/face/red) 'blush to the roots', etc.

## i More polite talk

A whole series of conventional formulae used to exist in pre-1949 China for asking and replying to such questions as one's name, the state and well being of one's wife and children (note wife not husband!), etc., even one's house was elevated to the rank of 'mansion' when its whereabouts were being ascertained! Perhaps the most common of these formulae is the question *Nín guì xìng?* (*Lit. Your/expensive/surname*), often translated as 'Your honourable surname, sir?' The correct response used to be *Bí xìng* (*Lit. Miserable/humble surname*) whatever it was. The question form is still quite widely used today but not the response. One may also be asked about one's 'expensive country' *guì guó* or one's 'expensive school' *guì xiào*! Such terms are commonly employed in letters for instance, where the language tends to be less idiomatic and more literary in style.

## Brothers and sisters

A Chinese will always tell you whether his brother or sister is younger or older than himself by using the appropriate term. If he simply wishes to tell you that there are X number of sisters in the family without specifying how many are older and how many are younger he can simply use the term *jiěmèi* combining half of *jiějie* with half of *mèimei*, but this does imply that there is at least one of each. (An alternative to *jiěmèi* is *zǐmèi*.) Similarly there is a collective term for brothers, *xiōngdì*, although in this case a more literary term for elder brother is employed. Oriental inscrutability comes into play in that *xiōngdì* is equally acceptable as *dìxīōng* but *mèijiē* and *mèizǐ* are incorrect. Members of the congregation in the Chinese Protestant Church often refer to themselves as *dìxīōng*, *zǐmèi*.

### Exercise 7.2

Fill in the blanks with the number supplied in the brackets:

*Zhāng xiānsheng yǒu \_\_\_\_ ge jiějie* (3) → *Zhāng xiānsheng yǒu sān ge jiějie*.

- 1 *Shǐ xiǎojie yǒu \_\_\_\_ ge gēge hé \_\_\_\_ ge mèimei.* (2, 1)
- 2 *Wǒ dìdì \_\_\_\_ suì.* (27)
- 3 *Lǎo jiàoyuán \_\_\_\_ suì, shéntǐ hěn hǎo.* (80)
- 4 *Zhè ge gōngrén bǐ nà ge gōngrén xiǎo \_\_\_\_ suì.* (5)
- 5 *Tā àiren bǐ ta māma dà \_\_\_\_ suì.* (4)
- 6 *\_\_\_\_ ge fúwùyuán zài Bēijīng Fàndiàn gōngzuò.* (99)
- 7 *Nà ge yīshēng hé \_\_\_\_ bēi jiǔ hé \_\_\_\_ bēi kāfēi.* (6, 2)

**Exercise 7.3**

Answer the following questions on the text:

- 1 *Zhāng Zhànyī de jiā zài nǎr?*
- 2 *Tā jiā yǒu jǐ kǒu rén?*
- 3 *Tā yǒu méi yǒu dìdì, mèimei?*
- 4 *Tā jiějie jié hūn lè méi you?*
- 5 *Tā gēge duō dà niánjì le?*
- 6 *Zhāng Zhànyī niánjì duō dà le?*
- 7 *Tā bàba zài nǎr jiāo Hànnyǔ?*
- 8 *Tā jiāo shéi Hànnyǔ?*
- 9 *Tā māma bì bàba dà ma? Māma niánjì duō dà le? Hái gōngzuò ma?*
- 10 *Tāmen liǎ shèntǐ zěnmeyàng?*
- 11 *Zhāng Zhànyī dāng gōngrén ma?*
- 12 *Tā de gōngzuò guò de qù guò bu qù?*
- 13 *Tāmen yì jiā rén gǎnqíng hǎo háishi bù hǎo?*

**Exercise 7.4**

Translate the following passages into colloquial English:

- 1 *Wǒ jiějie èrshíjiǔ suì, hái méi yǒu jié hūn ne. Tā zài Shànghǎi dāng yīshēng. Tā hěn xǐhuān tā de gōngzuò. Wǒ māma shuō tā yīnggāi jié hūn, yí ge nǚ háizi bù jié hūn bù xíng. Wǒ jiějie shuō, wǎn yìdiǎn(r) jié hūn méi yǒu guānxi dànshi wǒ māma bù tóngyì (agree).*
- 2 *Zhōu Gēngxīn shì Tiānjīn rén. Tā shì ge gōngrén. Tā jiā yǒu sì kǒu rén – bàba, māma, didi hé tā. Didi èrshíyī suì, bì tā xiǎo yí suì bàn. Didi zài Běijīng Dàxué xuéxí Yingyǔ. Zhōu Gēngxīn yě xuéxí Yingyǔ dànshi tā xuéxí de shíjiān hěn shǎo, suǒyǐ tā Yingyǔ hěn bù hǎo.*

**Exercise 7.5**

Translate into Chinese:

- 1 What's your name? My name is Shi Aili.
- 2 She has neither brothers nor sisters.
- 3 I invited two Chinese friends to come to my house for dinner (*wǎnfàn* 'late rice') tomorrow evening.
- 4 That chap (3)/studying Chinese (2)/at the Beijing Language University (1)/hasn't come yet. (Follow the word order indicated. Link 2 and 3 with *de*.)
- 5 My friend is twenty-eight but she is still unmarried.
- 6 Has that American doctor in Shanghai already retired?
- 7 That British girl (3)/studying Chinese (2)/at Beijing University (1)/is a fantastic cook. (Use complement of degree.)

- 8 My wife and her two younger sisters are very close.
- 9 Many Chinese speak English really well.
- 10 My girlfriend is one year older than I am but two years younger than my elder brother.
- 11 That person is not very nice so I haven't invited him for a drink.
- 12 We haven't got a washing machine or a colour TV but we still manage all right. (Use the topic construction with *dōu*.)



# my home

**In this chapter you will learn**

- how to describe your living conditions
- more about directional endings
- how to use the conjunctions *before, when* and *after*
- how to say where places and things are

## ► Zhang Zhanyi describes his family's living conditions.

*Wǒmen zhùde hěn jiǎndān, zhǐ yǒu sān jiān fáng jiā shang chúfáng*  
 We live very simply, we only have three rooms plus kitchen  
*hé cèsuō. / Fùmǔ de wòshì tóngshí yě dāng kètīng. /*  
 and toilet. / My parents' bedroom also serves as the living-room. /

*Wǒ hé gēge shuì(zài) yí ge fángjiān, wǒmen měi (ge) rén (dōu) yǒu*  
 My elder brother and I sleep in one room, we each have  
*yì zhāng shūzhuō, zài nàr dú shū zǒng(shí) bǐ zài kètīng lǐ ānjìng de*  
*duō. /*

a desk, it's always much quieter studying there than in the living-room. /

*Jiějie de fángjiān bǐ wǒmen xiōngdì liǎ de nà jiān hái xiǎo,*  
 My elder sister's room is even smaller than my brother's and mine,  
*zhǐ fàng de xià yì zhāng chuáng, yì zhāng xiǎo xiǎo de zhuōzi hé yì bǎ*  
*yǐzi. /*

it can only hold a bed, a tiny table and a chair. /

*Wǒmen xiōngdì, zǐmèi cānjiā gōngzuò yǐhòu, chúle xiūxi nà tiān*  
*yǐwài,*

After my brothers and sister and I started working, we're not at home  
*hěn shǎo zài jiā, suǒyǐ zhù de méi yǒu yǐqíán nàme jǐ, fùmǔ yě bǐ*  
 very much, apart from our day off, so we're not as cramped as we used to be,

*yǐqíán zhù de shūfu yǐxīē. /*

and my parents are also somewhat more comfortable. /

*Wǒ xiǎng zài Xīfāng yǐbān zhùfáng bǐ wǒmen dà xiē. / Nǐmen chúle*  
 I think accommodation in the West is generally more spacious than ours. / Apart

*wòshì yǐwài hái yǒu kètīng, yǒude yǒu shūfáng, yǒude hái yǒu*  
 from the bedroom(s), you also have a living-room, some people have a study, others have a dining-room too  
*fàntīng, tīngshuō yǒu huāyuán de yě hěn duō. /*  
 and there are also many with gardens. /

*Wǒmen jiā jiājù bù duō, kètīng lǐ yǒu yì zhāng shuāngrénchuáng,*  
*yí ge*

We haven't got much furniture in our house, there's a double bed, a *shāfā*, *yí ge yīguì*, *yí tái diànshi(jī)*. / *Hái yǒu yí tào zǔhéyīnxiǎng*, settee, a wardrobe and a TV in the living-room. / There is also a hi-fi *shí Riběn huò*. / *Féngrènji shì guóchǎn huò*. / which is Japanese. / The sewing-machine is made here (in China). /

*Chī fàn de shíhou, dà yuánzhuō hé yǐzi dōu bān jìnlaì. / Dōngtiān*  
 We bring in the big round table and chairs when we eat. / In winter  
*tīānqì lěng de shíhou, dānwèi gěi wǒmen shāo nuǎnqì. / Suírán nǐmèn*

when the weather is cold, the (work) unit turns on the central heating.  
/ Although

fādá guójia gōngzī bǐ wǒmen gāo de duō, dànshi wǒmen  
wages in (your) advanced countries are much higher than ours, our  
fángzū, shuǐdiànfèi děng dōu bǐ nǐmen piányi duō le. /  
rents, water and electricity charges, etc. are all much cheaper than  
yours. /

Wǒmen jiā dìfang bù dà, kěshì àn Zhōngguó xiànzài de biāozhǔn,  
Our home is quite small, but by present Chinese standards  
wǒmen guò de hái búcuò. /  
we're doing pretty well.

jiǎndān (adj.)	<i>simple</i>
jiā (shang) (v)	<i>to add</i>
fùmǔ (n)	<i>parents</i>
tóngshí (TW)	<i>at the same time</i>
shuì(jiào) (v[-o])	<i>to sleep, go to bed</i>
měi (p./adj.)	<i>each, every</i>
shūzhuō (n) [zhāng]	<i>desk</i>
nàr	<i>there</i>
zǒng(shí) (adv.)	<i>always</i>
xiōngdì (n)	<i>brothers</i>
-xià (RVE)	<i>have the capacity to</i>
chuáng (n) [zhāng]	<i>bed</i>
zhuōzì (n) [zhāng]	<i>table</i>
yǐzi (n) [bǎ]	<i>chair</i>
zǐmèi (n)	<i>sisters</i>
cānjiā (v)	<i>to join; attend, take part in</i>
yǐhòu (conj.; adv.)	<i>after; afterwards</i>
chúle ( . . . yǐwà)	<i>except, apart from</i>
xiǔxi (v)	<i>to rest</i>
tiān (n)	<i>day; sky, heaven</i>
zhù (v)	<i>to live (in, at)</i>
jǐ (adv.; v)	<i>crowded; to squeeze</i>
shūfu (adj.)	<i>comfortable</i>
(yǐ)xiē (adv.; MW)	<i>somewhat; some, a few</i>
Xīfāng (n)	<i>the West</i>
yǐbān (adv.; adj.)	<i>generally; general</i>
zhùfáng (n)	<i>housing, accommodation</i>
yǒude (p.)	<i>some</i>
shūfáng (n)	<i>study</i>
tīngshuō (v)	<i>be told, hear of</i>
jiājù (n)	<i>furniture</i>

<b>shuāngrén-chuáng</b> (n) [zhang]	<i>double bed</i>
<b>zūhéyīnxiǎng</b> (n) [tào]	<i>hi-fi</i>
<b>Riběn</b> (N)	<i>Japan</i>
<b>huò</b> (n)	<i>goods</i>
<b>féngrèn jī</b> (n) [tái]	<i>sewing-machine</i>
<b>guóchǎn</b> (adj.)	<i>made in one's country</i>
<b>... de shíhou</b>	<i>when ...</i>
<b>yuán</b> (adj.)	<i>round</i>
<b>bān</b> (v)	<i>to (re)move</i>
<b>-jìnlai</b> (CDE)	<i>verb + in (See 8.9)</i>
<b>dōngtiān</b> (n)	<i>winter</i>
<b>tiānqì</b> (n)	<i>weather</i>
<b>lěng</b> (adj.)	<i>cold</i>
<b>dānwèi</b> (n)	<i>unit</i>
<b>shāo</b> (v)	<i>to burn</i>
<b>suīrán . . . dànshí</b>	<i>although</i>
<b>fādá</b> (adj.)	<i>developed; advanced</i>
<b>guójia</b> (n)	<i>country</i>
<b>gōngzī</b> (n)	<i>wages</i>
<b>fángzū</b> (n)	<i>rent</i>
<b>shuǐdiànfèi</b> (n)	<i>water and electricity charges</i>
<b>děng</b> (n)	<i>etc.</i>
<b>piányi</b> (adj.)	<i>cheap</i>
<b>kěshì</b> (conj.)	<i>but</i>
<b>àn</b> (zhào) (prep.)	<i>according to, on the basis of</i>
<b>biāozhǔn</b> (n; adj.)	<i>criterion, standard</i>

## Grammar

### 1 Order of adverbs

Where more than one adverb precedes the same verb a definite word order has to be observed (see 4.4 and 7.3). Generally speaking it is the monosyllabic adverb (*yě*, *dōu*, *jiù*, etc.) which directly precedes the verb, but if it occurs with *bù* or *méi* the order is:

(adverb +) monosyllabic adverb + *bù/méi* + verb.

Wǒmen *yě dōu bù qù* 'None of us is going either'

Tāmen *jiù méi lái* 'So they didn't come'

Thus *tóngshí* precedes *yě* in: *Fùmǔ de wòshì tóngshí yě dāng kètīng*.

## 2 Měi... (dōu)

One of the ways of expressing ‘each, every’ in Chinese is by using the pronoun *měi*. There is usually a measure word between *měi* and its noun but this may be omitted when the noun is *rén*. *Tiān* ‘day’ and *nián* ‘year’ act as measure words as well as nouns and therefore directly follow *měi*. The sentence with *měi* is often reinforced by the adverb *dōu* before the verb. In such cases *dōu* refers back to *měi+noun* which may or may not be the subject of the sentence:

*Měi zhāng zhuōzi* ‘every table’.

*Měi ge rén* or *měi rén* ‘everybody’.

*Měi tiān* ‘every day’.

*Měi bǎ yǐzi dōu hěn shūfu* ‘every chair/all the chairs is/are very comfortable’.

*Tā měi tiān wǎnshàng dōu qù* ‘He goes every evening’.

## 3 More on the comparative

When we wish to extend the simple comparative (see 7.5) to denote ‘much more’ or ‘even more’ the constructions are as follows:

A *bì* B + appropriate adjective *de duō* (complement of degree *de*, see 4.8). Or A *bì* B + appropriate adjective *duō le*.

e.g. A *bì* B *hǎo de duō* or *hǎo duō le* means ‘A is much better than B’.

The first example of this in the text is:

*zài nàr dù shū zǒng(shi) bì zài kètīng lǐ ānjìng de duō* (at/there/study/books/always/compared with/at/sitting-room in/quiet/much). ‘It’s always much quieter studying there than in the living-room.’

When we wish to say that A is ‘even more’ or ‘still more’ the quality of the adjective than B, the construction is:

A *bì* B *hái* (or *gèng*) + adjective.

e.g. A *bì* B *hái hǎo* means ‘A is even better than B’. The adverb *hái* has the basic meaning of ‘still, in addition’. In this context it has the same meaning as the adverb *gèng* ‘still more, even more’.

*Jiéjie de fángjiān bì wǒmen xiōngdì liǎ de nà jiān hái xiǎo* (Lit. elder sister/room/compared with/we/brothers/two/ that room/even more/small) ‘Elder sister’s room is even smaller than my

brother's and mine'. Note that *hěn* 'very' can never be used in the comparative.

When we wish to say that 'A is up to B's standard of whatever the adjective is' then the construction is:

A *yǒu* B (*nàme/zhème*) adjective 'A is as adjective as B'.

*Zhè tào zūhéyīnxiǎng yǒu nà tái nàme piányi* 'This hi-fi is as cheap as that one'. The negative form, which is used more frequently, depicts an inferior degree, i.e. that A is not up to B's standard of tallness, goodness, etc. See text:

*suōyǐ zhù de méi yǒu yǐqián* (*zhù de* understood) *nàme jǐ* (Lit. therefore/live/ /not/have/Previously(live)/so/crowded) 'so we're not as crowded as we used to be'. *Yǒu* may be omitted in the negative form.

## 4 *Yǐhòu, yǐqián, de shíhou*

*Yǐhòu* 'after', *yǐqián* 'before' and *de shíhou* 'when' occur at the end of the clause to which they refer, the reverse of English word order:

*xiūxi yǐhòu* 'after having a rest'.

*shuì jiào yǐqián* 'before going to bed'.

*dōngtiān tiānqì lěng de shíhou* 'when the weather is cold in winter'.

It is common practice for the subject not to appear until the following clause although there is no fixed rule about this:

*Shàng cèsuǒ de shíhou wǒmen bù yīnggāi chī fàn.* (Lit. get on/toilet/when/we/not/ought to/) 'We ought not to be eating when we go to the toilet.' Note that *yǐqián* and *yǐhòu* can also act as adverbs with the meanings 'previously' and 'afterwards', respectively and as such they precede the verb.

*Wǒ xiànzài qù, tā yǐhòu qù.* 'I'm going now, she's going later'.

## 5 *Tiān* and *nián*

As we mentioned in 8.2, *tiān* and *nián* act as measure words as well as nouns so that they directly follow numbers and demonstrative adjectives such as *zhè* 'this', *nà* 'that', *nǎ* 'which?' and *měi* 'every':

*nà tiān* 'that day'.

*yì nián* 'one year'.

*liǎng tiān* 'two days'.

## 6 (Yì)xiē

When it occurs after an adjective, (yì)xiē (the yì may be omitted) has the meaning ‘somewhat’. It usually appears in comparative sentences when used in this way as in the two examples from the text:

Fùmǔ yě bì yǐqíán zhù de shūfú (yì)xiē (Lit. parents/also/compared with/previouslly/live/comfortable/somewhat) ‘Father and mother are also somewhat more comfortable than they used to be.’

Wǒ xiǎng zài Xīfāng yìbān zhùfáng bì wǒmen dà xiē (Lit. I think/in/West/generally/accommodation/compared with/us/big/somewhat) ‘I think that accommodation in the West is generally somewhat more spacious than ours’.

*Yìxiē* has another more important function as a plural measure word meaning ‘some, a few’:

*yìxiē fādá guójia* ‘some developed countries’. The yì is sometimes omitted, particularly after the verb *yǒu*:

*yǒu xiē rén* ‘there are some people . . .’ When used with *zhè*, *nà* or *nǎ* the yì is dropped and we have *zhè xiē*, *nà xiē* or *nǎ xiē* which mean ‘these’, ‘those’ or ‘which(ones)’, respectively. As *xiē* is in itself a measure word they are used directly before a noun:

*Zhè xiē Lúndūnrén* ‘These Londoners’.

*Nà xiē Niǔyuērén* ‘Those New Yorkers’.

*Nǎ xiē Rìběnrén?* ‘Which Japanese?’.

NB *Zhè*, *nà* and *nǎ* are also read as *zhèi*, *nèi* and *něi* respectively.

## 7 Yǒude

*Yǒude* ‘some’ + noun (or noun understood) may occur once, twice or even three times in a sentence:

*Yǒude yǒu shūfáng, yǒude hái yǒu fàntīng* (Lit. Some/have/book room/some/in addition/have/rice-room).

*Wǒ de shū hěn duō, yǒude yǒu yìsì yǒude méi yǒu yìsì* (Lit. My/books/very/many/some/have/meaning/some/not/have/meaning) ‘I’ve got lots of books, some are very interesting, some aren’t.’

*Yǒu(de) rén xǐhuan kàn shū, yǒu(de) rén xǐhuan kàn diànshì, yǒu(de) rén xǐhuan kàn diànyǐng* (Lit. Some/people/like/read/book/some/people/like/watch/TV/some/people/like/watch/

electric shadow) ‘Some people like reading, some people like watching TV, while others like watching films’. (Note that when *yǒude* occurs with *rén*, the *de* may be omitted.)

Generally speaking *yǒude* + noun cannot be put in the object position. We cannot say *Wǒ bù xǐhuān yǒude shū*, the topic construction has to be used instead: *Yǒude shū wǒ bù xǐhuān* ‘There are some books I don’t like.’

## 8 X yǒu Y

Besides meaning ‘to have’ *yǒu* also means ‘there is, there are’. The construction is normally word or phrase indicating position + *yǒu* + Noun or Nominal Phrase i.e. (*zài*) X *yǒu* Y ‘there is/are Y at X’.

*Lúndūn yǒu bù shǎo gōngyuán* (Lit. London has not few public enclosures) ‘There are quite a few parks in London’.

*Zài* ‘at, in’ is often omitted when the adverbial word or phrase of place occurs at the beginning of a clause or sentence. Of course, the sentence above could also be translated as ‘London has quite a few parks’, the omission of *zài* making such an interpretation possible but it is important to understand how such sentences function grammatically otherwise it is easy to come unstuck when more precision is required as in the following example taken from the text:

*Kètīng lǐ yǒu yì zhāng shuāngrénchuáng, yí ge shāfā . . .* (Lit. Guest-room inside/have/1/MW/pair people bed/1/MW/sofa . . .). In this case *yǒu* has to be translated by ‘there is’ and not by ‘have’.

## 9 Compound directional endings

In 5.1 we met the (simple) directional markers *lái* and *qù* which indicate direction towards or away from the speaker or point of reference. Compound directional endings show even greater precision and are formed by combining verbs such as *jìn* ‘to enter’, *chū* ‘to come or go out’ with *lái* or *qù* and attaching them to verbs of motion. Thus where in English we would say ‘He came running in’, the Chinese for this would be *Tā pǎo jìnlai le*, (Lit. He/run/enter/come!), ‘we came running out’, *wǒmen pǎo chūlai le*, ‘they went running in’ *tāmen pǎo jìnqu le*, etc. There is a good example of this construction in the text: . . . *dà yuánzhuō hé yǐzi dōu bān jìnlai* (Lit. Big/round table/and/chair(s)/all/move/enter/come) (speaker is in the living-room).

NB Verbs with a compound directional ending (CDE) are often written as one word, e.g. *pǎochulai* and as such both parts of the CDE are usually indicated as toneless. For the sake of clarity I have split the verb and its CDE as above and indicated the tone on the first half of the CDE.

Where there is an object involved, this may go between the two parts of the compound directional ending or follow it:

*Wǒ ná chū yīfù lai* or *Wǒ ná chūlai yīfù* 'I take out clothes' (*ná* 'to take' [with the hand]).

Where there is a place-word involved, this may only go between the two parts of the compound directional ending:

... *dà yuánzhuō hé yǐzi dōu bān jìn kètīng lai* 'the big round table and chairs are all moved into the living-room'.

*Tāmen pǎo chū huāyuán qu* 'They run/ran out of the garden'. For further examples of this construction see Chapter 12, p.127.

### Exercise 8.1

Make a sentence from the following groups of words using the compound directional ending indicated in brackets.

*Yǐshēng zǒu yīyuàn (jìnqu)* → *Yǐshēng zǒu jìn yīyuàn qu*.

- 1 *Fùmǔ zǒu kètīng (jìnlai)*.
- 2 *Tāmen bān shūzhuō (chūqu)*.
- 3 *Xiōngdì bān shuāngrénchuáng (jìnqu)*.
- 4 *Xiǎohái pǎo cèsuō (chūlai)*.
- 5 *Jiàoyuán ná liǎng běn shū* (books) (*xiàlai* 'down', direction towards speaker).

## 10 Voice

The sentence from the text given in 8.9, *dà yuánzhuō hé yǐzi dōu bān jìnla* appears to suggest that the table and chairs are moving themselves insofar as no other subject is present. This is a reflection of the fact that Chinese verbs in themselves are neither active nor passive but that it is the context which makes them one or the other.

## 11 Zhuōzi but shūzhuō

In 3.9 we saw that modern Chinese is becoming increasingly disyllabic and one feature of this is that some nouns which were

originally monosyllabic such as *zhuō*, *bēi*, *yǐ*, *píng* have become disyllabic by the addition of a ‘fill-in’ *zi* to become *zhuōzi* ‘table’, *bēizi* ‘cup’, *yǐzi* ‘chair’, *píngzi* ‘bottle’. Other examples we have met are *érzi* ‘son’ and *háizi* ‘child’. Another device to satisfy this need for disyllables is to repeat the original sound to give disyllabic nouns such as *gēge* ‘elder brother’, *didi* ‘younger brother’, *jiějie* ‘elder sister’, *mèimei* ‘younger sister’, etc. As soon as a noun becomes disyllabic in its own right then the *zi* or the reduplication is no longer necessary. Examples are: *shūzhūo* ‘desk’, *yuánzhuō* ‘round table’, *jiǔbēi* ‘wine-glass’, *dàgē* ‘eldest brother’ and *dàjie* ‘eldest sister’.

## 12 *Suīrán . . . dànshí*

Many conjunctions in Chinese occur in pairs as in *suīrán* ‘although’ . . . *dànshí* ‘but’ . . . There are many more which we shall meet as we progress through the book. Sometimes one of the pair, usually the first, is omitted. The last sentence of the text could well have started with a *suīrán* but it is obviously stylistically clumsy to have two consecutive sentences beginning in the same way so it has been omitted. Note that *kěshì* and *dànshí* ‘but’ are interchangeable.

### i The three wheels and the four machines

Until recent times it was the aspiration of every Chinese household to own at least one each of the ‘three wheels’ *sān lún*: ‘sewing-machine’ *féngrènji*, ‘wristwatch’ *shǒubiǎo* and ‘bicycle’ *zìxíngchē*. Once the standard of living started rising the ‘three wheels’ were replaced by the ‘four machines’ *sì jī* which were initially: *diànshíjī* ‘TV’, *féngrènji* ‘sewing-machine’, *shōuyīnji* ‘radio’ and *xǐyījī* ‘washing machine’. These were in turn replaced by the ‘four big items’ *sì dà jiàn* (MW): *diànshíjī* ‘TV’, *xǐyījī* ‘washing machine’, *lùxiàngjī* ‘video recorder’ and *diànnǎo* ‘computer’. Even this term is no longer in general use. At one point in the not so distant past Chinese brides would demand ‘48 legs’ *sishíbā tiáo tuǐ* in their dowries, not more than four of which could belong to chairs! (Washing machines and televisions would count as having four legs a piece.) Now an apartment (or a house) and a car are what are wanted. The Chinese language is particularly suited to creating new idioms such as these.

As it is a language rich in homophones it also lends itself to punning which is a popular form of Chinese humour. Thus Mr King’s given name in Chinese, *yǒngshòu*, means ‘eternal’ *yǒng*, ‘longevity’ *shòu*,

but could also mean 'forever skinny' as the adjective for 'thin' has exactly the same pronunciation and tone as the noun for 'longevity'! (But of course they are two totally different characters.)

## The 'unit'

The term *dānwèi* usually refers to one's work unit which plays a much more important role in daily life than in the West. It is normally 'the unit' which provides its employees with housing, organizes excursions, provides them with cinema and theatre tickets, sometimes has its own holiday accommodation, buys essential train tickets, and even decides when the central heating should go on and off. Official forms almost always require you to state your work unit which, in a sense, is part of your identity, and without which everyday living is made more difficult.

### Exercise 8.2

Answer the following questions on the text:

- 1 *Zhāng Zhànyī de jiā yǒu jǐ jiān fáng?*
- 2 *Zhè bāokuò (include) bu bāokuò chūfáng hé cèsuō?*
- 3 *Tā fùmǔ shuì zài nǎr?*
- 4 *Tā hé shéi (who) shuì yí ge fángjiān?*
- 5 *Tāmen xiōngdì de fángjiān dà háishi jiějie de fángjiān dà?*
- 6 *Jiějie de fángjiān fàng de xià shénme jiājù?*
- 7 *Tāmen xiōngdì, zǐmèi chángcháng zài jiā ma?*
- 8 *Shuāngrénchuáng zài nǎr?*
- 9 *Zúhéyīnxiāng shì bu shi Yingguóhuò?*
- 10 *Chúle chī fàn de shíhou yǐwài, dà yuánzhuō hé yǐzi dōu zài kèting lǐ ma?*
- 11 *Zhōngguó fángzū, shuǐdiànfèi piányi háishi fādá guójia piányi?*
- 12 *Àn Zhōngguó xiànzài de biāozhǔn Zhāng Zhànyī hé tā yì jiā rén guò de zěnmeyàng?*

### Exercise 8.3

Can you correct the following *bìngjù*?

*Sì diǎn zhōng bù jiù xíng* → *Sì diǎn zhōng jiù bù xíng*.

- 1 *Měi fādá guójia, fángzū dōu hěn guì* (expensive).
- 2 *Zhōngguórén hǎo, Yingguórén dōu yě hěn hǎo.*
- 3 *Féngrènji bù yǒu zúhéyīnxiāng nàme guì.*
- 4 *Yǐqián shuì jiào, yīnggāi shuā yá* (brush teeth).
- 5 *Tā nà ge tiān xiūxi le.*
- 6 *Wǒ bù yuànyì xǐ yōude yīfu* (clothes).

- 7 Fúwùyuán pǎo fàndiàn jìn lai.
- 8 Yǐxiē ge Riběnrén gōngzī hěn gāo.
- 9 Sūgélán (Scotland) bì Měiguó ānjìng de hěn duō.
- 10 De shíhou tiānqì hǎo, yào hǎohāor wán(r).

### Exercise 8.4

Translate the following passage into colloquial English.

Nǐ zìjǐ de fángjiān zěnmeyàng? Jiājù duō bu duo? Chúle yì zhāng chuáng yǐwài nǐ hái yǒu shéme jiājù? Zūhéyīnxīāng, xǐyǐjī, diànshījī dōu yǒu ma? Bīngxiāng ne? Nǐ xiànzài zhù de bì yǐqián shūfú yǐxiē ma? Nǐ de gōngzī gāo bu gao? Fángzū, shuǐdiànfei guì bu guì? Shéi gěi nǐ shāo nuǎnqì? Yídìng bú shi nǐ de dānwèi ba? Nǐ guò de hái hǎo ma? (Wǒ) Xiāng (hope) nǐ guò de hěn hǎo!

### Exercise 8.5

Translate the following into Chinese:

- 1 There are a table and six chairs in the dining room.
- 2 Although it's generally very quiet in a study, many people do not possess one.
- 3 When the weather is cold, everybody likes the central heating on.
- 4 When your wages are high, (1)/it doesn't matter (3)/(if) water and electricity charges are high too (2)/.
- 5 On the basis of existing criteria, Britain counts as (*suàn*) an advanced country.
- 6 It is not every sofa (which) is comfortable to sit on (*hǎo zuò*).
- 7 Hi-fis are not as expensive (*guì*) as they used to be.
- 8 The parents didn't go yesterday (*zuótiān*), my eldest sister and I are not going today either.
- 9 (A) single bed (*dānréncihuáng*) is even cheaper than a double one.
- 10 What else is there(3)/in life (1)/apart from eating (2)/?
- 11 Before (you) have a rest, please help (*bāngzhù*) me move the wardrobe out.
- 12 Although all (the) windows, doors (*mén*), etc. are very clean (*gānjìng*), (the) tables (and) chairs are all filthy (*zāng*).



hotels

**In this chapter you will learn**

- breakfast vocabulary for when you stay in a Chinese hotel
- how to ask people if they have ever done something
- how to use question words in a non-question way

## Zhang Zhanyi talks about Chinese hotels:

*Běijīng de lǚguǎn dānrénfángjiān tèbié shǎo. / Duōshù shi shuāngrénfángjiān. /*

Single rooms in Beijing hotels are few and far between. / Most are double rooms. /

*Yàoshi nǐ yuànnyì yí ge rén zhù shuāngrén fángjiān, dāngrán yě Of course if you wish to have a double room by yourself, you can, kěyǐ, dànshì wǎngwǎng yào fù shuāngrénfángjiān de fángfèi. / but you usually have to pay for a double. /*

*Wàiguó zhuānjiā hé llúxuéshēng píng gōngzuòzhèng huò (zhě) Foreign experts and students can often enjoy preferential treatment xuéshēngzhèng, píngcháng kěyǐ xiǎngshòu yōudàl. / on the strength of their (employer's) ID or student cards. /*

*Zhù wàibīn de dà bùfèn fángjiān dōu bāokuò yùshì Most of the rooms allocated to foreign guests include (a) bathroom hé cèsuǒ. / Yùshì lǐ yǒu yùpén hé línnyù pēntóu, yě dōu yǒu and toilet. / The bathrooms have bath and shower and are also all máojīn, yújīn, féizào, wéishēngzhī, bōlibēi děng. / equipped with towels, bath towels, soap, toilet paper, glasses etc. /*

*Měi ge fángjiān lǐ dōu yǒu diànhuà, diànshi, rèshuǐpíng, Every room has a telephone, a TV, a Thermos, cháyè, chábēi, liáng kāishuǐ shénmede. / tea, teacups, cold boiled water and so on. / (Dà)duōshù zhù wǒmen fàndiàn de wàibīn zǎoshang chī Xīcān. / The (great) majority of foreign guests in our hotel eat Western food in the mornings. /*

*Yǒude rén xiǎng yòng Hànyǔ dìng cài. / Nín yǐqíán jiànguo Some people would like to order in Chinese. / Have you ever seen*

*Zhōngwén càidān méi you? / Rúguō méi jiànguo de huà, jiù a Chinese menu before? / If you haven't, then take a look at the kèkān kèwén xiàbian de càidān ba. / Fúwùyuán cóngqián yòng one below the text. / Hotel staff used to use suànpán suàn zhàng, dànshì xiànzài yòng jìsuànji de yuè an abacus to work out bills but more and more of them are now lái yuè duō le. / using calculators. /*

*Běijīng de fàndiàn hěn duō. / Chúle chéng qiān shàng wàn de Beijing has many hotels. / Apart from thousands and thousands yóukè yǐwài, yí bùfèn wàiguó gōngsī de dàiibiǎo of tourists, a number of foreign company representatives (jí shāngrén) yě zhù fàndiàn, suǒyǐ fàndiàn de shēngyì (i.e. business people) also live in hotels, so business (for the hotels)*

*zōngshí hěn búcùò de. / Jiàqián què yuè lái yuè guì le,*  
is always very good indeed. / Prices (in hotels) are becoming  
*érqǐé fúwù, shèbèi hái bù yíding gēn de shàng. /*  
increasingly expensive, however, and the service and facilities  
(offered) cannot necessarily still keep pace (with them). /

*Wǒ zài Běijīng Fàndiàn gōngzuò, jiēchùguo de wàiguórén*  
I work in the Beijing Hotel and have come into contact with  
*hěn duō. / Wǒmen Zhōngguórén bùdé bù chéngrèn tāmēn zài*  
many foreigners. / We Chinese have to admit that in certain respects  
*mǎu xiē fāngmiàn xiǎngshòu yíding de tèquán, jíshǐ zhè xiē*  
they enjoy definite privileges, even if these are sometimes  
*tèquán yǒu (de) shíhou zhǐ xiànyú suíshí dōu kěyǐ jìn*  
merely confined to being able to go into a hotel at any time  
*fàndiàn shàng cèsuǒ! / Qíshí shéi yòngguo Zhōngguó gōnggòng*  
and use the toilet! / Actually anybody who has used public toilets  
*cèsuǒ, shéi dōu huì tóngqíng tāmēn zhè zhǒng zuòfǎ de! /*  
in China will sympathize with their doing this! /

### Zǎocān Càidān Breakfast Menu

**Shuǐguōzhī** (*júzizhī, fānqiézhī*)

Fruit juice (orange juice, tomato juice)

**Jídàn** (*chǎojídàn, zhǔjídàn, jiānjídàn, wòjídàn*)

Eggs (scrambled, boiled, fried or poached)

**Huōtū**

Ham (*Lit. fire leg*)

**Kǎomiànbāo**

Toast (*Lit. roast bread*)

**Huángyóu**

Butter (*Lit. yellow oil*)

**Guōjiàng**

Jam

**Suān** (*niú*)nǎi

Yoghurt (*Lit. sour milk*)

**Kāfēi, hóngchá, rè** (*niú*)nǎi, kěkě

Coffee, tea (*Lit. red tea*), hot milk, cocoa

wàlbīn (n)	<i>foreign guest, visitor</i>
lǚguǎn (n)	<i>hotel</i>
dānrénfángjilān (n)	<i>single room</i>
tèblé (adv.; adj.)	<i>specially, special</i>
duōshù (n)	<i>majority</i>
yàoshi (conj.)	<i>if</i>
dāngrán (adv.)	<i>of course, naturally</i>
wǎngwǎng (adv.)	<i>more often than not; frequently</i>
fù (v)	<i>to pay</i>
shuāngrénfángjilān (n)	<i>double room</i>
fáng-fèi (n)	<i>room charge</i>
zhuānjīā (n)	<i>expert, specialist</i>
píng (v)	<i>to rely on, to depend on</i>
gōngzuòzhèng (n)	<i>(employee's) ID card</i>
huò(zhě) (conj.; adv.)	<i>or; perhaps</i>
xuéshēngzhèng (n)	<i>student card</i>
píngcháng (adv.; adj.)	<i>usually; ordinary, commonplace</i>
xiǎngshì (v; n)	<i>to enjoy rights, etc.; treat</i>
yōudài (n)	<i>preferential treatment</i>
bùfen (n)	<i>part, section</i>
bāokuò (v)	<i>to include</i>
máojīn (n) [tiáo]	<i>towel</i>
yùjīn (n) [tiáo]	<i>bath-towel</i>
félzào (n) [kuài]	<i>soap</i>
wèishēngzhǐ (n) [juǎn]	<i>toilet paper</i>
chá-yè (n)	<i>tea(-leaves)</i>
chá-bēi (n)	<i>teacup</i>
kāishuǐ (n)	<i>boiled water</i>
shénmeđe	<i>and so on</i>
zǎoshang (TW)	<i>morning</i>
Xīcān (n)	<i>Western food</i>
dìng (v)	<i>to order (in advance)</i>
jiàn (v)	<i>to see; to meet</i>
-guo	<i>verbal suffix (see 9.2)</i>
Zhōngwén (n)	<i>Chinese language (usually written form)</i>
càidān (n)	<i>menu</i>
rúguǒ . . . (de huà), jiù	<i>if . . . then</i>
kèwén (n) [kè]	<i>text</i>
xiàbianr (PW)	<i>under(neath), below</i>
cóngqílán (adv.)	<i>previously, in the past</i>
suànpán (n)	<i>abacus</i>
suàn zhàng (v-o)	<i>to make/work out the bill (fig. 'settle accounts')</i>

jísuànjī (n) [jià]	<i>calculating machine; computer</i>
yuè lái yüè	<i>more and more</i>
chéng qiān shàng wàn	<i>thousands and thousands</i>
yóukè (n)	<i>tourist, sightseer</i>
xiāngdāng (adv.)	<i>quite (a bit)</i>
gōngsī (n)	<i>company</i>
dàibiǎo (n)	<i>representative</i>
jí (adv.)	<i>that is, viz.</i>
shāngrén (n)	<i>business person</i>
shēngyì (n)	<i>business</i>
jiàqián (n)	<i>price</i>
què (adv.)	<i>however</i>
guì (adj.)	<i>expensive</i>
érqìě (conj.)	<i>moreover</i>
fúwù (n; v)	<i>service; to serve</i>
shèbèi (n)	<i>equipment, facilities</i>
gēn-shang (RV)	<i>to keep pace with</i>
jíechù (v)	<i>to come into contact with</i>
bùdé bù	<i>cannot but, have to</i>
chéngrèn (v)	<i>to admit</i>
mǒu (adj.)	<i>certain</i>
fāngmiàn (n)	<i>aspect, respect</i>
tèquán (n)	<i>privilege</i>
jíshǐ (conj.)	<i>even if, even though</i>
yǒu (de) shíhou	<i>sometimes</i>
xiànyú (v)	<i>to be confined to</i>
suíshí (adv.)	<i>at any time</i>
jìn (v)	<i>to enter</i>
shàng cèsuō (v-o)	<i>to go to the toilet</i>
qíshí (adv.)	<i>actually, as a matter of fact</i>
shéi (QW)	<i>who? (also read shuí)</i>
gōnggòng (adj.)	<i>public</i>
huì (aux. v.)	<i>will (showing possibility)</i>
tóngqíng (v)	<i>to sympathize with</i>
zuòfǎ (n)	<i>way of doing something</i>

## Grammar

### 1 Huò(zhě)

*Huò(zhě)* ‘or’ is used to link statements or pronouns and nouns whereas *háishi* ‘or’ (see 5.2) is used to link questions:

Wàiguó zhuānjiā huò(zhě) liúxuéshēng píng gōngzuòzhèng huò(zhě) xuéshēngzhèng . . . (Lit. Outside country/special family/or/stay student/lean on/work proof/or/student proof . . . ).

Wǒ xǐhuan kàn bào huòzhě kàn xiǎoshuō. (Lit. I/like/read/newspaper/or/read/small talk) ‘I like reading the newspaper or novels’. *Huòzhě* is used more in spoken Chinese whereas *huò* is more formal.

## 2 Verbal suffix -guo

In Chapter 5 we met *guò* as a verb meaning ‘to pass’ or ‘to cross’. Put after the verb it indicates that something happened in the indefinite past, i.e. it emphasizes a past experience and not completion as with verb + *le* (see 3.4):

Wǒ chīguo Yindū fàn. ‘I’ve eaten Indian food’ (at some time or other). The negative is formed by putting *méi* before the verb but the -*guo* is retained as there is no idea of completion or non-completion as with the verbal suffix -*le*:

Wǒ méi qùguo hěn duō guójia. ‘I haven’t visited many countries.’ (General statement about past experience).

Wǒ méi qù hěn duō guójia. ‘I didn’t visit many countries’ (on one specific occasion, e.g. last year). Adverbs such as *yǐqián*, *cónglái* ‘hither to’ often appear before the negated verb to emphasize the idea of never having done the action of the verb:

Wǒ cónglái méi chīguo Yídàli fàn. ‘I’ve never eaten Italian food.’ The question form is made by adding *ma* to the statement or by adding *méi* you after it:

Nín yǐqián jiànguo Zhōngwén càidān ma? }  
Nín yǐqián jiànguo Zhōngwén càidān méi you? }

‘Have you ever seen a Chinese menu before?’ (Note the *pinyin* convention always shows *guo* attached to the verb.)

## 3 Zhōngwén, Hànyǔ and pǔtōnghuà

*Zhōngwén* and *Hànyǔ* can both be translated as ‘the Chinese language’. *Zhōngwén* is used more in connection with the written language whereas *Hànyǔ* (the language of the Han people, China’s largest nationality) is used more for the spoken language. The Chinese language has eight major dialects but of

the Chinese-speaking population, about 70% speak the northern dialect which is why it has been made the basis of *pǔtōnghuà*, 'the common spoken language' which is the *lingua franca* for the whole of China.

#### 4 *Rúguǒ . . . (de huà), jiù . . .*

As we said in 8.12 many conjunctions occur in pairs and here is another example of this, *Rúguǒ . . . (de huà), jiù . . .*, 'If . . ., then . . .':

*Rúguǒ tā bù lái (de huà), wǒ jiù bú qù.* 'If she doesn't come, I won't go.' . . . *de huà* conveys the flavour of 'assuming that X is the case' (*tā bù lái*), then Y (*wǒ bú qù*)'. In the example from the text we have:

*Rúguǒ méi jiànguo de huà, jiù kànkan kèwén xiàbian de càidān ba.* (Lit. If/not/seen/assuming/then/look look//text/below/dish list//). In this construction, *rúguǒ* may be replaced by *yàoshi* which also means 'if' and is usually regarded as being the more colloquial of the two:

*Yàoshi méi yǒu dānrénfángjiān, wǒ jiù zhù shuāngrénfángjiān ba.* 'If there are no single rooms, then I'll have a double.' *Yàoshi* or *rúguǒ* may sometimes be omitted and in such cases it is the *jiù* (and the context) which convey the conditional flavour. It is important to be aware of the existence of these 'hidden if' sentences as they can influence the meaning a great deal.

#### 5 *Cóngqián* and *yǐqián*

Both *cóngqián* and *yǐqián* can act as moveable adverbs or time words meaning 'previously', 'in the past'. They normally occur before the verb and after the subject but they can be placed at the beginning of the sentence for extra emphasis:

*Fúwùyuán cóngqián yòng suànpan suàn zhàng* (Lit. Attendants/in the past/use/calculate tray/calculate/bill). There is no sense of completed action or emphasis of a past experience, so no verbal suffix *-le* or *-guo* is required. The idea of the past tense is conveyed by using *cóngqián*. As we know from 8.4, *yǐqián* can also act as a conjunction, occurring at the end of the clause to which it refers; *cóngqián* cannot be used in this way. We can say *suàn zhàng yǐqián*, 'before making out the bill', but we cannot say *suàn zhàng cóngqián*.

## 6 Yuè lái yuè + adjective

This construction is relatively easy to use if you remember the basic formula that to express ‘more and more of the adjective’ is:

*yuè lái yuè + adjective:*

*Shēngyi yuè lái yuè hǎo* ‘Business gets better and better’.

*Yòng jīsuànji de yuè lái yuè duō le.* } Change of state *le*  
*Jiàqián què yuè lái yuè guì le.* } in both cases.

If you wish to convey ideas such as ‘the quicker the better’ then the construction *yuè* adjective/verb *yuè* adjective/verb is used:

*Yuè kuài yuè hǎo*. ‘The quicker the better’.

*Wǒ yuè chī yuè pàng (le)*. ‘The more I eat the fatter I get’. But  
*Wǒ yuè lái yuè pàng (le)*. ‘I’m getting fatter and fatter’.

## 7 More on *de*

Apart from being able to nominalize a pronoun or adjective (see 5.12) and link two nouns (see 3.5), *de* may also be used to link quite complex clauses to their nouns. Again it is important to stress that it is the **main idea** which comes after *de*:

*Zhù wàibīn de lǚguǎn* (Lit. live/foreign guest/travel establishment).

*Zhù wàibīn de dà bùfen fángjiān* (Lit. live/foreign guest/ /big/ part/rooms). NB *dà bùfen* is one idea, therefore no *de*.

*Chéng qiān shàng wàn de yóukè* (Lit. become/thousand(s)/go up/ten thousand(s)//travelling guest).

*Yí bùfen wàiguó gōngsī de dàiibiǎo* (Lit. one/part/foreign/ company//representative).

## 8 The double negative

Whereas in English the double negative is generally avoided, it is used quite freely in Chinese:

*Bú qù bù xíng* (Lit. Not/go/not/be all right) ‘There is no alternative but to go.’

*Wǒmen Zhōngguórén bùdé bù chéngrèn* (Lit. We/China/people/ may not/not/admit).

## 9 *Mǒu*

*Mǒu* is used with a measure word before a noun to indicate ‘a certain’:

*mǒu zhǒng qíngkuàng* ‘a certain situation’.  
*mǒu xiē shāngrén* ‘certain business people’.  
*zài mǒu xiē fāngmiàn* ‘in certain respects’.

When *mǒu* is repeated before a title such as *xiānsheng*, etc. it takes on the meaning of ‘so-and-so’. No measure word is required in this case:

*mǒumǒu xiānsheng* ‘Mr So-and-So’.  
*mǒumǒu xiǎojie* ‘Miss So-and-So’.

## 10 Question words used in a non-question way

- i Question words such as *shéi* (*shuí*), *shénme*, *nǎ* and *nǎr* can be used in a non-question way to mean ‘anybody’, ‘anything’, ‘any’ and ‘anywhere’:

*Wǒ bù qù nǎr.* ‘I’m not going anywhere’. (In response to *Nǐ qù nǎr?*, it seems, in addition, to convey a slight feeling of unwillingness to communicate with the questioner!)

- ii Only *jǐ* and *duōshao* can be used in the affirmative, to indicate ‘several’ and ‘an indefinite number’ respectively:

*Tāmen yǒu jǐ běn Zhōngwén shū.* ‘They have several Chinese books.’

In this case, intonation and context tell the listener whether they are being used as question words or not.

- iii Question words can also be used to indicate inclusiveness in the affirmative, but exclusiveness in the negative. *Dōu* or *yě* must be added before the verb to reinforce this sense of inclusiveness or exclusiveness:

*Shéi dōu bù suàn* (Lit. Who/all/not/count) ‘Nobody counts’.

In this construction, the direct object is moved to a position before the verb (but after the subject):

*Wǒ shénme yě bù zuò* (Lit. I/what/also/not/do) ‘I’m not doing anything’.

*Tā nǎr dōu qù* (Lit. He/where/all/go) ‘He goes everywhere’.

(Note that *jǐ* and *duōshao* cannot be used in this way.)

- iv Such concepts as ‘whatever (one likes)’, ‘whoever (one likes)’, ‘wherever (one likes)’ are expressed by repeating the question word and the verb in a second clause and putting *jiù* before the repeated verb in the second clause:

*Nǐ yào qǐng shéi, nǐ jiù qǐng shéi* (Lit. You/want/invite/who/you/then/invite/who) ‘Invite whoever you like’.

*Wǒmen yào mǎi shénme, wǒmen jiù mǎi shénme* (Lit. We/want/buy/what/we/then/buy/what) ‘We buy whatever we like’.

- v *Zěnme*, ‘how?’ put before the verb roughly translates as ‘no matter how’ or ‘to what degree’. *Dōu* or *yě* must be put before the verb in the following clause. *Bù zěnme* + adjective translates as ‘not particularly’ + adjective:

*Nà ge xuésheng hěn rènzhēn* (‘conscientious’). *Tiānqì zěnme lèng, tā dōu lái shàng kè.* (v-o attend class) ‘That student is very conscientious. He comes to class no matter how cold it is’.

*Tā bù zěnme niánqīng le.* ‘She’s no longer particularly young’.

## 11 *Huì . . . de*

The principal meaning of *huì* is ‘to know how to (do), can’ (Chapter 2), but it can also express the possibility or probability that something will happen and is translated as ‘will’: *Huì xià yǔ* (Lit. will/descend/rain) ‘It will rain’ or ‘It’s going to rain’. The addition of the modal particle *de* to such sentences introduces a note of affirmation or confirmation as well as slightly shifting the balance and rhythm of the sentence as a whole. Used in this way, it is generally to be found with such verbs as *huì*, *yào*, *shì*, etc. *Tā huì lái de.* ‘He will come’. It is important to stress that *de* is not essential to the sentence but is used widely.

## 12 Degrees of ‘muchness’ (in ascending order)

(hěn)hǎo	‘(very) good’
tǐng hǎo	‘quite/rather good’
xiāngdāng hǎo	‘quite/rather good’
shífēn hǎo	‘very/rather good’ (Lit. ten parts/good)
fēicháng hǎo	‘extremely good’
hǎo jíle	‘extremely good’
zui hǎo	‘the best’.

In some ways the order is a little arbitrary but it will at least give you some idea.

**Exercise 9.1**

True or false?

- 1 *Bēijīng de lǚguǎn yí ge rén zhù yí ge fángjiān bù kěyǐ.*
- 2 *Wàiguó zhuānjiā píng xuéshēngzhèng, píngcháng kěyǐ xiāngshòu yōudài.*
- 3 *Zhù wàibìn de dà bùfen fángjiān lǐ dōu yǒu diànshì hé diànhuà.*
- 4 *Duōshù zhù fàndiàn de wàibìn zǎoshang chī Zhōngcān.*
- 5 *Fúwùyuán yǐqíán yòng suànpan suàn zhàng, xiànzài yòng de yuè lái yuè shǎo le.*
- 6 *Méi yǒu shāngrén zhù fàndiàn.*
- 7 *Fàndiàn de shēngyì fēicháng hǎo dànshi fángfèi yuè lái yuè piányi le.*
- 8 *Suīrán zhù fàndiàn de jiàqián yuè lái yuè guì le dànshi fúwù, shèbèi bù yídìng gēn de shàng.*
- 9 *Zhōngguórén bùdé bù chéngrèn zài Zhōngguó de wàiguórén méi yǒu tèquán.*
- 10 *Zhōngguó gōnggòng cèsuo yibān bù zěnme hǎo.*

**Exercise 9.2**

Fill in the blanks using the words given above each passage.  
Each word can only be used once.

*Huòzhě bù cóngqián shuǐguōzhī jiù shuì jiào kěkě háishi zěnme*

- a *Zǎoshang nǐ xǐhuan chī Xīcān \_\_\_\_ chī Zhōngcān? Wǒ xǐhuan chī Xīcān, hē \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ yǐqíán wǒ xǐhuan hē rē niúnǎi \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ . Wǒ \_\_\_\_ bù \_\_\_\_ xǐhuan hē kěkě, xiànzài hěn xǐhuan. Rúguō ràng (have somebody do something) wǒ wǎnshàng hē kāfēi, wǒ \_\_\_\_ bù hē. Wǒ bùdé \_\_\_\_ chéngrèn, wǎnshàng hē kāfēi shuì bu hǎo jiào.*

*suīrán dōu jiù zěnme tǐng mǒu nǎr*

- b *Wǒ hěn xǐhuan wǒ gēge. Tā qù nǎr, wǒ \_\_\_\_ qù \_\_\_\_ . Tā \_\_\_\_ huópo (lively). \_\_\_\_ tā zhǐ shísi suì, dànshi zài \_\_\_\_ xié fāngmiàn tā xiàng (resemble) (yì) ge dàren. Tiānqì \_\_\_\_ lěng, tā \_\_\_\_ qù gěi bàba, māma mǎi dōngxi (v-o, buy things).*

**i ‘Documents with everything’**

In addition to the normal array of ID cards and passes of one sort or another, letters of introduction from one's work unit for example (or from one's embassy for foreigners) can be extremely useful in

booking accommodation, securing tickets of various kinds, obtaining leave of absence and so on. It is probably true to say that headed notepaper with an official-looking stamp goes a long way in China! On the other hand, under certain (unspecified) circumstances, the Chinese can be *amazingly* flexible!

### Exercise 9.3

Correct the word-order in the following sentences:

- 1 Rúguǒ méi yǒu càidān, jiù wǒ bù kěyǐ dìng cài.
- 2 Nímen méi zhùguō lǚguǎn cóngqián.
- 3 Fādá guójia shēnghuó yuè nán (difficult) yuè lái.
- 4 Suàn zhàng yòng jīsuànjī hěn fāngbiàn (convenient) yǒu shíhou.
- 5 Chéng qiān de shàng wàn yóukè qù yóulǎn Chángchéng (visit the Great Wall) měi nián.
- 6 Jǐntiān bù è le. Shénme wǒ bù xiǎng chī yě.
- 7 Tā nà ge rén jíle hǎo, tā shuō zěnme tiānqì lěng, dōu méi guānxi.

### Exercise 9.4

Translate the following passages into colloquial English:

- 1 Zhōngguórén hěn xǐhuan yòng rèshuǐpíng, yīnwèi (because) tāmen yìbān hěn xǐhuan hē chá. Dà bùfen Zhōngguórén bijiào xǐhuan hē lù chá dànshi yóude shíhou hē hóng chá yě kěyǐ. Hē hóng chá de shíhou dàduōshù Zhōngguórén yào jiā niúnǎi hé táng (sugar).
- 2 Bēizi yǒu hěn duō zhōng. Yǒu chábēi, yǒu kāfēibēi, yǒu bōlibēi, yě yǒu jiǔbēi. Píngzi yě shi yíyàng (the same) de. Yǒu huāpíng (vase), yǒu nǎipíng (milk bottle), yě yǒu rèshuǐpíng.

### Exercise 9.5

Translate the following into Chinese:

- 1 There's no yoghurt left. You can have either hot milk or cold (use *liáng*) milk.
- 2 Have you ever been to the Great Wall? Thousands of tourists go every year to visit (it).
- 3 If there's no toilet paper, it's very inconvenient (*bù fāngbiàn*) to go to the lavatory.
- 4 Everybody ought to enjoy the same rights (*quánlì*).
- 5 We have to admit that Swiss (*Ruìshì*) chocolate (*qiǎokèlì*) is excellent.
- 6 If you want to use a calculator to work out the bill, then go ahead.

- 7 Whom are you inviting to dinner tonight? I'm not inviting anyone.
- 8 (The) texts are becoming increasingly difficult.
- 9 As a matter of fact her way of doing things is the best.
- 10 That person living in (a) double room (use *de*), is a businessman from Tokyo (*Dōngjīng*).
- 11 Although it's raining, he says he will come.
- 12 In the past (*guòqù*) there were relatively few foreign company representatives in China, but they are now becoming more and more numerous.



# **weather, dates and seasons**

**In this chapter you will learn**

- about the weather and seasons in Beijing
- what Chinese people do when the weather is fine or when it is freezing
- how to say that something is happening
- the months of the year
- the days of the week
- how to express the duration of something

Zhang Zhanyi gives his views on Beijing's climate and describes recreational activities in the capital.

Jinnián Běijīng de tiānqì hěn bù zhèngcháng. / Dōngtiān bù  
The weather in Beijing has been very odd this year. / The winter  
lěng, xiàtiān yě bù rè. / Yǐnggāi xià xuě de shíhou bìng  
has not been cold nor has the summer been hot. / When it should have  
méi yǒu xià, yǐnggāi xià yǔ de shíhou yě méi yǒu xià – zhēn  
snowed it didn't, and when it should have rained it hasn't – it's  
qíguài! /  
really strange! /

Shì bu shi zhěnggè shijiè de qihòu zhèngzài biàn ne? /  
Is it because the climate of the entire world is in the process of  
Ōuzhōu píngcháng méi yǒu Běijīng nàme lěng dànshi  
changing? / Europe is usually not as cold as Beijing, but  
jinnián fǎn'ér yóude shíhou bǐ Běijīng hái lěng. /  
this year on the contrary it has sometimes been even colder than  
Beijing. /

Chūntiān, qiūtiān shì Běijīng zuì hǎo de jījié, kěxī  
The best seasons in Beijing are spring and autumn but it's a pity  
tài duǎn le. / Yàoshi zài Zhōngguó lǚxíng de huà, wǔyuè hé  
they're so short. / If you're travelling around in China, May and  
jiǔyuè tiānqì zuì hǎo, qíngtiān duō, yīntiān shǎo. /  
September have the best weather with many fine days and few  
cloudy ones. /

Tiānqi yī hǎo, gōngyuán lǐ de rén jiù hěn duō. / Lǎorén xià  
As soon as the weather brightens up, there are many people in the  
parks. /

qí de xià qí, dǎ pái de dǎ pái, liáo tiān(r) de liáo  
There are some old people playing chess, others playing cards and  
some chatting to each other,

tiān(r), zǎoshang dǎ tàijíquán de yóudeshì. / Zhōngguó yǒu xiē  
and there's plenty of them doing taijiquan (a form of exercise) in the  
mornings. / In China

dìfang bǐrú Sichuān, Guǎngdōng děng di zài cháguǎn lǐ zuòzhe  
there are some places such as Sichuan and Guangdong (Canton)  
where there are many of them sitting

hē chá de yě hěn duō. /  
in teahouses drinking tea. /

Zhōngguórén yibān yí ge xīngqī gōngzuò wǔ tiān, xiàng  
The Chinese generally work a five-day week like  
dà bùfen Ōuzhōu guójia xīngqīliù yě xiūxi. / Suírán jīguān  
the greater part of Europe where Saturday is also a rest day. /  
Although cadres

gàn bù xīngqīliù, xīngqītiān xiūxi, yǒude gōngchǎng xīngqītiān yě  
in offices have Saturdays and Sundays off, some factories work as

zhāocháng shēngchǎn, gōngrén lúnlíu xiūxi. /

normal on Sundays too, with workers taking time off in turn. /

Jīntiān shì xīngqītiān, tiānqì tèbié hǎo, nánnǚ láoshào yì

Today is Sunday and the weather is especially nice, one group after  
qún yì qún dōu chū qu wánr. / Gōngyuán lǐ sànbù de sànbù,  
another of men and women, old and young go out to enjoy  
themselves. /

zhào xiàng de zhào xiàng, yǒude xǐhuan guàng dà jiē,

Some people stroll in the parks or take photographs, some like to go  
shāngdiàn lǐ zōngshì hěn jǐ – zhěnggè Běijīng rènào jíle. /

window-shopping, the shops are always very crowded – the whole of  
Beijing is a hive of activity. /

Zài Zhōngguó yào(shi) xiǎng zhǎo yí ge ānjìng de dìfang, yí

If you wish to find a quiet place in China to be by yourself for  
ge rén dāi yíhuìr, shì hěn nán bàn dào de. / Nǐ yào xiǎng

a while, it's extremely difficult to do so. / If you wish to

shài tàiyáng, jiù děi gēn chéng qiān shàng wàn de rén yiqǐ  
sunbathe you have to do so with thousands of other people! /

shài! / Fǎnzhèng xīngqītiān dàochù dōu shì rén! /

In any case there are people everywhere on Sundays! /

Jinnián dōngtiān jié bīng yǐhòu, wǒ jīngcháng qù huá bīng,

This winter after it fell below freezing I have been skating regularly,  
yī xià bān jiù pǎo dào Běihäi Gōngyuán qù huà. / Rúguǒ zài

as soon as I finish work I rush to Beihai Park to skate. / If  
jiā jiù dào fǔjìn de Yuánmíngyuán huò Yínhéyuán qù huá. /

I'm at home then I go to the Old Summer Palace or the

Summer Palace to skate. /

<b>zhèngcháng</b> (adj.)	<i>normal, regular</i>
<b>xiàtiān</b> (n)	<i>summer</i>
<b>xìà xuě</b> (v-o)	<i>to snow</i>
<b>bīng</b> (adv.) + bù/méi	<i>see 10.1</i>
<b>xià yǔ</b> (v-o)	<i>to rain</i>
<b>qíguài</b> (adj.)	<i>strange</i>
<b>zhěnggè</b> (adj.)	<i>whole, entire</i>
<b>shíjiè</b> (n)	<i>world</i>
<b>qìhòu</b> (n)	<i>climate</i>
<b>zhèngzài . . . ne</b>	<i>in the middle of -ing (see 10.3)</i>
<b>biàn</b> (v)	<i>to change</i>
<b>Ōuzhōu</b> (N)	<i>Europe</i>
<b>fǎn'ér</b> (conj.)	<i>on the contrary</i>

chūntiān (n)	spring
qiūtiān (n)	autumn
jīnlé (n)	season
kěxī	it's a pity that
duǎn (adj.)	short (in length)
yào (shí) . . . (de huà), (jìlù) . . .	if . . . then . . .
lǚxíng (v)	to travel
yuè (n)	month
qíng (adj.)	(of weather) fine, clear, bright
yīn (adj.)	cloudy, overcast
yī . . . jiù . . .	no sooner . . . than . . . ; as soon as
gōngyuán (n)	park
lǎorén (n)	old people
xìà qí (v-o)	to play chess
dǎ pái (v-o)	to play cards or mahjong
liáo tiān(r) (v-o)	to chat
dǎ tàijíquán (v-o)	to do taijiquan
yōudeshi	to have plenty of, there's no lack of
bǐrú	for example, such as
Sichuān (N)	Sichuan
Guǎngdōng (N)	Canton (province)
dì (n)	locality, land (as used for farming); the earth
cháguǎn (n)	teahouse
-zhe	verbal suffix (see 10.11)
xīngqī (n)	week
xiàng (v)	to resemble, to be like
jīguān (n)	offices, organization
gànbbù (n)	cadre
gōngchǎng (n)	factory
zhàocháng (adv.)	as usual
shēngchǎn (v)	to produce, to manufacture
lúnliú (v)	to take turns, in turn
nánñǚ	men and women,
lǎoshào	old and young
qún (MW)	group, flock
chū (v)	to come or to go out
sàn bù (v-o)	to take a walk, to stroll
zhào xiàng (v-o)	to take a picture; to have one's picture/photo taken
guàng dà jiē (v-o)	to go window-shopping
shāngdiàn (n)	shop

<b>rènào</b> (adj.)	<i>bustling; exciting</i>
<b>dāi</b> (v; coll.)	<i>to stay</i>
<b>yǐhuìr</b> (TW)	<i>a short while, (after) a moment</i>
<b>nán</b> (adj.)	<i>difficult</i>
<b>bàn-dào</b> (RV)	<i>to get something done, to accomplish</i>
<b>shài tàiyáng</b> (v-o)	<i>to sunbathe</i>
<b>gēn</b> (prep.; conj.)	<i>with; and</i>
<b>yìqǐ</b> (adv.; PW)	<i>together</i>
<b>fǎnzhèng</b> (adv.)	<i>anyway, in any case</i>
<b>dàochù</b> (PW)	<i>everywhere</i>
<b>jié bīng</b> (v-o)	<i>to freeze, to ice over</i>
<b>Jīngcháng</b> (adv.)	<i>regularly, frequently</i>
<b>huá bīng</b> (v-o)	<i>to skate (Lit. slide ice)</i>
<b>xià bān</b> (v-o)	<i>to finish work</i>
<b>pǎo</b> (v)	<i>to run</i>
<b>Běihǎi Gōngyuán</b> (N)	<i>Beihai Park</i>
<b>dào ... qù/lái</b>	<i>to go/come to; to arrive</i>
<b>fùjìn</b> (n)	<i>nearby</i>
<b>Yuánmíngyuán</b> (N)	<i>the Old Summer Palace</i>
<b>Yíhéyuán</b> (N)	<i>the Summer Palace</i>

## Grammar

### 1 *Bìng*

*Bìng* before *bù* or *méi* (*yǒu*) emphasizes the negation and conveys the idea that it is not what might have been expected: *Yīnggāi xià xuě de shíhou bìng méi yǒu xià* (Lit. Ought to/descend/snow/when//not/have/descend).

### 2 *Shì bu shi*

*Shì bu shi* is used to make the question form when you wish to indicate to the listener that you are seeking confirmation of something you believe to be the case. It can be put at the beginning or end of the sentence, or after the subject with the following slight shifts in emphasis:

*Shì bu shi nǐ míngtiān qù yóuyǒng* (swimming)?

*Nǐ shì bu shi míngtiān qù yóuyǒng?*

In both of the above sentences you are confident that I am going swimming tomorrow, but using *shì bu shi* softens the tone and indicates a wish on your part to discuss the matter with me. It in no way implies an order.

### Nǐ míngtiān qù yóuyǒng *shì bu shi*?

At the end of the sentence *shì bu shi* seeks a more direct confirmation and conveys the idea of 'Am I right?' 'Is it true?'

All three sentences can probably be roughly translated as:

'You are going swimming tomorrow aren't you?'

... *shì ma?* or ... *duì ma?* have the same meaning as *shì bu shi* used at the end of the sentence, and they too can only appear at the end of the sentence: *Sīchuān rén xǐhuan chī là de* (hot/spicy[food]), *shì ma?* 'People from Sichuan like spicy food, don't they?'. The answer to all three forms is *Shì(a)* or *Duì* if the listener agrees and *Bù* if he or she does not.

## 3 The progressive aspect – to be in the middle of doing something

To show that an action is in progress, one of the adverbs *zhèngzài*, *zhèng* or *zài* is placed before the verb or *ne* is placed at the end of the sentence. However, *zhèngzài*, *zhèng* or *zài* often occur together with *ne* to indicate the progressive aspect:

*Shòuhuòyuán* (shop assistant) *zhèngzài liáo tiān(r)* (*ne*). 'The shop assistant is/was (in the middle of) chatting'.

*Tā zài dǎ tàijíquán* (*ne*). 'He is/was (in the middle of) doing taijiquan'.

*Gōngchǎng zhèng shēngchǎn* ... (*ne*). 'The factory is/was (in the middle of) manufacturing ...'.

*Tāmen zhào xiàng ne*. 'They are/were (in the middle of) taking photos.'

The negative is made by putting *méi* (*yǒu*) before the verb but if the verb is omitted then *yǒu* must be used:

*Nǐmen zài shài tàiyáng ma?* 'Are you sunbathing?'.

*Wǒmen méi* (*yǒu*) *shài tàiyáng, wǒmen kàn diànsī ne*. 'We're not sunbathing, we're watching TV'.

*Méi yǒu, wǒmen kàn diànsī ne*. 'No, we're watching TV'.

*Méi yǒu*. 'No'.

What the Chinese call ‘aspect’ is different from ‘time’ (past, present or future). An action in progress may take place in the past, present or future and it is the use of time-words (plus context) which tells us when the action actually takes place. (This is why it is also dangerous to think of the verb + *le* as indicating the past tense.) The following examples will illustrate this point:

Present – Question: *Nǐ xiànzài zuò shénme ne?* ‘What are you doing now?’.

Answer: *Wǒ zài huá bīng ne* (Lit. I /slide/ice/). ‘I’m skating’.

Past – *Zuótiān* (yesterday) *tā lái de shíhou, wǒ zhèng shuì jiào ne.* ‘I was asleep when he came yesterday’. (Note the clause sequence, the ‘when’ clause comes first.)

Future – *Míngtiān xiàwǔ* (afternoon) *xià bān yǐhòu qù zhǎo tā, tā yídìng zài dǎ pái ne.* ‘(If) you go and look for her tomorrow afternoon after work, she’ll certainly be playing cards’.

## 4 Kěxī

A whole range of adjectives are made up of *kě* + verb to give the literal meaning of ‘being worth -ing’, ‘able to be -ed’. Some of the more common ones are given below:

<i>kě’ài</i> ‘lovable, lovely’	<i>kěkào</i> ‘reliable’
<i>kělián</i> ‘pitiable, pitiful’	<i>kěpà</i> ‘terrifying (able to be feared)’
<i>kěxī</i> ‘it’s a pity’	<i>kěxiào</i> ‘laughable, ridiculous’

## 5 Months of the year

<i>yīyuè</i>	<i>January</i>
<i>èryuè</i>	<i>February</i>
<i>sānyuè</i>	<i>March</i>
<i>sìyuè</i>	<i>April</i>
<i>wǔyuè</i>	<i>May</i>
<i>liùyuè</i>	<i>June</i>
<i>qīyuè</i>	<i>July</i>
<i>bāyuè</i>	<i>August</i>
<i>jíyuè</i>	<i>September</i>
<i>shíyuè</i>	<i>October</i>
<i>shíyīyuè</i>	<i>November</i>
<i>shíèryuè</i>	<i>December</i>

Note that whereas *yī* + *yuè* means 'January' (some people say *yíyuè*), *yī* + *ge* + *yuè* means 'one month', *èryuè* means February, but *liǎng ge yuè* 'two months' and so on. If -*chū* 'at the beginning of' or -*dī* 'at the end of' is added to a specific month, April for instance, we get *sìyuèchū*, '(in) early April' and *sìyuèdī*, 'at the end of April'. This also works with *nián*, 'year', *niánchū* meaning 'at the beginning of the year' and *niándī*, 'at the end of the year'.

## 6 Omission of *hěn* implies comparison

This point has already been touched on in 4.8 but the example from the text illustrates it beautifully as well as providing another example of the balance which is such a feature of Chinese:

*qíngtiān duō, yíntiān shǎo.*

## 7 *Yī...jiù...*

*Yī...jiù...* are used to connect two actions which follow on closely one from another:

*Wǒ yī huá xuě* (slide snow 'ski') *jiù gāoxìng le*. 'As soon as I get skiing, I'm happy'.

*Tiānqì yī hǎo, gōngyuán lǐ de rén jiù hěn duō. . . . yī xià bān jiù pǎo dào Běihǎi Gōngyuán qù huá.*

It may help you to remember this construction if you think of it as *yī* verb<sub>1</sub>, *jiù* verb<sub>2</sub>, 'as soon as verb<sub>1</sub> happens, then verb<sub>2</sub> happens'.

## 8 *V<sub>1</sub>-O de, V<sub>1</sub>-O*

When we wish to convey the idea that amongst a specified group of people some are engaged in one activity, others in another and so on, each group and its activity is expressed by the construction *V<sub>1</sub>-O de, V<sub>1</sub>-O*. This is repeated as many times as there are activities, with the verb-object changing each time of course: *Lǎo(nián) rén xià qí de xià qí, dǎ pái de dǎ pái, liáo tiān(r) de liáo tiān(r)*. . . . In other words, of the old people in the park, some are doing A (playing chess), some are doing B (playing cards) and some are doing C (chatting).

*Gōngyuán lǐ sànbù de sànbù, zhàoxiàng de zhàoxiàng. . . .*

'Some people in the park are taking a stroll, others are taking photographs . . . '.

## 9 Dǎ + object

In addition to the two examples from the text, *dǎ pái* and *dǎ taijiquán*, *dǎ* (Lit. 'to hit' or 'to strike') can appear with a whole series of different objects, some of which are given below:

<i>dǎ diànbào</i>	'to send a telegram' (Lit. hit electric newspaper)
<i>dǎ diànhuà</i>	'to make a telephone call' (Lit. hit electric speech)
<i>dǎ gē(r)</i>	'to belch'
<i>dǎ gǔ</i>	'to beat a drum'
<i>dǎ hān</i>	'to snore'
<i>dǎ hāqian</i>	'to yawn'
<i>dǎ hū(lu)</i>	'to snore (coll.)'
<i>dǎ pīgu</i>	'to spank' (Lit. hit buttocks)
<i>dǎ qì</i>	'to pump, inflate'
<i>dǎ qiú</i>	'to play ball'
<i>dǎ zhēn</i>	'to give or have an injection' (Lit. hit needle)
<i>dǎ zì</i>	'to type' (Lit. hit characters)

## 10 Děng + noun

We met *děng* 'etc.' in Chapter 8 and this is an extension of that meaning. 'Such people as Mr Li, Mr Wang and Miss Scurfield' translates into Chinese as *Lǐ xiānsheng*, *Wáng xiānsheng*, *Shǐ xiǎojie děng rén* (Lit. etc./people). 'Such places as Sichuan and Guangdong (Canton)' translates as *Sīchuān*, *Guāngdōng děng dì* (Lit. etc./places).

## 11 Verbal suffix -zhe

The verbal suffix *-zhe* is placed after the verb to show that the action of the verb goes on for some time. It may sometimes be thought of as indicating a continuous state: *Chuānghu guānzhe*. 'The window is shut'. *Mén kāi\* zhe*. 'The door is open'. *-zhe* often appears with verbs such as *zuò* 'to sit', *zhàn* 'to stand' and *děng* 'to wait' which are often prolonged. In such cases the verb + *zhe* is often translated by a continuous tense in English, 'to be -ing':

*Tā zuòzhe*. 'He is/was sitting'.

The negative is made by putting *méi* (*yǒu*) in front of the verb with *-zhe*: *Mén méi kāi\* zhe*. 'The door isn't/wasn't open (has not remained open)'.

The question form is made by adding *ma* to the statement or by adding *méi yǒu* after it, the implication being that the speaker wishes the state of affairs indicated in his question to continue:

*Shōuyīnji kāi\*zhe ma?* ‘Is the radio on?’

*Lùyīnji kāi\*zhe méi you?* ‘Is the record player on?’

\* *kāi* ‘to open’ (of doors, windows); ‘to turn on’ (of lights, radio, TV and so on).

Note that:

- 1 An adverbial phrase of manner is often formed with a verb + *zhe* (+ object) which then precedes the main verb: *Tā xiào zhe shuō* (Lit. he/laughing/say) ‘He says/said with a smile/laugh’. *Tā qízhe zìxíngchē qù gōngyuán wán(r)* (Lit. She/riding astride/self-propelling machine/go/park/have fun) ‘She’s going/gone on her bicycle to the park to enjoy herself’.

In the example from the text, the adverbial phrase of manner with *zhe* and the verb-object phrase which follows it have become a nominal phrase describing the people in teahouses: *zài chágūǎn lǐ zuòzhe hē chá de yě hěn duō* (Lit. At/tea establishment inside/sitting/drink/tea/ /also/very/many) ‘There are also a lot of (old – understood from previous sentence) people who sit in teahouses drinking tea’.

- 2 The continuation of an action generally implies that the action is also in progress so that -*zhe* is often to be found together with *zhèngzài*, *zhèng*, *zài* or *ne* (see 10.3). *Xiàozhǎng lái de shíhou, wǒ zhèng dǎzhe diànhuà ne* (Lit. School head/come/when/I/in the middle of/hitting/electric speech/) ‘I was on the phone when the headmaster/mistress came’.
- 3 Verbs with -*zhe* cannot take verb endings or complements of any sort. It would be incorrect to say, for instance, *Wǒ dǎzhe zì dǎ de hěn hǎo*. (Note that pinyin convention always shows *zhe* attached to the verb.)

## 12 Adverbial phrases of time (‘Time how long’)

As we saw in 3.8, adverbs of ‘time when’ precede the verb, but adverbs of ‘time how long’ follow the verb:

*Zhōngguórén yìbān gōngzuò wǔ tiān* ‘The Chinese generally work five days’. (Remember that *tiān* does not require a measure word, see 8.5.)

*Jiguān gàn bù měi tiān gōngzuò qī ge xiǎoshí* (hour) ‘Cadres in offices work a seven-hour day’. (Note that *měi tiān*, ‘time when’, precedes the verb.)

Where there is a direct object, the construction is:

1	S <i>Wǒ</i>	V <sub>1</sub> <i>chàng</i>	O, <i>gēr,</i>	V <sub>1</sub> <i>chàng</i>	'time how long' <i>liǎng ge xiǎoshí.</i>
(Lit. I sing songs, sing two hours.) 'I sing for two hours.'					

or

2	S <i>Wǒ</i>	V <i>chàng</i>	'time how long' <i>liǎng ge zhōngtóu</i>	de	O <i>gēr.</i>
(Lit. I sing two hours (worth of) songs.) 'I sing for two hours.'					

*De* is sometimes omitted but it is helpful to beginners to think of it as always being there. (*Zhōngtóu* 'hour' is interchangeable with *xiǎoshí*.)

### Exercise 10.1

Change the following pattern (i) sentences into pattern (ii) sentences:

*Tā kàn diànsì, kàn liǎng ge xiǎoshí* → *Tā kàn liǎng ge xiǎoshí de diànsì.*

- 1 *Tā xī yān, xī shí fēn zhōng.*
- 2 *Lǎoshī* (teacher) *jiāo shū, jiāo yí ge xiǎoshí.*
- 3 *Gēge lù yīn, lù bàn ge zhōngtóu.*
- 4 *Wǒ àiren huà huàr, huà sān kè zhōng.*
- 5 *Chāngzhāng* (head of a factory) *kāi chē, kāi sān ge bàn* (three-and-a-half) *xiǎoshí.*

Change the following pattern (ii) sentences into pattern (i) sentences:

*Tāmen xiě yí kè zhōng de zì* → *Tāmen xiě zì, xiě yí kè zhōng.*

- 6 *Didi kàn bàn ge xiǎoshí de shū.*
- 7 *Laörén shuì yí ge bàn* (one-and-a-half) *xiǎoshí de jiào.*
- 8 *Wǒ yí ge péngyou zǒu qī ge zhōngtóu de lù.*
- 9 *Nǎ wèi xiānsheng shuō hěn cháng* (long) *shíjiān de huà le.*
- 10 *Nǎ wèi xiǎojie néng dǎ jiǔ ge xiǎoshí de zì?*

## 13 Days of the week

*Xīngqī* (Lit. 'star period'), the Chinese word for 'week' precedes the numerals 1–6 to give the days of the week from Monday to Saturday. 'Sunday' is not *xīngqīqī*, however, but *xīngqītiān* or *xīngqīrì*. 'What day is it today?' is *Jǐntiān xīngqījī?* (Note that no verb is necessary.)

xīngqīyī	Monday
xīngqī'èr	Tuesday
xīngqīsān	Wednesday
xīngqīsì	Thursday
xīngqīwǔ	Friday
xīngqīliù	Saturday
xīngqītiān/xīngqīnì	Sunday

Other useful vocabulary items are *běn* *xīngqī* or *zhè ge* *xīngqī* ‘this week’, *shàng* (*ge*) *xīngqī* ‘last week’ and *xià* (*ge*) *xīngqī* ‘next week’. The same system applies to *yuè* ‘month’: *běn* *yuè* or *zhè ge* *yuè* ‘this month’, *shàng* (*ge*) *yuè* ‘last month’ and *xià* (*ge*) *yuè* ‘next month’. An alternative word for ‘week’ is *lìbài*. The days of the week work in exactly the same way as for *xīngqī*. For example, ‘Wednesday’ would be *lìbàisān* and ‘Sunday’ would either be *lìbàitiān* or *lìbàirì*. *Lìbài* is often used by overseas Chinese rather than *xīngqī* and has religious connotations. *Zuò lìbài* (v-o) means ‘to go to church’.

### Exercise 10.2

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate time word or phrase

*Jǐntiān xīngqījǐ?* → *Jǐntiān xīngqī'èr*.

- 1 *Jǐntiān xīngqīsān. Míngtiān* \_\_\_\_.
- 2 *Zuótiān* (yesterday) *xīngqītiān. Jǐntiān* \_\_\_\_? *Jǐntiān* \_\_\_\_.
- 3 *Shàng ge yuè wǔyuè. Xià ge yuè jǐ yuè? Xià ge yuè* \_\_\_\_.
- 4 *Yí nián yǒu jǐ ge yuè? Yí nián yǒu* \_\_\_\_.
- 5 *Yí ge xīngqī yǒu jǐ tiān? Yí ge xīngqī yǒu* \_\_\_\_.
- 6 *Jiǔyuè yǒu duōshao tiān? Jiǔyuè yǒu* \_\_\_\_.
- 7 *Èryuè ne? Èryuè yǒu* \_\_\_\_ *huòzhě* \_\_\_\_.
- 8 *Yí nián yǒu duōshao tiān? Yí nián yǒu* \_\_\_\_ *huòzhě* \_\_\_\_ (bǎi hundred).

## 14 Reduplication of measure words

Repeating *yí* + measure word after the noun gives the meaning ‘one after another’, whether it is ‘one worker after another’, *gōngrén yí ge yí ge* . . . , ‘one sheet of paper after another’, *zhǐ yì zhāng yí zhāng* . . . , or ‘one group after another’, *yì qún yí qún* (made up of ‘men and women, old and young’ in the text), etc.

## 15 Position of conjunctions

We have met *suīrán* . . . *dànshi* . . . in 8.12 and *rúguō* . . . (*de huà*) *jiù*; *yàoshi* . . . *jiù* in 9.4. Two other common pairs are

*yīnwèi . . . suōyǐ . . .*, ‘because . . . (so) . . .’; and *búdàn . . . érqiě . . .* ‘not only . . . but also . . .’. The first one of the pair can occur either at the beginning of the sentence or after the subject. *Jiù*, being a true adverb, immediately precedes the verb and therefore always comes after the subject if there is one: *Nǐ yào xiǎng shài tàiyáng, jiù děi gēn chéng qiān shàng wàn de rén yìqǐ shài!* Note that *yàoshi* can be reduced to *yào*. It is sometimes merely a matter of the sentence rhythm or of how it sounds which decides whether *yàoshi* or *yào* is used.

## 16 *Gēn . . . yìqǐ*

*Wǒ gēn nǐ qù* means ‘I’ll go with you’ (*Lit. I/with/you/go*). *Wǒ gēn nǐ yìqǐ qù* (*Lit. I/with/you/together/go*) may also be translated as above, but the addition of *yìqǐ* reinforces the idea of togetherness: *Wǒmen yìqǐ qù ba* ‘Let’s go together’.

## 17 *Dào . . . qù/lái*

As a verb, *dào* means ‘to go, to arrive (in), to reach’, *Tā dào le* ‘he’s arrived’. If there is a place-word after *dào*, the simple directional ending *lái* or *qù* is used at the end of the clause to indicate direction towards or away from the speaker (see 5.1).

As a compound directional ending with *qù* or *lái*, *dào* can translate simply as ‘to’ when used with such verbs as *pǎo* ‘to run’, *zǒu* ‘to walk’ and *bān* ‘to remove’: *Wǒmen xiǎng míngnián* (next year) *bān dào Jiānádà qu* (*Lit. We/fancy/next year/move to/Canada/go*) ‘We plan to move to Canada next year’.

... *yī xià bān jiù pǎo dào Běihǎi Gōngyuán qù huá*. (*Lit. As soon as/descend/shift/then/run to/Beihai/Park/go/slides*).

### i Chinese togetherness

The Chinese have developed various ways of handling their enforced ‘togetherness’ and in general they cope with crowd situations a great deal more good-humouredly than their Western counterparts. In spite of the fact that living accommodation is generally cramped, at least in the cities, most Chinese actually find it unthinkable or even undesirable to spend much time on their own and are often surprised by some Westerners’ need for privacy.

**Exercise 10.3**

Mark the following sentences with (+) for the correct ones and (–) for the incorrect ones.

- 1 Wǒ zhèng dǎ diànhuà, tā jīntiān lái de shíhou.
- 2 Shì ma, nǐ míngtiān qù huá xuě (to ski)?
- 3 Mèimei shuì jiào, shuì sān ge zhōngtóu.
- 4 Dìdi shuì jiào sì ge xiǎoshí.
- 5 Xià bān yǐqián, tā zhèngzài shài tàiyáng ne.
- 6 Zǒnglǐ (premier) xiǎng bāyuèdǐ qù Yàzhōu (Asia).
- 7 Wǒ péngyou zhēn qiguài, yī huí jiā, jiù tā dǎ tàiijíquán.
- 8 Diànshì kāizhe méi ma?
- 9 Zǒngtǒng (president) xià ge yuè qù Fēizhōu (Africa), qù èr ge yuè.
- 10 Xiàtiān rúguō xià dà yǔ, qù lǚxíng jiù bù hǎo bàn le!

**Exercise 10.4**

Translate the following passage into colloquial English:

Yǒu rén xiǎng Yīngguó tiānqì bù zěnmeyàng dànshi fǎnguòlái (conversely) yě yǒu yìxiē rén juéde (feel) Yīngguó tiānqì hěn bùcuò, bù lěng yě bù rè, dōngtiān yě bù yíding xià xuě, dànshi yǒu yì diǎn bùdé bù chénggrèn, Yīngguó bùguǎn (no matter) nǐ zài nǎr dōu jīngcháng xià yǔ. Zhōngguó yìbān qíngtiān duō, yíntiān shǎo dànshi Yīngguó xiāngfǎn (opposite), yíntiān duō, qíngtiān shǎo. Yǒu rén shuō zhè ge gēn Yīngguórén de guài (strange) píqi (temperament) yǒu guānxi, yě yǒu rén shuō zhè ge gēn Yīngguórén kě'ài de píqi yǒu guānxi. Nǎ zhǒng shuōfǎ duì ne? Qǐng nǐ shuōshuo!

**Exercise 10.5**

Translate the following into Chinese:

- 1 I was in the middle of watching TV when my friend came on Sunday.
- 2 I'd like to go with you to the Summer Palace for a walk.
- 3 As soon as she starts (*kāishǐ*) snoring, I leave!
- 4 The windows were open but the door was closed.
- 5 There was a lot of activity (use *rènào*) going on in the park – some people were doing taijiquan, others were taking photographs and some people were sunbathing.
- 6 When the weather's fine, I sit outside and read a book (use -*zhe*).
- 7 We sing for half an hour every evening and then go to bed.
- 8 Because she didn't phone at all on Tuesday I don't know (*zhīdao*) whether I'm going or not (use *bìng*).

- 9 If I'm at my parents' home, I frequently go to the park nearby to play tennis (*wǎngqiú*) (use *dào . . . qù*).
- 10 She said with a smile that she was already married.
- 11 Are you listening to the radio? No, we're listening to a tape (use *lù yīn*).
- 12 You're going to see a play (*kàn xiè*) tomorrow, aren't you? What a pity I can't go with you.



# in the restaurant

In this chapter you will learn

- about *guānxi* in China
- how to express approximate numbers
- how to say *first, second, third* etc.
- the difference between *cái* and *jiù*

 Zhang Zhanyi is now working in the Western dining-room (*Xī Cāntīng*) at the Beijing Hotel where one lunch-time he encounters Mr King and Miss Scurfield.

- Zhāng** Have you ordered? *Nǐmèn cài dìng hǎo le méi you?*  
**Shǐ** *Dìng hǎo le, xièxie nǐ. Píjiǔ lái le – à, bù shi Běijīng píjiǔ ér shi Qīngdǎo píjiǔ.*
- Zhāng** *Méi guānxi, Qīngdǎo píjiǔ gèng hǎo hē. Nín pǔtōnghuà shuō de zhēn hǎo.*  
**Shǐ** *Guòjiāng, guòjiāng, shuō de bù hǎo.*  
**Zhāng** *Shuō de hěn hǎo. Nín shi nǎ guó rén?*  
**Shǐ** *Nǐ cāicai ba.*  
**Zhāng** *Bù shi Měiguórén jiù shi Yīngguórén.*  
**Shǐ** *Wǒ shi Yīngguórén. Nǐ zěnme zhīdao ne?*  
**Zhāng** *Yīnwèi gāngcái nín shi gēn nín péngyou shuō Yīngyǔ! Nín péngyou yě huì shuō Hànnyǔ ma?*  
**Shǐ** *Yě huì shuō.*  
**Wáng** *Shuō de méi tā hǎo.*  
**Zhāng** *À, nǐmèn liǎ de Hànnyǔ zhēn bàng, xué le jǐ nián le?*  
**Shǐ** *Xué le liǎng nián le.*  
**Zhāng** *Nín ne? (Zhǐ de shì Wáng Yǒngshòu).*  
**Wáng** *Xué le sì nián le.*  
**Zhāng** *Nǐmèn zài Zhōngguó dāi le hěn cháng shíjiān le ba?*  
**Wáng** *Bù cháng, lái le sān ge duō yuè le.*  
**Zhāng** *Zhè shi nǐmèn dì yí cì lái Zhōngguó ma?*  
**Wáng** *Bù, tā shi dì yí cì, wǒ shi dì èr cì.*  
**Zhāng** *Nǐmèn zhēn xíng, fāyīn hěn qīngchu, méi shénmé yángwèi(r), hěn biāozhǔn de pǔtōnghuà. Xué Zhōngwén bù shi hěn nán xué ma?*  
**Wáng** *Nán shi nán, kěshì yě yǒu tā róngyì de dìfang, bǐfang shuō Zhōngwén fāyīn, yǔfǎ dōu bìng bù nán, nán de shi shèngdiào. Dui wǒmen Xīfāngrén lái shuō, Zhōngwén de sīshēng háishi xiāngdāng kùnnan de.*  
**Zhāng** *Xiě Hánzì ne?*  
**Shǐ** *Xiě Hánzì hěn bù róngyì, yīnwèi wǒmen wàiguórén yibān shi chéngniánrén cái kāishǐ xué Zhōngwén, bù xiàng nǐmèn liù, qī suí jiù kāishǐ le. Dāngrán hái yǒu yì diǎn, Zhōngwén jiùshì nǐmèn de mǔyǔ.*  
**Zhāng** *Nà dàoshi. Xiàng nǐmèn zhè yàng de shuǐpíng, bàozhǐ kàn de dǒng ma?*  
**Shǐ** *Kàn de dǒng.*  
**Zhāng** *Xiǎoshuō ne?*  
**Shǐ** *Yě xíng, dànshi bù rènshi de zì hái yào chá zìdiǎn. À, cài lái le, zhēn piàoliang a! Kàn qǐlai yídìng hěn hǎo chī.*

Zhāng Nàme, nǐmen mǎnmǎnr chī ba, bù zài dǎrǎo nǐmen le.  
Yǒu shénme shì, suíshí kěyǐ jiào wǒ.

Wáng Hǎo de, xièxie nǐ, yǒu shénme shì yíding zhǎo nǐ. Gēn nǐ liáo tiān(r) hěn yǒu yisi.

\*\*\*

Zhang Have you ordered?

Shi Yes we have, thank you. Here comes the beer – oh, it's Qingdao beer not Beijing beer.

Zhang It doesn't matter, Qingdao beer is even better. You (pol.) speak really good Chinese.

Shi You're too kind, I don't speak it well at all.

Zhang Yes you do. Where are you from?

Shi Have a guess.

Zhang You're either American or British.

Shi I'm British. How did you know?

Zhang Because you (pol.) were speaking English with your friend just now! Can your (pol.) friend also speak Chinese?

Shi Yes he can.

Wang I'm not as good as she is.

Zhang Oh, both of you have got brilliant Chinese. How many years have you been studying it?

Shi Two years (so far).

Zhang How about you? (He is referring to Wang Yongshou.)

Wang I've been studying for four.

Zhang I suppose you've been in China for a very long time?

Wang No we haven't, we've only been here a little over three months.

Zhang Is this your first time in China?

Wang No, it's her first but my second.

Zhang You're really great! Your pronunciation is very clear with no foreign overtones, it's good standard Chinese. Isn't Chinese awfully hard to learn?

Wang Yes it is, but there are some easy things about it too – for example, neither Chinese pronunciation nor grammar is at all difficult, what is difficult are the tones. As far as we Westerners are concerned, the four tones in Chinese are still pretty difficult.

Zhang How about writing Chinese characters?

Shi Writing Chinese characters is very difficult because we foreigners generally do not start learning Chinese until we are adults, not like you people who start at six or seven. Of course the other thing is that Chinese happens to be your mother tongue.

- Zhang** Yes indeed. With Chinese at a level like yours, can you read newspapers?
- Shi** Yes.
- Zhang** How about novels?
- Shi** They're OK too, but we still have to look up characters we don't know in the dictionary. Oh, the food's here, it looks great. It certainly looks appetizing.
- Zhang** I'll leave you to get on with your meal in peace. Call me if you need anything.
- Wang** Fine, thank you. If we need anything we'll certainly ask for you. It's been really interesting chatting with you.

-hǎo (RVE)	<i>to do the action of the verb satisfactorily</i>
píjiǔ (n)	<i>beer</i>
bú shi . . . ér shi . . .	<i>not . . . but . . .</i>
Qīngdǎo (N)	<i>Qingdao</i>
gèng (adv.)	<i>even more, still more</i>
pǔtōnghuà (n)	<i>common spoken language (Modern Standard Chinese; Mandarin)</i>
guòjiāng	<i>you flatter me</i>
cāi (v)	<i>to guess</i>
bú shi A jiù shi B	<i>if it's not A then it's B</i>
Mēiguórén (n)	<i>(an) American</i>
zěnme (QW)	<i>how</i>
zhīdao (v)	<i>to know</i>
yīnwèi (conj.)	<i>because (also read yīnwei)</i>
gāngcái (TW)	<i>just now</i>
Yīngyǔ (n)	<i>English language</i>
bàng (adj.)	<i>excellent (coll.)</i>
zhǐ (v)	<i>to refer to; to point at/to</i>
cháng (adj.)	<i>long</i>
duō (num.)	<i>used to express an approximate number</i>
dì	<i>ordinal prefix</i>
cì (MW)	<i>time, occasion</i>
fāyīn (n)	<i>pronunciation</i>
qīngchu (adj.; RVE)	<i>clear; clearly</i>
yángwèi(r) (n)	<i>foreign flavour</i>
A shi A dànshi . . .	<i>it's A all right but . . .</i>
róngyì (adj.)	<i>easy</i>
bǐfang shuō	<i>for example</i>
yǔfǎ (n)	<i>grammar</i>
shēngdiào (n)	<i>tone</i>

<b>duì X lái shuō</b>	<i>as far as X is concerned</i>
<b>Xīfāngrén (n)</b>	<i>Westerner</i>
<b>sì shēng (n)</b>	<i>the four tones</i>
<b>háishí (adv.)</b>	<i>after all, still (emphatic)</i>
<b>kùnnan (adj.; n)</b>	<i>difficult; difficulty</i>
<b>xiě (zì) (v(-o))</b>	<i>to write (characters)</i>
<b>Hànzì (n)</b>	<i>Chinese character(s)</i>
<b>chéngnlánré (n)</b>	<i>an adult</i>
<b>cái (adv.)</b>	<i>not . . . until . . . ; only</i>
<b>kāishǐ (v)</b>	<i>to begin</i>
<b>diǎn (n)</b>	<i>point, aspect</i>
<b>jiùshí</b>	<i>(be) precisely</i>
<b>mǔyǔ (n)</b>	<i>mother tongue</i>
<b>dào(shí) (adv.)</b>	<i>indeed, as it happens (indicates something contrary to the general train of thought)</i>
<b>zhè yàng (dem. adj. + n)</b>	<i>this kind of, such a</i>
<b>shuǐpíng (n)</b>	<i>level, standard</i>
<b>bào(zhí) (n) [zhāng or fèn]</b>	<i>newspaper</i>
<b>-dǒng (RVE; v)</b>	<i>-ing with understanding;</i> <i>to understand</i>
<b>xiǎoshuō (n) [běn]</b>	<i>novel</i>
<b>chá (v)</b>	<i>to check</i>
<b>zìdiǎn (n) [běn]</b>	<i>dictionary</i>
<b>chá zìdiǎn (v-o)</b>	<i>to consult a dictionary</i>
<b>-qǐlai (RVE)</b>	<i>see 11.13</i>
<b>dǎrǎo (v)</b>	<i>to disturb</i>
<b>shì(qing) (n) [jiàn]</b>	<i>matter, thing</i>
<b>yǒu yìsì (v-o)</b>	<i>to be interesting</i>

## Grammar

### 1 *Bú shi... ér shi...*

If we wish to convey the idea that ‘it is not A but B’ we use the construction *bú shi A ér shi B*, where *shi* is the verb ‘to be’ and *ér* is a conjunction which has come into modern Chinese from the classical language meaning amongst other things, ‘and’, ‘but’:

*Bú shi Bēijīng píjiū ér shi Qīngdǎo píjiū.*

*Bú shi zhūròu ér shi niúròu* (Lit. Not/be/pig meat/but/be/cattle meat) ‘It’s not pork but beef’.

## 2 Bú shi...jiù shi...

'If it is not A then it is B', *bú shi A jiù shi B*. This construction is easily confused with the one above but by remembering that *jiù* means 'then' you should be able to distinguish them correctly:

*Bú shi Mēiguórén jiù shi Yīngguórén.*

*Bú shi niúròu jiù shi yángròu* (Lit. Not/be/cattle/meat/then/be/sheep meat) 'If it's not beef then it's mutton'.

Of course *bú shi...jiù shi...* could be translated as 'either... or...' but in doing so it somehow loses its flavour.

## 3 Zěnme and zěnmeyàng

*Zěnme* and *zěnmeyàng* can both be used adverbially before a verb to ask how something is done, although *zěnme* is used much more frequently in this way: *Nǐ zěnme zhīdào ne? Nǐ zěnmeyàng zhīdào?*

*Zěnme* can also be used to ask the reason why something happens but *zěnmeyàng* cannot be used in this way: *Tā zěnme méi gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuà ne?* (Lit. She/why/not (have)/for/you/hit/electric speech/) 'How come she hasn't phoned you?'.

*Zěnme* feels a little less formal than *wèi shénme*, 'why?', hence its translation as 'how come' in the previous example. Note that question words such as *zěnme*, *zěnmeyàng* and *wèi shénme* often take *ne* at the end of the sentence containing them (see 3.3). Only *zěnmeyàng* can be used after the complement of degree marker *de* (see 4.8) or to ask something about the subject of a sentence:

*Tā de pǔtōnghuà zěnmeyàng?* 'What's his (spoken) Chinese like?'.

## 4 More on *le*

i We know that *le* used at the end of a sentence can indicate a change of state (see 4.6). We also know it can indicate that a certain state of affairs has already taken place (see 7.9):

- a *Píjiǔ lái le.*
- b *Nǐmen liù、qī suì jiù kāishi le.*
- c *Wǒ zuótiān xiě zì le* (Lit. I/yesterday/write/characters/) 'I did some writing yesterday'.
- d *Tā jīntiān zhōngwǔ zuò huǒchē le* (Lit. He/today/noon/sit/fire vehicle/). 'He took the train at noon today'.

In **c** and **d** the object is simple and unmodified. As soon as the object is modified in any way we have to use the verbal suffix *le* (see 3.4) and the sentence *le* is dropped: *Wǒ zuótiān xiě le hěn duō zì* 'I did a lot of writing yesterday'. By doing this, we focus our attention on what has been done rather than on what has simply taken place.

- ii** If the object is quantified, then the use of the verbal suffix *le* and the sentence-final particle *le* generally indicates the continuation of some action or state of affairs. Of course this also involves 'time how long' (see 10.12) so the construction is as follows:

*Wǒ xué Zhōngwén, xué le wǔ nián le.* }  
or

*Wǒ xué le wǔ nián (de) Zhōngwén le.* }

'I have been studying Chinese for five years (and still am)'.

Compare this with:

*Wǒ xué le wǔ nián (de) Zhōngwén* 'I studied Chinese for five years (and am no longer doing so, i.e. it's over and done with)'.

Another example may help to highlight this difference:

*Tā zài Zhōngguó zhù le bàn nián le* 'She has been living in China for six months (and still is)'.

*Tā zài Zhōngguó zhù le bàn nián* 'She lived in China for six months (and is no longer doing so)'.

- iii** A sentence consisting of a verb + *le* followed by a simple object is regarded as being incomplete, something else is expected to follow. Thus *Wǒ chī le fàn* is not a complete sentence in Chinese and must be followed by another clause:

*Wǒ chī le fàn jiù zǒu le* 'I left after having eaten'.

*Wǒ chī le fàn jiù zǒu* 'I'll leave after eating'.

(In the second example, *le* shows completed action in the future, further illustrating the point that *le* should not be thought of as a past tense marker.) Where the object is a simple one, the addition of the final particle *le* makes the sentence complete: *Wǒ chī le fàn le* 'I've eaten'.

- iv** When a past action is a habitual one or there is no need to emphasize its completion, no *le* is used after the verb: *Qùnián tā chángcháng lái* 'He often used to come last year'. *Qùnián xiàtiān tā zài Bēijīng Yǔyán Dàxué gōngzuò* 'Last summer he worked at the Beijing Language [and Culture] University'.

## 5 Approximate numbers

There are several ways of indicating approximate numbers in Chinese:

- i When *duō* is placed after a whole number plus its measure word or after a whole number plus a noun acting as a measure word (*nián*, *tiān*), it represents a fraction of one unit: *sān ge duō xiǎoshí* ‘three and a bit hours, over three hours’, *yì tiān duō* ‘one and a bit days’.
- ii When *duō* is placed after the whole number but before the measure word or noun acting as a measure word, it represents a whole number in itself: *sānshí duō nián* ‘over thirty years’ (anything from 31 to 39), *yì bǎi duō yè* ‘one hundred-odd pages’ (could be 110, 125, etc.).
- iii *Jǐ* can be used to indicate an indefinite number under ten: *Zhě shàng xiězhe jǐ ge Hánzì* ‘There were several Chinese characters written on the paper’. *Lǎoshī yǒu shí jǐ běn zìdiǎn* ‘The teacher has a dozen or so dictionaries’ (any number from 11 to 19). *Xuéshēng yǐjīng xué le jǐ bǎi ge shēngcí le* ‘The students have already learnt several hundred new words (so far)’.
- iv Two consecutive numbers may be put together: *Wǒ zhǐ (only) qùguo liǎng, sān cì Měiguó* ‘I’ve only been to the States two or three times’. NB The pause-mark (*dùnhào*), and not a comma, is used between ‘two’ and ‘three’. *Xuéxiào yǒu bā, jiǔshí ge háizi* ‘There are eighty or ninety children in the school’. *Nǐmen liù, qī suì jiù kāishí le*. If the object is a pronoun, it precedes *yí cì*, etc. *Wǒ kànɡuo tā yì, liǎng cì* ‘I’ve seen him/her once or twice’.
- v *Zuōyòu* (Lit. left right) may be put after a number to indicate ‘around’ or ‘about’: *yì bǎi ge rén zuōyòu* ‘about one hundred people’, *liǎng diǎn bàn zuōyòu* ‘around 2.30’.

## 6 *Dì* + number

Ordinal numbers (first, second, third) are made by putting *dì* in front of the number: *dì yī* ‘first’, *dì’ér* ‘second’, and *dì sān* ‘third’. Thus *dì yí cì* means ‘the first time’. In competitions of any sort, the Chinese are encouraged to remember *Yǒuyì dì yī, bísài dì’ér*, ‘Friendship first, competition second’. Make sure you distinguish between *èryuè* ‘February’, *dì’ér ge yuè* ‘the second month’ and *liǎng ge yuè* ‘two months’.

## 7 Bú shi... ma?

Bú shi... ma? asks a question which expects the answer 'yes'.

The word order is:

(Topic +) subject bú shi (+ adverb) Verb (+ other elements) ma?  
*Tā bú shi hěn lèi ma?* 'Isn't she very tired?' (Yes, she is.)  
*Xué Zhōngwén bú shi hěn nán xué ma?* (Yes, it is.)

## 8 A shi A dànshi/kěshì...

'It's A all right but...'. The main clause (A shi A) contains a positive or negative statement with some sort of a concession being made after dànshi/kěshì: *Guì shi guì, dànshi zhíliàng fēicháng hǎo* 'It's expensive all right, but the quality is excellent'. *Tā hǎo shi hǎo, kěshì píqi hěn huài* 'She is nice, but she's got a terrible temper (Lit. temperament very bad). *Nán shi nán, kěshì yě yǒu tā róngyì de dìfang*. 'Yes, it is difficult, but there are some easy things about it too!'

### Exercise 11.1

Answer these questions using the A shi A construction followed by a suitable 'but' clause of your own devising:

- 1 *Tā de fāyīn bú shi hěn qīngchu ma?*
- 2 *Wáng xiānsheng de Hānyǔ shuǐpíng gāo ma?*
- 3 *Zhè běn xiǎoshuō yǒu méi you yìsi?*
- 4 *Duì wàiguórén lái shuō, Zhōngwén de sīshēng shì bu shi hěn nán?*
- 5 *Qīngdǎo píjiǔ hǎo hé ma?*

## 9 Cái and jiù

Both *cái* and *jiù* are adverbs indicating something about time. *Cái* indicates that something takes place later or with more difficulty than had been expected. It translates into English as 'not... until...', 'then and only then': *Tā sān diǎn zhōng cái lái* 'He didn't come until 3' (but I had asked him to come at 2.30).

It is a common mistake for students to try to translate the 'not' in English with a *bù* or *méi* in Chinese. Remember that 'not' is already contained in *cái*.

*Jiù*, on the other hand, indicates that something takes place earlier or more promptly than expected: *Tā sān diǎn zhōng jiù lái le* 'He came at 3/He was there by 3' (but I had asked him to come at 3.30).

Both *cái* and *jiù* must come immediately before the verb regardless of what other elements there are in the sentence. *Jiù* usually takes *le*, whereas *cái* does not, perhaps because the verb with *cái* does not convey any real sense of completion. The following examples should help to make the distinction between the two clearer:

- a *Wǒ qǐng tā shàngwǔ bā diǎn bàn lái dànshi tā bā diǎn jiù lái le* 'I asked him to come at 8.30 am but he was there by 8' (i.e. too early).
- b *Wǒ qǐng tā shàngwǔ bā diǎn bàn lái dànshi tā jiù diǎn bàn cái lái* 'I asked him to come at 8.30 am but he didn't come until 9.30' (i.e. too late).
- a *Gēn nǐ liáo tiān(r) jiù zhīdao nǐ zhè ge rén hěn yǒu yìsi* 'As soon as I chatted to you I realized what a fascinating person you were'.
- b *Gēn nǐ liáo tiān(r) cái zhīdao nǐ zhè ge rén hěn yǒu yìsi* 'It was not until I'd had a chat with you that I realized what a fascinating person you were'.

*Cái* and *jiù* can also be translated as 'only' in sentences such as:

*Tā cái sān suì* } 'She's only 3 years old'.  
*Tā jiù sān suì* }

### Exercise 11.2

Fill in the blanks with the adverbs *jiù* or *cái*.

- 1 *Wǒ dào le Zhōngguó yǐhòu* \_\_\_\_ *zhīdao* *Qīngdǎo píjiǔ hěn hǎo hē*.
- 2 *Wǒ dào Zhōngguó què yǐqián* \_\_\_\_ *zhīdao* *Qīngdǎo píjiǔ hěn hǎo hē*.
- 3 *Nà fēng* (MW) *xìn* (letter) *xiě hǎo le méi you?* *Xiě hǎo le, zuótān* \_\_\_\_ *xiě hǎo le*.
- 4 *Nà fēng xìn yǐjīng xiě hǎo le ma?* *Hái méi xiě hǎo ne, míngtiān* \_\_\_\_ *xiě*.
- 5 *Tā kāishi xué Hanyǔ yǐhòu* \_\_\_\_ *fāxiàn* (discover) *Hanyǔ yǔfǎ bìng bù nán*.
- 6 *Diànyǐng qī diǎn bàn kāishi, tā bā diǎn* \_\_\_\_ *lái*.
- 7 *Què Měiguó yǐqián* \_\_\_\_ *cāi* *Měiguórén hěn kāilǎng* (open).
- 8 *Yīnwèi shìqing hěn zhònggyào* (important) *wǒ* \_\_\_\_ *dǎrǎo nǐmen*.

## 10 Jiùshì

*Jiùshì* 'to be precisely (something or somebody)', 'to be nothing else but' is used in the following way:

**Question:** Wǒ zhǎo Yuàn lǎoshī. Nǐ rènshí tā ma? 'I'm looking for Teacher Yuan. Do you know him?'

**Answer:** Wǒ jiùshì tā 'I am he (and no other)'.

## 11 Zhè zhǒng but zhè yàng de

Unlike *zhǒng* which is a true measure word and can therefore directly precede its noun, *yàng* acts as a noun with *zhè* and *nà* and must therefore take *de* before any noun which follows it: *zhè zhǒng qíngkuàng* 'this sort of situation' but *zhè yàng de shuǐpíng* 'this kind of level'. *Zhèyàng* and *nàyàng* can operate independently as adverbs to mean 'in this way' or 'in that way' ('like this' or 'like that'). *Zhèyàng zuò bù hǎo* 'It's no good doing it like this'. *Zhèyàng lěng, duì shēntǐ bù hǎo* 'Weather as cold as this is bad for the health'. *Tā xiě de zhèyàng kuài, zhēn méi xiǎng dào* 'I never expected him to write so quickly'.

## 12 More on resultative verbs

Resultative verbs were first introduced in 5.1, potential resultative verbs in 7.13. In this chapter we meet three more resultative verb endings:

-*hǎo* meaning 'to do the action of the verb satisfactorily' (and therefore also expressing the idea of completion).

-*dǒng* meaning 'to do the action of the verb with understanding'.

-*hǎo* can be found with many different verbs such as *zuò, shuō, zhǔnbèi* ('to prepare') and *xiě* but -*dǒng* is limited to *tīng* ('to listen') and *kàn* ('to read'):

Nǐmen cài dìng hǎo le méi you?

Bàozhǐ kàn de dǒng ma?

-*qīngchu* can also act as a resultative verb ending meaning 'to do (the action of the verb) clearly'.

## 13 More on directional endings

We met simple directional endings in 5.1 and compound directional endings in 8.9. Apart from their more literal meaning, a certain number of directional endings have extended or figurative meanings: verb + *qǐlai* (Lit. 'up': *ná qǐlai* 'to pick up', *zhàn qǐlai* 'to stand up').

- i ‘to start to do’ the action of the verb (and continue doing it) or for a state of affairs to start (and continue): *tán qǐlai* ‘start to chat’. *Tiānqì nuǎnhuo qǐlai le* ‘The weather’s starting to get warm’.
- ii To express a view or convey an impression: *kàn qǐlai* ‘from the look of things’. *Kàn qǐlai yào xià yǔ* ‘It looks like rain’. *Tīng qǐlai hěn yǒu dàoli* (Lit. Listen up/very/have/reason). ‘It sounds very reasonable’. *Shuō qǐlai róngyì, zuò qǐlai nán* ‘It’s easier said than done’.
- iii *Xiǎng qǐlai* is widely used to mean ‘to remember’, ‘to recall’: *A, wǒ xiǎng qǐlai le, tā xìng Chén* ‘I’ve got it, she was called Chen’.

Another very useful directional ending used in a figurative way is *-xiàqu* (Lit. ‘(go) down’) which is used to mean ‘to carry on’ doing the action of the verb: *zuò xiàqu* ‘to carry on doing’ (in a different context it could mean ‘to sit down’!). *Tīng xiàqu* ‘to carry on listening’.

### Exercise 11.3

Fill in the blanks with the most appropriate resultative verb ending (two brackets indicate a compound directional ending). You may need to refer back to 5.1, 7.13 and 8.9 to refresh your memory.

- 1 *Zhè kè kèwén wǒ kàn bu ( ), néng bu neng* (be capable of/can) *bāngzhù wǒ yíxià?*
- 2 *Zhuōzì tài dà le, bān bu ( ) ( ).*
- 3 *Wǒ zài wàimiàn dēngzhe nǐ. Qǐng nǐ zǒu ( ) ( ), hǎo bu hao?*
- 4 *Lianxí* (exercise) *wǒ hái méi zuò ( ) ne, jīntiān shìqing tài duō le.*
- 5 *Nǐ zěnme bù chī cài ne? Shì bu shi yǐjīng chī ( ) le?*
- 6 *Wǒ tài bèn* (stupid) *le, gēn bu ( ) nǐmen liǎng wèi.*
- 7 *Jīntiān de bāozhī méi kān ( ), bù zhīdao zài nǎr.*
- 8 *Zuìjìn* (recently) *hǎishuǐ* (seawater) *rè ( ) ( ) le, míngtiān kěyǐ qù yóuyǒng* (swim).
- 9 *Nà ge shāfā tài xiǎo le, zuò bu ( ) sān ge rén.*
- 10 *Zhè ge zì xiě ( ) yìdiǎnr, yàoobùrán wǒ zěnme kàn de ( )?*
- 11 *Duìxiàng shénme shíhou* (when?) *zhǎo de ( ) shì hěn nán shuō de.*
- 12 *Zhè běn xiǎoshuō suīrán méi yǒu yìsi, dànshì hái yào kàn ( ) ( ).*

## Chinese classlessness

One of the delights of Chinese society is that on some levels, (as shown in the text for instance), people appear unaffected by apparent differences in social status, and natural curiosity and real friendliness win the day. In general it is much easier for foreigners, with or without the right 'credentials' or connections (*guānxì*) to meet relatively well-known public figures, particularly those in the arts, than it would be for them in the West. If you are one of those people who 'succeeds' in this direction, beware of a false sense of your own importance – it may be that your Chinese contacts are just being polite! That many famous people seem to remain relatively untouched by their own success is a measure of how civilized, in real terms, the Chinese are.

### Exercise 11.4

Make up your own sentences using the following constructions:

- |                              |                             |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 <i>yī...jiù...</i>         | 5 <i>yuè lái yuè...</i>     |
| 2 <i>yòu...yòu...</i>        | 6 <i>rúguō...jiù...</i>     |
| 3 <i>bú shi...jiù shi...</i> | 7 <i>suīrán...dànshí...</i> |
| 4 <i>bú shi...ér shi...</i>  | 8 <i>bú shi...ma?</i>       |

### Exercise 11.5

Translate the following passage into colloquial English:

*Zhāng Zhànyī shi ge fúwùyuán. Tā hěn xǐhuan tā de gōngzuò, yīnwèi tā yǒu jīhuì (opportunity) gēn hěn duō bù tóng (not same, different) de rén jiēchù. Bú shi Měiguórén jiù shi Yīngguórén, bú shi Zhōngguórén jiù shi Rìběnrén. Yóude wàiguórén huì shuō hěn liúlì (fluent) de pǔtōnghuà, dànshí yángwèi(r) hěn zhòng (heavy), fāyīn, yǔfǎ dōu bù dà dùi, kěshì hái tīng de dōng. Yóude wàiguórén yī shuō qǐ Hànyǔ lai jiù hěn hǎoxiào (funny), yīnwèi méi yǒu shénme shèngdiào. Yě yǒu yìxiē wàiguórén Hànyǔ shuǐpíng hěn gāo, zài Zhōngguó dāi le hěn cháng shíjiān le, Zhōngwén bàozhǐ, xiǎoshuō dōu kàn de dōng, Hánzì yě huì xiě yìxiē. Chéngniánrén xué qǐ Hànyǔ lai bìng bù róngyi, zhíde (be worth) pèifú (admire) tāmen. Yóude rén lián (even) tāmen zìjǐ de mǔyǔ yě shuō bu hǎo, gèng bù bì (not have to) shuō yì mén (MW) wàiyǔ le!*

NB. *lián...yě...* go together in the same way as *rúguō...jiù...* (see 9.4).

### Exercise 11.6

Translate the following into Chinese:

- 1 I guess that if she's not American, she must be English.
- 2 His tones are really excellent but his pronunciation is hopeless.
- 3 I've already been to (1)/China(3)/six times(2)/but (I) still can't understand what people are saying.
- 4 As far as my best friend is concerned, writing is even more interesting than reading.
- 5 His hair (*tóufa*) is really long. How come he hasn't got it cut (*jiǎn*) yet?
- 6 She mastered (use *xué hǎo*) modern standard Chinese after only two years.
- 7 He's been learning Chinese for three years so his standard is pretty good now.
- 8 I didn't know until yesterday that he does not know how to use a Chinese dictionary.
- 9 Everyone likes talking to interesting people but there aren't many of them around (use *zhè yàng*).
- 10 I'll only disturb you if it's something important (*zhòngyào*).
- 11 I liked him very much after only talking with him once or twice.
- 12 He is terribly lazy (*lǎn*). It took him until today to read one page.

## i The Guanxi network

Who knows whom in China is very important when the wheels of bureaucracy need a certain amount of oiling and certain goods and services are in short supply. Your personal relations network is known as your *guānxihù* 关系户 (Lit. relationship household) and some people seem to have very extensive ones. Your *guānxihù* will be made up of many of those *tóng* relationships explained in Chapter 21, as well as your relatives and other people you have met along life's path. Many educated young people from urban areas who were sent to the countryside during the Cultural Revolution established quite sizeable *guānxihù* during that time which still stand them in good stead. If for instance a friend, colleague or *lǎo tóngxué* (old classmate) gives you an introduction (whether personally or by phone or letter) to one of his/her *guānxí* it is quite usual to present your new '*guānxí*' with a suitable present of some sort, a carton of foreign cigarettes *yì tiáo wàiguó yān* used to be quite acceptable. It would, of course, be wonderful not to have to use the *guānxihù* system to buy air or rail tickets or other goods and services (this is a small part of what the students were protesting about in 1989) but in a country so densely populated as China, it is well nigh impossible *not* to use the *guānxihù* system on occasions.



# **N** review grammar

**In this chapter you will learn**

- about common measure words
- about denominations of money
- about time words and expressions
- about resultative verbs
- about directional endings
- about auxiliary verbs and conjugations

As this chapter is for reference, characters have been included where they may be helpful.

## Common measure words

Pinyin	Character	Classification	Examples
bǎ	把	Objects with a handle, chairs	knife, umbrella, toothbrush; chair
bāo	包	packet (e.g. 20)	cigarettes
bēi	杯	cup	tea, coffee
běn	本	volume	books, magazines
bù	部		film
dǐng	顶		hats
fen	份	used if you have forgotten the correct one!	newspaper
fēng	封		letter
fù	副		sunglasses
gè	个		man
jià or tái	架、台	machines	television, radio, computer
jiān	间		room
jiàn	件	piece, article	clothes, luggage
jù	句	phrase	remarks
juǎn	卷	reel, spool	toilet paper, camera film
kē	棵		tree
kè	课		text, lesson
kǒu	口		
kuài	块	family members	
liàng	辆	piece	soap, land
píng	瓶	wheeled vehicles	car, bicycle
qún	群	bottles	
shǒu	首	crowd, group, flock	sheep, bees
tào	套	set	poem
tiáo	条		suite of furniture, set of stamps
wèi	位	long and winding; carton (e.g. 200)	towel, fish, street, river; cigarettes
zhāng	张	person (polite)	teacher, Mrs
zhī	枝、支	flat, rectangular objects	map, bed, table
zhī	只	long and thin objects	pencil, cigarette (one)
zuò	座	animals, one of paired body parts	butterfly, cat, hand, leg
		large, solid thing	mountain, bridge, building

## Denominations of money and time used like measure words

Pinyin	Character	Meaning
fēn	分	1/10 of a máo
máo	毛	1/10 of a kuài
kuài	块	basic unit of Chinese currency
fēn	分	minute
kè	刻	quarter
tiān	天	day
nián	年	year

## Time words and expressions

### 1 Time words

Time words have two functions:

- a As adverbs, they stand before a verb or another adverb to form a time background for the verb: *Wǒ jīntiān bù qù* 'I'm not going today'. *Shàng ge xīngqī tā méi qù gōngzuò* 'She didn't go to work last week'.
- b As nouns, they may function as the subject or object of a verb or modify another noun (with *de* 的): *Jīntiān shì xīngqīsì* 'Today is Thursday'. *Zuótiān de bào, nǐ kàn le mei you?* 'Did you see yesterday's paper?'

### 2 Types of 'time-when' expressions (standing before the verb)

- a Time words and phrases such as:

cóngqián	formerly	zuótiān wǎnshang	yesterday evening
jīntiān	today	tiāntiān zhōngwǔ	every day at noon
yè lǐ	in the night	qīyuè sì hào	July 4th
nà tiān	that day	dì'ěr tiān	the second or next day
zhè jǐ ge yuè	these last	měi (ge) xīngqītiān	every Sunday
	few months		

- b Time clauses such as:

*xiǎo de shíhou* 'when one is young'.

*xuéxí Zhōngwén de shíhou* 'when one is learning Chinese'.

*cóng xīngqīyī dào xīngqīwǔ* 'from Monday till Friday'.

c Lapse of time before negated verbs:

*Wǒ sān tiān méi chī dōngxi* ‘I didn’t eat a thing for three days’.

*Sān tiān bù chī fàn bù xíng* ‘It won’t do not to eat for three days’.

*Wǒ hěn jiǔ méi yǒu hē jiǔ le* ‘I haven’t touched alcohol for ages’.

*Wǒ nà sì nián méi kànjiàn tāmen* ‘I didn’t see them during those four years’.

### 3 Types of ‘time during which’ expressions (standing after the verb)

- a Num + MW + (*de* 的) and Num + MW + Noun + (*de* 的) such as: *liù tiān* ‘six days’, *liǎng ge xīngqī* ‘two weeks’, *shí nián de Zhōngwén* ‘ten years of Chinese’, *yí ge bàn yuè de Rìwén* ‘a month and a half of Japanese’.
- b Indefinite quantities of time
  - i *Tāmen zǒu le hěn jiǔ le* ‘They’ve been gone for a long time’.
  - ii *Wǒ zhǔnbèi kèwén, zhǔnbèi hěn jiǔ le* ‘I spent a lot of time on preparing the text’.

NB In b i two *les* – action still going on; in ii one *le* – action happened in the past.

## Resultative verbs (an introduction)

A resultative verb consists of a stem (an action verb) with a complement expressing the result of the action of the stem, e.g. *Tā kàn cuò le zhè ge zì* ‘S/he read this character wrongly’, *Nǐ de huà, wǒ tīng qīngchu le* ‘I heard clearly what you said’. As can be seen from this, the ending or complement may be followed directly by an object.

A resultative ending is regularly followed by the perfective suffix *-le* 了 and is negated by *méi* (you) 没 (有), e.g. *Nǐ de huà wǒ méi tīng qīngchu* ‘I didn’t hear clearly what you said’. If the result has not yet been achieved then of course the sentence is negated by *bù* 不: *Zhōngwén xiāoshuō wǒ hái bù néng kàn dǒng* ‘I can’t read Chinese novels (i.e. novels written in Chinese) yet’.

When the sentence refers to future time or is in the imperative form, the suffix *-le* 了 is not normally used: *Wǒmen yídìng yào xué hǎo Zhōngwén* ‘We certainly must/want to master Chinese’, *Niàn shú kèwén* ‘Read the text aloud until you’re familiar with

it'. Apart from common resultative endings such as *-hǎo 好* and *-wán 完* there are also directional endings which can function as resultative endings: *Yào kàn zhè bù diànyǐng de rén fēicháng duō, wǒ hái méi kàn shàng ne* 'Masses of people want to see this film, I (still) haven't managed to see it (yet)'. *Nǐ mǎi dào zhè běn shū méi you?* 'Did you manage to buy this book'?

### Table of resultative verb endings: common functional endings

Ending	Type of result	Used with (examples)	Limitations
<i>wán</i> 完	completion	<i>zuò</i> 作、 <i>zhà</i> 做、 <i>shuō</i> 说、 <i>xiě</i> 写、 <i>kàn</i> 看	
<i>hǎo</i> 好	satisfaction, completion	as above + <i>bàn</i> 办,	
<i>huì</i> 会	learning	<i>zhǔnbèi</i> 准备	
<i>zháo</i> 着	mastery attainment	<i>xué</i> 学	
<i>liǎo</i> 了	possibility	<i>zhǎo</i> 找、 <i>mǎi</i> 买、 <i>shuì</i> 睡	
<i>cuò</i> 错	error	<i>zuò</i> 作、 <i>ná</i> 拿、 <i>chī</i> 吃、 <i>mǎi</i> 买、 <i>mài</i> 卖	potential form only actual form: -le 了
<i>dào</i> 到	arrival, attainment	<i>shuō</i> 说、 <i>xiě</i> 写、 <i>zuò</i> 作、 <i>tīng</i> 听 <i>xiǎng</i> 想、 <i>bān</i> 搬、 <i>sòng</i> 送、 <i>pǎo</i> 跑、 <i>zǒu</i> 走、 <i>xué</i> 学、 <i>tán</i> 谈	
<i>qǐ</i> 起	i afford to ii respect for, self-respect	<i>mǎi</i> 买、 <i>chī</i> 吃、 <i>zhù</i> 住、 <i>duì</i> 对	potential only
<i>bǎo</i> 饱	satisfaction of appetite	<i>chī</i> 吃	potential only
<i>dǒng</i> 懂	understanding, comprehension	<i>tīng</i> 听、 <i>kàn</i> 看	
<i>jiàn</i> 见	perception (sensory)	<i>kàn</i> 看、 <i>tīng</i> 听	
<i>kāi</i> 开	separation, leaving room for	<i>kāi</i> 开、 <i>lí</i> 离、 <i>zǒu</i> 走	
<i>dòng</i> 动	movement	<i>ná</i> 拿、 <i>bān</i> 搬	
<i>gānjìng</i> 干净	cleanliness	<i>xǐ</i> 洗	potential only

NB The example verbs listed under ‘used with’ are far from an exhaustive list. Some endings such as *-bǎo* 饱, *-dǒng* 懂 and *-jiàn* 见 are limited by their essential meaning.

## Directional endings or complements

Both intransitive action verbs of motion and transitive action verbs indicating the handling of objects commonly take directional endings or complements: *Tāmen cóng wàibian zǒu jìnlai le* ‘They walked in from outside’, *Wǒ jǐntiān ná lai le hěn duō zhàopiàn* ‘I’ve brought a lot of photos today’.

Directional endings are either: (1) simple or (2) compound. In (2) the second element is either *lái* 来 or *qù* 去. Only a small group of simple directional endings form compound directional endings with *lái* 来 or *qù* 去 as the second element. These are *shàng* 上、*xià* 下、*jìn* 进、*chū* 出、*qǐ* 起、*huí* 回、*guò* 过 and *kāi* 开.

If the object is a place word it must come before *lái* 来 or *qù* 去. If not it may either come before *lái* 来 or *qù* 去 or it may come after the verb + simple or compound ending:

*Wǒ yào qù túshūguǎn ná wǒ de bàozhǐ lai* ‘I want to/must go to the library to fetch my newspaper’.

*Tā cóng zhuōzi shang ná qǐ tā de bào lai, zuò xiàilai kàn* ‘S/he picked up his/her newspaper from (on) the table and sat down and/to read it’. *Tā cóng zhuōzi shang ná qǐlai tā de bào*. ‘S/he picked up his/her newspaper from (on) the table.’ Other directional endings are *dǎo* 倒、*zǒu* 走 and *diào* 掉, but these and other similar directional endings cannot form compound endings with *lái* 来 or *qù* 去.

## Auxiliary verbs

What is an auxiliary or modal verb? An auxiliary verb is a member of a limited class of verbs which occur before action verbs or verbal expressions, adding a semantic value of modality ('can, will, must') to the expression as a whole. They cannot take verbal complements or verbal suffixes, and are not used as modifiers before nominals. They usually express the modality of action verbs.

- a Auxiliary verbs expressing capability, e.g. *néng* 能, *huì* 会, *kěyǐ* 可以.

- i Néng lái, jiù qǐng lái ‘Please come if you can’.
- ii Tā huì shuō Hán yǔ ‘S/he can speak Chinese’.
- iii Nà ge gōngchǎng kěyǐ zhìzào hěn duō dà jīqì ‘That factory can produce a lot of heavy machinery’.

*Huì* 会 usually expresses an acquired capability, although *néng* 能 and *kěyǐ* 可以 can have a similar meaning.

- i Nǐ huì huá xuě, wǒ bù huì ‘You know how to ski, but I don’t’.
- ii Tā néng kàn Zhōngwén xiǎoshuō ‘S/he is able to read Chinese novels’.
- b Expressing permission or prohibition, e.g. *néng* 能 and *kěyǐ* 可以.
  - i Zhèr kěyǐ (or *néng*) xī yān ‘Smoking is permitted here’. NB When *néng* 能 and *kěyǐ* 可以 express capability, the negated verb can only be *bù néng* 不能. When expressing prohibition, both *bù néng* 不能 and *bù kěyǐ* 不可以 can be used.
  - c Expressing possibility, e.g. *huì* 会 (usually in relation to some future occurrence).
    - i Bú huì xià yǔ, nǐ qù ba ‘Off you go, it can’t (possibly) rain/won’t rain’.
    - ii Tā huì lái bāngzhù nǐ ‘S/he may come to help you’.
    - iii Wǒ xiǎng zhènme jiāngjiù de lǚguǎn bù huì tài piányi (de) (Lit. I think such an elegant hotel can’t be too inexpensive/I shouldn’t think such an elegant hotel can be very cheap).
  - d *Yào* 要 has three meanings as an auxiliary verb:
    - 1 Expressing will, wish or ‘wanting to’.
    - 2 Expressing necessity ‘must’.
    - 3 Expressing the future likelihood of something happening.

Wǒ yào qù túshūguǎn ‘I want to go to the library’. This sentence could also mean ‘I’ll be going to the library’ or even ‘I must go to the library’. Such ambiguities are removed if the sentence is negated. The negative counterpart of (1) is *bù xiǎng* 不想 and of (2) *bú yòng* 不用. *Yào* 要 is also used with ‘*le* 了’ to indicate (3), e.g. *yào xià yǔ le* ‘It’s going to rain’. *Bú yào (bié)* 不要 (别) is used for negative imperatives, e.g. *Nǐ bù yào/bié lái!* ‘Don’t (you) come!’ and not ‘You don’t want to come’.
  - e Expressing desire, inclination or preference, e.g. *xiǎng* 想 or *xǐhuān* 喜欢.

i *Wǒ bù xiǎng qù kàn tā, wǒ xiǎng zài jiā lǐ kàn diànshì* 'I don't fancy going to see him, I fancy staying at home and watching TV' Note the overlap with *yào* 要 (1) in the negative.

ii *Háizi xǐhuān wánr* 'Children like to play'.

NB Both these verbs can function as transitive verbs (as can *yào* 要).

f Expressing willingness, e.g. *yuàn yì* 愿意 and *kěn* 肯.

i *Tā yuàn yì cānjiā pīngpāngqiú bì sài*. 'S/he's willing to wishes to take part in the table-tennis competition'.

ii *Tā bù shi bù néng lái, ér shi bù kěn lái* 'It isn't that s/he can't come, but that s/he's unwilling to'.

g Expressing 'ought to', 'should', e.g. *yīnggāi* 应该, *gāi* 该, *yīngdāng* 应当.

i *Nǐ bù yīnggāi nàme shuō* 'You shouldn't talk like that'.

ii *Wǒ xiànzài gāi zǒu le* 'I ought to go now'.

h Expressing necessity (other than *yào* 要), e.g. *děi* 得, *bì děi* 必得, *bìxū* 必须.

i *Wǒ děi zǒu le* 'I must go'.

ii *Wǒ jīntiān bì děi kàn wán nà běn shū* 'I must finish reading that book today'.

Their negative counterparts are *bú yòng* 不用, *bú bì* 不必 and *bù xū yào* 不需要.

i Other modal verbs, e.g. *gǎn* 敢 'to dare to', *pà* 怕 'to be afraid of' (*pà* 怕 can take a noun as its object), *hǎo yìsi* 好意思 'have the nerve to'.

i *Wǒ bù gǎn gēn tā shuō huà* 'I don't dare talk to him'.

ii *Zhè ge háizi hěn pà jiàn shēngrén* 'This child is very much afraid of meeting strangers'. NB Some grammarians maintain that *pà* 怕 is not a real auxiliary verb because it can take *hěn* 很, *gèng* 更, etc.

iii *Zuò le zhè zhǒng shì, kuī tā hái hǎo yìsi shuō ne!* 'Fancy his doing that sort of thing and then having the nerve to talk about it!'

Remember that auxiliary verbs:

*cannot* take aspect markers, e.g. *le* 了, *-guo* 过, *-zhe* 着;

*cannot* be modified by intensifiers such as *hěn* 很, *gèng* 更;

*cannot* be nominalized;

*cannot* occur before the subject;

*cannot* take a direct object.

Auxiliary verbs *must* co-occur with a verb (or an ‘understood’ verb).

### Table of common pairs of conjunctions

<i>bùdàn...érqìe</i> (or <i>yě/hái</i> ) ...	not only ... but also 不但 而且 (or 也/还)
<i>rúguō</i> ( <i>de huà</i> ) ... <i>jiù</i> ...	
如果 (的话) 就	
<i>yàoshi...jiù</i> ...	
要是 就	
<i>yào bù...jiù</i>	if not ... then 要不 就
<i>yào bù shì...jiù</i> ...	if not that ... then 要不是 就
<i>jiǎrú...yě</i> ...	
假如 也	
<i>jiǎshǐ...yě</i> ...	
假使 也	
<i>jíshǐ...yě(hái)</i> ...	
即使 也(还)	
<i>jiùshì...yě(hái)</i> ...	
就是 也(还)	
<i>jírán...jiù</i> ...	even if ... still 既然 就
<i>bùguǎn</i> ...	
<i>bùlùn</i> ...	
不论 ...	no matter whether ... still 也(还)
<i>wúlùn</i> ...	
<i>suīrán...dànshì/kěshì</i> ...	although ... but 虽然 但是/可是
<i>yīnwèi...suǒyǐ</i> ...	because ... therefore 因为 所以
<i>yóuyú... (jiù)</i>	because, owing to, due to 由于 就
<i>chúfēi...cái</i> ...	unless ... 除非 才
<i>zhǐyào...yě/jiù</i> ...	if only, as long as ... then 只要 也/就
<i>zhǐyǒu...cái</i>	only if ... then 只有 才

búshì... érshì...	it's not... but
不是 而是	
búshì... jiùshì...	if it's not... then it's
不是 就是	
fánshì... dōu...	all...
凡是 都	
chúle... yǐwài...	besides...
除了 以外	
lián... yě/dōu...	even...
连 也/都	
fēi + verb ... bùkě	must (do the action of
非 + verb 不可	the verb)

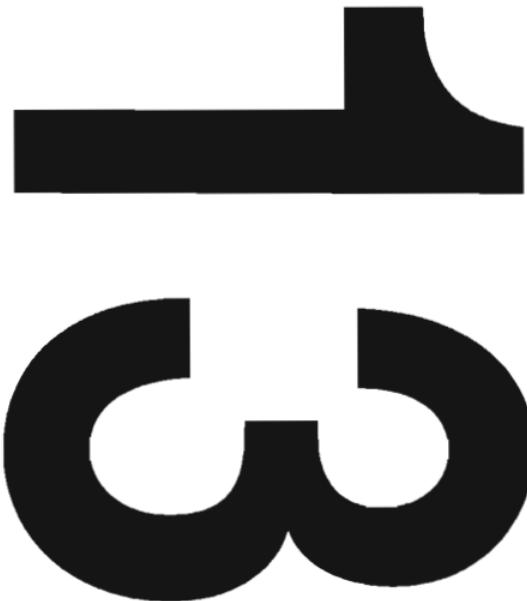
## Adverbs as conjunctions

i Same element occurring in first and second clauses:

yòu...	yòu...	both... and
又	又	
yě...	yě...	not only... but also
也	也	
yuè...	yuè...	the more... the more...
越	越	
(yù)...	(yù)...	(more formal than yuè)
愈	愈	
yìbiān + V <sub>1</sub> , yìbiān + V <sub>2</sub>	doing V <sub>1</sub> at the same time as V <sub>2</sub>	
一边 + V <sub>1</sub> , 一边 + V <sub>2</sub>		

ii Different element in second clause:

yī V <sub>1</sub> ,	jiù V <sub>2</sub>	as soon as V <sub>1</sub> happens, then V <sub>2</sub> begins.
— V <sub>1</sub> ,	就 V <sub>2</sub>	



# an introduction to Chinese characters

**In this chapter you will learn**

- what the earliest characters looked like
- about the evolution of characters over the years
- how characters are composed
- about radicals or significs
- how Chinese children learn to write characters
- some basic rules for writing characters
- to recognize some useful public notices and signs

What are Chinese characters? These are the symbols used to write Chinese which you will have seen written over Chinese restaurants or takeaways. What on earth have they to do with 'China Garden' or 'Jade Cottage' you may well have asked yourself. Well, here's your chance to find out!

Written Chinese is understood by more people in the world than any other language and its earliest written records date back over 3500 years. These were the markings scratched onto tortoise shells and animal bones which were used to predict future events. These 'oracle bones' were used in divination rites during the Shang dynasty (c. 1500 BC). Even at that time, the Chinese had already developed quite a sophisticated language with an extensive vocabulary. From these ancient writings we can see that many of the earliest characters were pictures or *pictographs*. Below are a few examples showing the evolution of such characters into their modern day form. You should move from left to right, the character now in use being the one on the extreme right!

○	◐	曰	日	ri	sun
◑	◑	月	月	yuè	moon
亼	亼	人	人	rén	person
木	木	木	木	mù	tree

Abstract concepts could also be represented by symbols:

上	下	上	下	shàng	up
下	上	下	上	xià	down

As time went on and people needed to express more complex ideas or concepts, pictographs were extended or combined to form *ideographs*. A sun and a moon together mean 'bright', a woman under a roof means 'peace', a woman with a child beside her means 'good', a sun rising behind a tree means 'east'. A tree doubled forms the character for 'forest' and if tripled it means a 'dense forest'.

日	sun	+ 月	moon	= 明	bright
女	woman	+ 宀	roof	= 安	peace
女		+ 子	child	= 好	good
日		+ 木	tree	= 東	east
木		+ 木		= 林	forest
林		+ 木		= 森	dense forest

(Extensions of meaning were sometimes inherent in the character itself and required no further addition, thus 日 ‘sun’ also means ‘day’, 月 ‘moon’ also means ‘month’.)

What a wonderful way of creating language this was, but of course only a limited number of ideas could be expressed in this way. Characters of this type which do not possess a phonetic element are relatively few and account for maybe 10% of all Chinese characters but many of them are still in common use today.

Most characters contain a phonetic element. Such characters are known as *phonograms* or *radical-phonetic* characters. They are made up of two components, one called the *radical* (the Chinese call these ‘significs’ or ‘common heads’) which indicates the classification of the character and the other the *phonetic*, which should give a clue to its pronunciation. Thus 青 qīng ‘blue’, ‘green’, ‘black’ is a character in its own right but it is the phonetic for such characters as 情 qīng ‘emotion’, ‘feelings’, 清 qīng ‘pure’, ‘clear’ and 请 qǐng ‘ask’, ‘request’ whereas the radical for these is ‘heart’ 忄, ‘water’ 氵 and ‘speech’ 言, respectively.

青	=	blue, green, black
忄 heart	+	青 = 情 emotion, feelings
氵 water	+	清 pure, clear
讠 speech	+	请 ask, request

Before you get too carried away with the neatness of this one, I should say that as a result of the gradual development of the language and the many changes that have occurred in pronunciation, many phonetics now only indicate the approximate sound: 工 gōng ‘work’ becomes 空 kōng ‘empty’ (穴 is a cave), silk + gōng becomes hóng 红 ‘red’ and insect + gōng also becomes hóng 虹 ‘rainbow’.

工 = gōng  
穴 cave + 工 = 空 kōng  
纟 silk + 工 = 红 hóng  
虫 insect + 工 = 虹 hóng

Others are of even less assistance, but learning to recognize phonetics and radicals is of great help in learning characters. Fortunately there are not too many radicals to be learnt. Older dictionaries list 214, modern ones have reduced this to 189. If the forms in combination and/or full characters are listed separately, this can increase the number to around 250. A good many of these are very little used so I have listed 80 or so of the more common ones below and overleaf in the hope that they will serve as a useful reference point in your recognition and learning of characters.

Now look at the first column of the radical table which shows what each radical looks like on its own (not all of them appear as characters in their own right in modern Chinese). The second column shows what they look like when they are combined with a phonetic if there is any change (otherwise this column is left blank). The third gives the romanization and the last column the meaning.

## Radicals/significs

In isolation	In combination	Romanization	Meaning
人	亼	rén	person
刀	刀刂	dāo	knife
口	囗	kǒu	mouth
土	土	tǔ	earth
女	女	nǚ	woman
宀		-	roof
山	山	shān	mountain
心	心	xīn	heart
手	手	shǒu	hand
日		rì	sun
木		mù	tree
水	水	shuǐ	water
火	火	huǒ	fire
广	...	-	disease/sickness

In isolation	In combination	Romanization	Meaning
目		mù	eye
禾		hé	grain
竹	(糸)	zhú	bamboo
纟		sī	silk
肉	月*	ròu	flesh
月	*	yuè	moon
艹	艸	cǎo	grass
言	讠	yán	speech
车	車	chē	cart/carriage
辵		—	walking
金	钅	jīn	metal (gold)
食	饣	shí	food
马	(馬)	mǎ	horse
鱼	(魚)	yú	fish
鸟	(鳥)	niǎo	bird (long-tailed)
一		—	above
冰		bīng	ice
厂		—	cliff
八	八	bā	eight
儿	兒	ér	child, son
又		yòu	also, again
力		li	strength
口		—	an enclosure
大		dà	big, noble
子		zǐ	child, son
寸		cùn	inch
尸		shì	corpse
巾		jīn	napkin, towel, handkerchief
广		—	covering, roof
彳		chì	to step (with left foot)
攴		—	to tap, rap
𠩺 on left		—	abundant, mound

\* Characters with the 'moon' and 'flesh' radical are no longer differentiated and appear under the same 'radical' viz. 月.

In isolation	In combination	Romanization	Meaning
邑 on right	阝	yì	region
门 (門)		mén	door
小	少	xiǎo	small
犬	犬	quǎn	dog
示	衤	shì	an omen; express
玉		yù	jade
戈		gē	spear, lance
贝 (貝)		bèi	shell/object of value
丶		diǎn	dot
一		héng	horizontal
丨		shù	vertical
见 (見)	厃	jiàn	to see
爪		zhuǎ	claw
宀		xué	cave, hole
立	立	lì	to stand
衣	衣	yī	clothing
石		shí	stone, mineral
田		tián	field
矢		shǐ	arrow
羊	羊	yáng	sheep
米		mǐ	rice
耳		ěr	ear
页		yè	page/leaf
虫		chóng	insect
舟		zhōu	boat
走		zǒu	walk/travel
酉		yǒu	(i) 10th of Twelve Earthly Branches (ii) spirit made from ripe millet
足	足	zú	foot/enough, satisfied
身	身	shēn	body
角		jiǎo	horn, angle
青		qīng	blue/green/ black
雨	雨	yǔ	rain

In isolation	In combination	Romanization	Meaning
隹		zhui	short-tailed bird
革		gé	hide/leather/ remove
骨/骨		gǔ	bone
黑		hēi	black/dark
羽 (羽)		yǔ	feather/wing

Many of these radicals were originally pictographs but some of them have been simplified so much that the original picture has almost been lost. Any radicals which appear in brackets in the first column are so-called 'full' characters, which are still in use in Hong Kong, Taiwan, Singapore and other overseas Chinese communities. The Chinese, needless to say, have their own way of describing individual characters (and radicals) as you will see in Chapter 16 where Mr King explains to the box office clerk how his name is written. If you really 'get into' characters you will go into this aspect in greater depth. For the moment, if we say that the water radical (水) is described as being *sān diǎn shuǐ* 'three drops water', that characters with the speech radical (讠) on the left-hand side are described as having *yán zì páng(r)* 'yan character side', (i.e. the character *yán* at the side) and that characters with grass *cǎo* (艹) on top are described as *cǎo zì tóu*, having 'a grass character head', you will have some idea of how this works.

Since the founding of the People's Republic of China in 1949, the Chinese have simplified a number of their characters (well over 2000) in an attempt to improve the literacy of the ordinary population. Until then, characters had remained essentially unchanged for about 2000 years. There is now a permanent committee responsible for the reform of Chinese characters. The majority of books, magazines and newspapers printed in the People's Republic are now written in simplified characters, as is this book. The main principles used in simplification are: (a) changing one part of a character, (b) striking out one or two parts of a character (c) substituting a 'simple' character for a difficult one and (d) reconstructing the whole character. The following examples are divided into these four categories. When you have done some more work on characters come back and see if you can work out what has happened in each case!

a Changing one part of a character

1 劉	劉	liú
2 禮	礼	lǐ
3 難	难	nán
4 環	环	huán
5 漢	汉	hàn

b Striking out one or two parts of a character

6 務	務	wù
7 處(虜)	處(虜)	chù
8 開	开	kāi
9 標	标	biāo
10 醫	醫	yī
11 習	習	xí
12 滅	滅	miè
13 號	號	hào

14 麗	麗	lì
15 婦	妇	fù
16 鄉	乡	xiāng
17 豐	丰	fēng
18 蟲	虫	chóng

c Substituting a 'simple' character for a 'difficult' one

19 郁	郁	yù
20 穀	穀	gǔ
21 丑	丑	chǒu

d Reconstructing the whole character

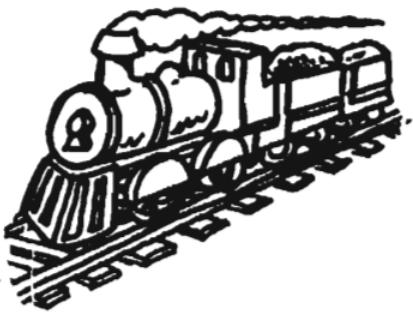
22 頭	头	tóu
23 靈	灵	líng
24 龜	龟	guī
25 體	体	tǐ

## How do the Chinese learn to write characters?

Official figures put illiteracy in China at 20–25%, but in reality it is likely to be much higher. Literacy in the towns is far higher than in the countryside for obvious reasons. With the introduction of the 'responsibility system' zérènzhì there is less incentive for rural children to study. How do Chinese children master such a complicated system of writing anyway? The answer is that they start at a very early age and spend a lot of time on it, both at home and in school, far more than we have to do in learning how to write English. At this point I shall introduce you to one or two learning aids which are widely used in China and may serve as an inspiration to you in your learning of characters. There are numerous little books entitled 看图识字, kàn tú shí zì 'Look at the picture and recognize the character' or 你认识吗? Nǐ rěnshí ma? 'Do you know (it)? (i.e. the character)' which contain drawings of everyday objects, parts of the body, fruit, vegetables, different types of weather, common actions like singing, washing – you name it and it's there somewhere. The drawings below are extracts from one such little book.

tóu  
头yǎn  
眼 jīng  
睛bí  
鼻 zi  
子zuǐ  
嘴 ba  
巴ěr  
耳 duo  
朵yá  
牙 chǐ  
齿shǒu  
手jiǎo  
脚guō  
锅wǎn  
碗hú  
壶pán  
盘kuài  
筷sǎn  
伞bēi  
杯lán  
篮

Another system is to have a small card with a drawing of the object on one side and the *pinyin* and characters for it on the other. You will see Chinese children from the age of three upwards shuffling these cards around. Most Chinese couples are only allowed one child, and they usually encourage him/her to start learning to read and write as early as possible.



huǒ chē  
火车



máo jīn  
毛巾

Literal meanings: ‘fire vehicle’ (train) and ‘hair cloth’ (towel)



fēi jī  
飞机



chàng gē  
唱歌

Literal meanings: ‘fly machine’ (aeroplane) and ‘sing song’ (to sing)

You can make your own ‘flash cards’ as you work your way through the book from Chapter 14 onwards and you may decide to go back and make them for Chapters 1–11 also as these contain a lot of basic vocabulary. The characters for all the vocabulary items in the texts appear in the Chinese (*pinyin*)-English Vocabulary at the back of the book. Your flash cards will normally consist of the character or characters on one side and the *pinyin* and the English on the other. Work through them looking at the character side first, seeing how many of the characters you recognize. Check your answers with the *pinyin*

and English on the back. Put the ones you get right on one side and then work your way through the ones you got wrong, again putting to one side the ones you get right this time. Carry on until you have mastered them all.

As your vocabulary (and pile of flash cards) increases, you may have to put the ones you are unfamiliar with the first time through on one side and tackle them again on another occasion. This exercise should be repeated constantly! Make your cards a handy size for taking around with you on buses, trains and the underground. Having worked through your flash cards ‘recognizing’ the characters, do it the other way around. Look at the *pinyin* and English side and try writing out the Chinese character for it. This is much more difficult. Check your answer with the character on the other side. Adopt the same system as before, discarding the ones you get right and ‘keeping’ the ones you get wrong.

By deciding to learn Chinese you have made a decision that you will never be able to complain that you have nothing to do!

Chinese children also trace the characters in copybooks which may or may not contain material which we would regard as propaganda. Below is the first page from a copybook printed in 1970 (Cultural Revolution time) which contains Mao's famous speech on 'Serve the People' *Wèi Rénmín Fúwù* delivered by him at a memorial meeting for Zhang Side on 8 September 1944. When you have worked through a few of the chapters in characters come back and see if you can spot the date.

为人民服 务 一九四四年九月八日  
我们 的 共 产 党 和 共  
产 党 所 领 导 的 八 路 军、新  
四 军，是 革 命 的 队 伍。我 们  
这 个 队 伍 完 全 是 为 着 解  
放 人 民 的，是 彻 底 地 为 人

This extract illustrates the point that each individual Chinese character occupies the same amount of space, i.e. a square of the same proportions, whether it be in the mind or actually indicated as here (so as to help children keep their characters all the same size). Characters which go together and form a 'word' such as *àiqíng* 爱情 'love' are not written any closer together than the two characters for 'I love' *wǒ ài* 我爱 although 'love' is one word and 'I love' is two words. (At least this avoids the headache which we have with *pinyin* of deciding what should be joined and what should be split.) Because each character occupies the same amount of space, I always encourage beginners to start practising characters on squared paper, which forces you to observe this practice.

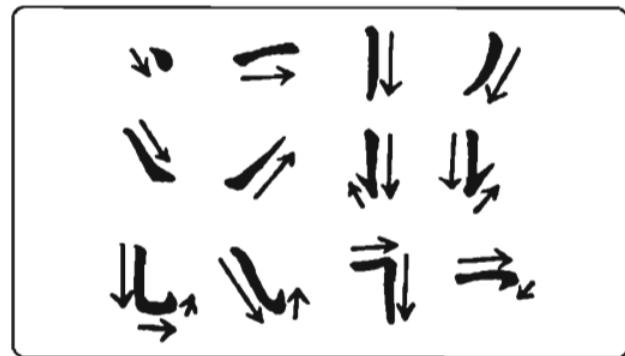
## Basic rules for writing characters

As you can imagine, there are some basic rules for writing characters which you need to master. This is important if you are to remember them, because in order to store them away so that it can reproduce them when you require it to, the brain needs to operate a kind of orderly filing system. To do this, it needs all the help it can get. Most characters are made up of two or more basic structural parts called 'character components' though of course some character components such as 日 *rì* 'sun' can stand by themselves as we have mentioned earlier. Although the total number of characters is quite large, (I won't put you off by telling you precisely *how* large), the number of character components is limited. These components are written with a number of basic strokes which are illustrated below:

### Stroke Name

丶	点	<i>diǎn</i>	dot
一	横	<i>héng</i>	horizontal
	竖	<i>shù</i>	vertical
ノ	撇	<i>piě</i>	left-falling
\	捺	<i>nà</i>	right-falling
/	提	<i>tí</i>	rising
フフフ	钩	<i>gōu</i>	hook
フフ	折	<i>zhé</i>	turning

These strokes are basically straight lines and were traditionally written in ink with a hair brush. The main directions are from top to bottom and from left to right. The arrows on the basic strokes below show how the characters are written by showing the direction each stroke takes:



The rules of stroke order in writing Chinese characters and character components are as follows:

Example	Stroke order	Rule
十	一	十 First horizontal, then vertical
人	ノ	人 First left-falling, then right-falling
三	一 二	三 From top to bottom
州	丨 ノ ホ 州	州 From left to right
月	ノ 月	月 First outside, then inside
四	丨 冂 四	四 Finish inside, then close
小	丨 小	小 Middle, then the two sides

There will be a table of the stroke-order of Chinese characters in Chapters 14–18 to help you practise writing characters correctly. When looking at a character decide whether it can be split into an upper and lower part, or perhaps a left and a right. Has it got some sort of a roof? Or a base? Is it symmetrical? Asking yourself these sorts of questions should give you a better chance of getting the stroke order right. Perhaps you may like to try to copy or trace the following public notices and signs. Numbers 14–18 are all in Beijing.

## Some useful public notices and signs

Chinese characters	Pinyin transliteration and literal meaning	English translation
1 银行	yínháng silver business	Bank
2 汽车站	qìchēzhàn steam carriage stop	Bus stop
3 男厕所	nán cèsuǒ male lavatory place	Men's lavatory
4 女厕所	nǚ cèsuǒ female lavatory place	Women's lavatory
5 派出所	pàichūsuǒ assign/send place	Police station (local)
6 邮局	yóujú post office	Post office
7 饭馆	fànguǎn rice establishment	Restaurant
8 入口	rùkǒu enter mouth/opening	Entrance
9 出口	chūkǒu come/go out mouth/opening	Exit
10 危险	wēixiǎn!	Danger
11 谢绝参观	xièjué cānguān refuse/decline visit	No admission
12 禁止吸烟	jìnzhǐ xī yān prohibit/ inhale forbid tobacco	No smoking
13 禁止照相	jìnzhǐ zhào xiàng prohibit reflect appearance	Photography forbidden
14 天安门	Tiān'ānmén heaven peace gate	Tiananmen/ The Gate of Heavenly Peace
15 长安街	Cháng'ān jiē long peace street	Changan Street

Chinese characters	Pinyin transliteration and literal meaning	English translation
16 北京饭店	<i>Běijīng Fàndiàn</i> north capital rice shop	Beijing Hotel
17 王府井	<i>Wángfǔjǐng</i> king residence well	Wangfujing (Street)
18 友谊商店	<i>Yǒuyì Shāngdiàn</i> friendship merchant shop	Friendship Store

Even today, the art of calligraphy (the writing of Chinese characters as an art form) is highly regarded in China and many educated Chinese will hang scrolls of characters, beautifully mounted, on their walls, just as we would hang a picture by, say, Turner or Picasso. Calligraphers all have their own individual styles and of course their admirers and critics, just as painters do. (As calligraphy is an art with its roots in the ancient past, these scrolls are always written in the traditional way from top to bottom and usually in their full form which is visually more pleasing.)

## Using a Chinese–English dictionary

Most of the dictionaries you will have access to, use *pinyin* to list the characters in alphabetical order according to their pronunciation. This is only of use if you know how a particular character is pronounced, otherwise you will have to look it up using the radical. (There are other systems but this is the most straightforward at this stage.) Having identified the radical, (not always so easy) and counted up the number of strokes it has, you look for it in the radical index at the front of the dictionary. Radicals are arranged according to the number of strokes they have – all the radicals with ‘one stroke’ 一画 *yī huà* come first, all the radicals with ‘two strokes’ 二画 *èr huà* next and so on. Each radical has a number assigned to it which may vary slightly from dictionary to dictionary so don’t automatically assume it’s the same. Having found which number radical it is (the number may be to the left or to the right of the radical itself), then look it up in the character index proper which immediately follows and which lists each radical in order. Under each radical are listed all the characters which have that radical in common.

These are listed in turn according to the number of strokes they have when the radical has been taken away.

Thus 情 *qíng* ‘emotions’ is listed under the heart radical † as having eight strokes 八画, but it will come after 恨 *hèn* ‘hate’ which has six. 吗 *ma* (question particle) will come under the mouth radical and be listed as having three strokes 三画 and will precede 哭 *kū* ‘weep, cry’ which has seven. I hope you have got the idea! Having found the character you are looking for in the index, you will either find a page number next to it or the pinyin and tonemark, either of which will enable you to look it up in the dictionary proper. It sounds hard work but it’s not as bad as it looks once you get the hang of it and it can be quite satisfying. It is reckoned that there are around 4000 characters in daily use, of which approximately 2000 are needed to read a newspaper. Overleaf is the radical index from a popular dictionary (汉英词典 A Chinese–English Dictionary). It may prove useful to you as a reference. The number to the left of the radical indicates the order in which it appears.

When tackling the character exercises, don’t expect to get them all right all at once. They are there for you to learn from as you go along and to go back to time and time again. Perhaps you will only recognize a few characters to start with (and be able to write even fewer), but you will gradually recognize more and more (and be able to write more). Be patient, stay with it – believe me, it can be a rewarding experience.

Whatever way you look at them, Chinese characters are fascinating, representing as they do the continuity of Chinese culture. Even if you decide not to spend too much time on them, appreciate their beauty and their long history. If you do decide you want to pursue this side of your Chinese studies there are many interesting books to read and enjoy. This chapter can only scratch the surface of what characters are all about but if it has kept your interest or better still, fired your imagination, it has served its purpose.

# 部首检字

## Radical index

### (一) 部首目录

部首左边的号码表示部首的次序

一画		35	又	70	丶(丶)	105	中	140	业	175	缶	209	金
1 丶		36	乚	71	弓	106	贝	141	目	176	来	210	鱼
2 一		37	厶	72	己(巳)	107	见	142	田	177	舌	九画	
3 丨		38	丨	73	女	108	父	143	由	178	竹(竹)	211	音
4 ノ		39	匕	74	子(子)	109	气	144	申	179	白	212	革
5 一		三画		75	马	110	牛(牛)	145	囗	180	自	213	是
6 丂		40	丶	76	厶	111	手	146	皿	181	血	214	骨
7 乙(乚)		41	丨	77	糸(系)	112	毛	147	夊	182	舟	215	香
二画		42	丶(丶)	78	巛	113	夕	148	矢	183	羽	216	鬼
8 丶		43	亡	79	小(丶)	114	片	149	禾	184	艮(艮)	217	食
9 一		44	广	四画		115	斤	150	白	七画		十画	
10 丨		45	乚	80	厶	116	爪(爪)	151	瓜	185	言	218	高
11 二		46	门	81	心	117	尺	152	鸟	186	辛	219	鬲
12 十		47	乚	82	斗	118	月	153	皮	187	辰	220	彑
13 厂		48	工	83	火	119	父	154	穴	188	麦	十一画	
14 夂		49	土(士)	84	文	120	欠	155	矛	189	走	221	麻
15 匚		50	丶	85	方	121	风	156	疋	190	赤	222	鹿
16 卜(卜)		51	丶	86	户	122	氏	六画		191	豆	十二画	
17 丶		52	大	87	丶	123	比	157	羊(羔羊)	192	束	223	黑
18 一		53	尢	88	王	124	丶	158	央	193	酉	十三画	
19 丂		54	寸	89	主	125	水	159	米	194	豕	224	鼓
20 亼		55	扌	90	天(天)	五画		160	齐	195	里	225	鼠
21 亼		56	弋	91	韦	126	立	161	衣	196	足	十四画	
22 厂		57	巾	92	夊	127	广	162	亦(亦)	197	采	226	鼻
23 入(入)		58	口	93	廿(廿)	128	穴	163	耳	198	豸	——	
24 八(丶)		59	口	94	木	129	丶	164	臣	199	谷	227	余类
25 乂		60	山	95	不	130	宀	165	洩	200	身		
26 匚		61	中	96	犬	131	玉	166	西(西)	201	角		
27 刀(刀)		62	彳	97	歹	132	示	167	東	八画			
28 力		63	丶	98	瓦	133	去	168	亚	202	青		
29 儿		64	夕	99	牙	134	宀	169	而	203	阜		
30 几(几)		65	夊	100	车	135	甘	170	页	204	雨		
31 マ		66	丸	101	戈	136	石	171	至	205	非		
32 丂		67	尸	102	止	137	龙	172	光	206	齿		
33 𠂔(在左)		68	亾	103	日	138	戊	173	虍	207	黾		
34 𠂔(在右)		69	丶	104	曰	139	凶	174	虫	208	隹		

# 4

## *mǎi dōngxi* 买东西 shopping

**In this chapter you will learn**

- how to ask for things in shops
- how to ask the price
- about Chinese money
- the stroke order of useful Chinese characters and their radicals

► Pattern one: ‘Specific item’ 多少 (*duōshao*) 钱? (*qián?*) How much is this/that item?

Question: 这本杂志多少钱?

*Zhè běn zázhì duōshao qián?*

Answer: 这本杂志七毛六。

*Zhè běn zázhì qī máo liù.*

Question: 那张地图多少钱?

*Nà zhāng dítú duōshao qián?*

Answer: 那张地图四毛九。

*Nà zhāng dítú sì máo jiǔ.*

Question: 这件衣服多少钱?

*Zhè jiàn yīfú duōshao qián?*

Answer: 这件衣服十五块二。

*Zhè jiàn yīfú shíwǔ kuài èr.*

Question: 那件衬衫多少钱?

*Nà jiàn chēnshān duōshao qián?*

Answer: 那件衬衫八块钱。

*Nà jiàn chēnshān bā kuài qián.*

Question: 这件毛衣多少钱?

*Zhè jiàn máoyī duōshao qián?*

Answer: 这件毛衣四十块零五分。

*Zhè jiàn máoyī sìshíyī kuài líng wǔ fēn.*

买 [大]  
东 [一] 西 [西]

买东西

多 [夕] 少 [小]

钱 [钅]

这 [辶]

本 [木]

杂 [木] 志 [心]

七 [一]

毛 [毛]

六 [八]

那 [阝]

张 [弓]

地 [土] 图 [口]

四 [口]

九 [ノ]

件 [亻]

衣 [衣] 服 [月]

十 [十] 五 [一]

mǎi (v) to buy

dōngxi (n) thing(s)

(v-o) to go shopping

**duōshao** (QW) how many?

**qián** (n) money

**zhè** (dem. adj./p.) this

**běn** (MW) for books, magazines

**zázhì** (n) magazine

**qī** seven

**máo** (MW; n) for money; wool

**liù** six

**nà** (dem. adj./p.) that

**zhāng** (MW) for flat, rectangular objects

**dítú** (n) map

**sì** four

**jiǔ** nine

**jiàn** (MW) piece, article, item

**yīfú** (n) clothes

**shíwǔ** fifteen

块 [ㄎㄞ]	<b>kuài</b> (MW)	<i>lump (for money, soap, etc.)</i>
二 [ㄢ]	<b>èr</b>	<i>two</i>
衬衫 [ㄔㄢ] 衫 [ㄔ]	<b>chènshān</b> (n)	<i>shirt, blouse</i>
八 [ㄤ]	<b>bā</b>	<i>eight</i>
毛衣	<b>máoī</b> (n)	<i>sweater, woolly</i>
一 [ㄧ]	<b>yī</b>	<i>one</i>
零 [ㄋㄥ]	<b>líng</b>	<i>zero</i>
分 [ㄈㄢ]	<b>fēn</b> (MW)	<i>for money</i>

## Table of stroke order of Chinese characters

件	亻(亻)	牛(乚 丂 牛)
衣	丶 宀 衤	衣
服	月(月 月 月)	服(𧔽 𧔽 𧔽)
十	一	十
五	一	丁 五 五
块	扌	夬(夬 夬 夊 夊)
二	一	二
衬	衤(衤 衤 衤 衤 衤)	寸(一 寸 寸)
衫	衤	乡(乚 丂 乡 乡)
八	ノ	八
零	零(一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一)	
	令(ノ 一 一 一 令)	
分	八	刀(刀 刀)

► Pattern two: Item 多少钱— MW? How much per unit is item?

Question: 报多少钱一份儿?

Bào duōshao qián yí fènr? (the 儿 ér on 份 fèn is optional but is often there).

Answer: 报一毛钱一份儿。

Bào yì máo qián yí fènr.

Question: 香烟多少钱一包?

Xiāngyān duōshao qián yì bāo?

Answer: 中国烟七、八毛钱一包。

Zhōngguó yān qī、bā máo qián yì bāo.

Answer: 外国烟三块五一包。

Wàiguó yān sān kuài wǔ yì bāo.

Question: 香皂多少钱一块?

Xiāngzào duōshao qián yí kuài?

Answer: 香皂八、九毛钱一块。  
*Xiāngzào bā, jiǔ máo qián yí kuài.*

Question: 苹果多少钱一斤?  
*Píngguǒ duōshao qián yì jīn?*

Answer: 苹果一块二一斤。  
*Píngguǒ yí kuài èr yì jīn.*

Question: 邮票多少钱一套?  
*Yóupiào duōshao qián yí tào?*

Answer: 邮票四块钱一套。  
*Yóupiào sì kuài qián yí tào.*

报 [ㄊ]	bào (n)	newspaper
份 [ㄊ]	fèn (MW)	a copy; portion
香 [禾] 烟 [火]	(xiāng)yān (n)	cigarette
中 [ㄉ] 包 [乚]	bāo (MW) (n)	packet (of), package
外 [夕] 国 [口]	Zhōngguó (n)	China
三 [一]	wàiguó (adj.)	foreign
香皂 [白]	sān	three
苹 [ㄊ]	xiāngzào (n)	toilet soap
果 [木]	píngguǒ (n)	apple
斤 [斤]	Jīn (MW)	catty ( $\frac{1}{2}$ kilogram)
邮 [阝] 票 [示]	yóupiào (n)	stamp
套 [大]	tào (MW)	set

## Table of stroke order of Chinese characters

报	扌(一 扌 扌)	扌(一 扌 扌) 枚
香	禾(一 二 千 禾 禾)	日(一 口 口 日)
烟	火(ノ リ ヲ 火)	口 夂 丨 𠂇 𠂇 因
包	匚(ノ 匚)	巳(ノ ゚ 巳)
中	丨	口(一 口 口)
国	口	玉 丨 𠂇 𠂇 国 国 国
外	夕(ノ ク 夕)	卜(丨 卜)
皂	白(ノ 丶 白 白 白)	𠂇

苹	艹 (一 + 艹) 平 (一 一 フ 立 平)							
果	曰	木		口	口	日	且	卑
斤	一	厂	戶	斤				
邮	由	(	口	日	由	由	)	彑
票	丶西	示	(一	=	亍	示	示	
套	大	县	(-	厂	口	且	县	县

Pattern three: 我要这 (Wǒ yào zhè) MW 'I would like this one'.

### Dialogue

- 售货员: 您要买什么?
- Shòuhuòyuán: Nín yào mǎi shénme?
- 史爱理: 我要买丝绸, 多少钱一米?
- Shǐ Àilǐ: Wǒ yào mǎi sīchóu, duōshao qián yì mǐ?
- 售货员: 十三块五。您要几米?
- Shòuhuòyuán: Shísān kuài wǔ. Nín yào jǐ mǐ?
- 史爱理: 两米半。
- Shǐ Àilǐ: Liǎng mǐ bàn.
- 售货员: 一共三十三块七毛五。这是四十块, 找您六块二毛五。
- Shòuhuòyuán: Yígòng sānshísān kuài qī máo wǔ. Zhè shì sìshí kuài, zhǎo nín liù kuài èr máo wǔ.
- 史爱理: 好, 谢谢。
- Shǐ Àilǐ: Hǎo, xièxie.
- 售货员: 没什么, 再见。
- Shòuhuòyuán: Méi shénme, zàijiàn.
- 史爱理: 再见。
- Shǐ Àilǐ: Zàijiàn.

售 [口] 货 [贝]	员 [口]	shòuhuòyuán (n)	shop assistant
您 [心]		nín (p.s)	you (polite)
要 [女]		yào (v)	want
什 [彳] 么 [ノ]		shénme (QW)	what?
我 [戈]		wǒ (p.s)	I, me
丝 [一] 绸 [糸]		sīchóu (n)	silk

米 [米]	mǐ (MW)	metre
几 [几]	jǐ (QW/adj.)	how many?; several
两 [一]	liǎng	two (of a kind)
半 [ˊ]	bàn	half
一共 [一]	yígòng (adv.)	altogether
是 [是]	shì (v)	to be
找 [扌]	zhǎo (v)	to give back (as of change)
好 [女]	hǎo (adj.)	good
谢谢 [讠]	xièxie (v)	to thank; thank you
没 [冂]	méi (neg.)	not
再 [一] 见 [见]	zàijiàn	goodbye

### Table of stroke order of Chinese characters

售	𠙴	(𠙴 亻 亻 亻 亻 亻 𠙴)	𠙴
货	亠	亠 亠 贝 (贝 亠 亠 贝)	贝
员	口	贝	
您	亼	尔 (亼 亼 尔 亼 尔)	心
要	丶	女 (女 女 女)	
什	亜	十	
么	ノ	𠂇 (𠂇 𠂇)	
我	一	一 手 手 我 我 我	
丝	纟	纟 纣 纍 纏 纏	
绸	纟	(纟 纓 纓)	
	周	(周 月 月 月 月 月 月 月)	
米	丶	丶 丶 卄 半 米 米	
几	丶	丶 几	

两	一	厂	丌	丙	丙	两	两
半	、	丶	丶	丶	丶	兰	半
共	一	十	廿	丂	丂	共	共
是	日	疋(一 下 丌 疋)					
找	扌	戈(一 亼 戈 戈)					
好	女	子(ノ 了 子)					
谢	讠	(`	讠	身	(`	身	身
没	氵	(`	氵	氵	殳	(`	殳
再	一	厂	丌	丌	丌	再	再
见	丨	口	贝	贝	见		

## Grammar

### Money

The Chinese currency is known as ‘the people’s currency’, *rénmínbì* (RMB) 人民币. (‘Foreign currency’ is *wàibì* 外币). The largest single unit is the *yuán* 元 (represented by ¥ in many transactions). There are ten *jiǎo* 角 in one *yuán* and ten *fēn* 分 in one *jiǎo*. These are the characters used in the written language and printed on banknotes, tickets, etc. In spoken Chinese, *kuài* 块 ‘piece/lump’ is used for *yuán* and *máo* 毛 for *jiǎo* but *fēn* remains unchanged. When two or more different units of currency are used together, the last one is usually omitted so it is *sān kuài wǔ* and not *sān kuài wǔ máo*, *sì máo liù* and not *sì máo liù fēn*. If a sum of money involves *kuài* and *fēn* but no *máo*, the absence of the latter is marked by a *líng*, ‘zero’:

27.05 元 èrshíqī kuài líng wǔ fēn.

Note that under these circumstances *fēn* cannot be omitted.

The word for ‘money’ *qián* is sometimes put after amounts expressed entirely in *kuài*, *máo* or *fēn*:

jiǔ kuài qián 9.00 元  
 qī máo qián 0.7 元  
 bā fēn qián 0.08 元

Liǎng is often used with kuài and máo (*liǎng kuài*, *liǎng máo*) but only with fēn when there are no kuài or máo:

*liǎng kuài liǎng máo èr* 2.22 元

but

*liǎng fēn qián* 0.02 元

When the last number in a series is ‘two’ then èr is always used:

*liǎng kuài èr* 2.2 元

RMB (Rénmínbì)	Spoken	Written
0.01 <i>yuán</i>	yì fēn (qián)	yì fēn
0.1 <i>yuán</i>	yì máo (qián)	yì jiǎo
1.00 <i>yuán</i>	yí kuài (qián)	yí yuán
3.5 <i>yuán</i>	sān kuài bàn }	sān yuán wǔ jiǎo
7.68 <i>yuán</i>	sān kuài wǔ }	
12.09 <i>yuán</i>	qī kuài liù máo bā	qī yuán liù jiǎo bā fēn
20.00 <i>yuán</i>	shí èr kuài líng jiǔ fēn	shí èr yuán líng jiǔ fēn
99.99 <i>yuán</i>	èrshí kuài (qián)	èrshí yuán
	jiǔshíjiǔ kuài jiǔ máo jiǔ	jiǔshíjiǔ yuán jiǔ jiǎo jiǔ fēn

### Exercise 14.1

Supply the missing MW (in pinyin and in characters):

Wǒ mǎi zhè \_\_\_\_ zázhì → Wǒ mǎi zhè **běn** 本 zázhì.

- Tā mǎi le sān \_\_\_\_ ditú.
- Wǒ zuótiān mǎi le yí \_\_\_\_ xīn (new) yīfu.
- Liǎng \_\_\_\_ máoyī shì jiù (old) de.
- Tā měi tiān xī (smoke) sì \_\_\_\_ yān.
- Wǒmen yí ge xīngqī yòng yí \_\_\_\_ féizào.
- Zuò zhè \_\_\_\_ chēnshān yào mǎi liǎng \_\_\_\_ bù (cloth).

### Exercise 14.2

Write out in characters the sum of money in each sentence.

Nà jiàn máoyī wǔshí kuài qián → 五十块钱。

- Zhè jiàn yīfu èrshí kuài.
- Yì mǐ bù sì kuài bā.
- Sān jīn píngguǒ sān kuài jiǔ.
- Yóupiào liù kuài qī yí tào.
- Bào yì máo èr yí fēn.
- Zhōngguó yān bā máo sì yì bāo.

**Exercise 14.3**

Learn the following radicals, their romanization and their meaning:

1 大	<i>dà</i>	'big'.
2 一	<i>héng</i>	'horizontal (line)'.
3 小	<i>xiǎo</i>	'small'.
4 钅(金)	<i>jīn</i>	'metal'.
5 走	-	'walking radical' (always written last no matter what its position).
6 木	<i>mù</i>	'tree'.
7 心	<i>xīn</i>	'heart'.
8 口	<i>kǒu</i>	'mouth'.
9 囗	-	'enclosure'.
10 月	<i>yuè</i> or <i>ròu</i>	'moon' or 'flesh' (see Chapter 13).
11 土	<i>tǔ</i>	'earth'.
12 衤(衣)	<i>yī</i>	'clothing'.
13 扌(手)	<i>shǒu</i>	'hand'.
14 禾	<i>hé</i>	'grain'.
15 日	<i>rì</i>	'sun'.

**Exercise 14.4**

Write out each of the following characters in *pinyin* and say what the radical is: e.g. 国 → *guó* 'enclosure'. (Use Chapter 13 if you have any difficulties.)

1 苹 2 村 3 没 4 谢 5 块  
6 本 7 是 8 烟 9 志 10 买

**Exercise 14.5**

For each of the following characters take out the radical and then count up the number of strokes remaining. Indicate what the radical is: e.g. 钱 → 5 (钅).

1 东 2 件 3 图 4 好 5 我  
6 报 7 邮 8 套 9 您 10 找

### The three Ms

Shopping in China requires a different set of skills from that in the West. Always buy whenever you see something you like – you may never see it again! Delay and you may well be greeted by one of the dreaded three Ms: *Méi yǒu le* 'It is no more!', *Mài wán le* 'sold out' and in answer to your query as to when the goods might again be on sale you may be told *Míngtiān* 'tomorrow' but tomorrows have a nasty habit of never coming so be warned! Avoid disappointment, buy now.

**Exercise 14.6**

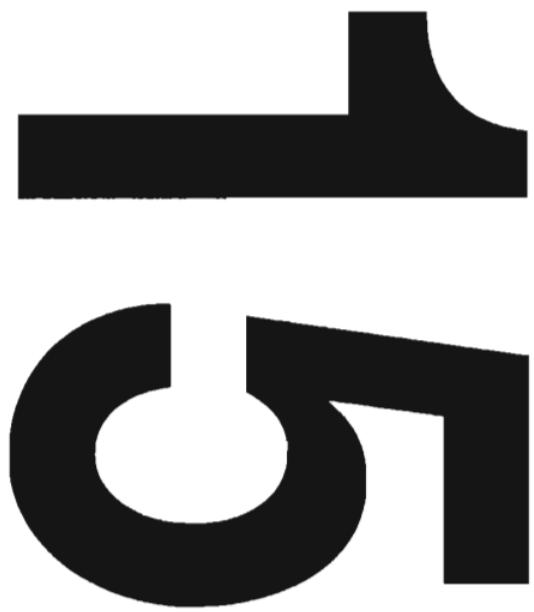
Write the following sentences in Chinese characters and then translate them into English:

- 1 *Shòuhuòyuán shì Zhōngguórén (人).*
- 2 *Dítú sān máo èr yì zhāng.*
- 3 *Nà běn zázhì bā máo jiǔ.*
- 4 *Nín méi mǎi dōngxi.*
- 5 *Píngguǒ yí kuài sì yì jīn.*

**Exercise 14.7**

Translate into Chinese characters:

- 1 I want to buy three magazines and a newspaper.
- 2 Yesterday (昨天) I bought (*le 了*) two shirts.
- 3 He (他) wants to go shopping.
- 4 How many metres of silk do you want?
- 5 Thank you. Goodbye.



# buying tickets (i)

去影剧院买票

qù yǐngjùyuàn mǎi piào

In this chapter you will learn

- how to buy tickets for entertainments
- how to give the date
- more about the stroke order of characters
- about China's main dynasties

史爱理

Shǐ Àilí

售票员

Shòupiàoyuán

十二月十三号的音乐会还有票吗?

Shí 'èryuè shísān hào de yīnyuèhuì hái yǒu piào ma?

还有。你要几张?

Hái yǒu. Nǐ yào jǐ zhāng?

要四张。楼下的还有吗?

Yào sì zhāng. Lóuxià de hái yǒu ma?

有。你看, 第九排怎么样?

Yǒu. Nǐ kàn, dì jiǔ pái zěnmeyàng?

很好。多少钱一张?

Hěn hǎo. Duōshao qián yì zhāng?

一块三。四张五块二。

Yí kuài sān. Sì zhāng wǔ kuài èr.

给你六块。

Gěi nǐ liù kuài.

找你八毛, 这是你的票。

Zhǎo nǐ bā máo, zhè shì nǐ de piào.

谢谢你。请问, 《日出》这部电影怎么样, 有意思吗?

Xièxie nǐ. Qǐng wèn, 《Rìchū》 zhè bù diànyǐng zěnmeyàng, yǒu yìsi ma?

挺好的。大家都说很有意思。你下个星期来看吧。

Tǐng hǎo de. Dàjiā dōu shuō hěn yǒu yìsi. Nǐ xià ge xīngqī lái kàn ba.

影 [影] 剧 [剧] 院 [院]  
票 [票]

音 [音] 乐 [乐]

楼 [楼]

怎 [怎] 么样 [么样]

去 [土]	qù (v)	to go
yǐngjùyuàn (n)	cinema and theatre	
piào (n)	ticket	
zhāng (MW)		
售票员 shòupiàoyuán (n)	box office clerk	
月 yuè (n)	month	
号 hào (n)	number; date	
的 de	see 3.5	
yīnyuèhuì (n)	concert	
还 hái (adv.)	still	
有 yǒu (v)	to have; there is/are	
吗 ma	question particle	
nǐ (ps)	you	
lóuxià (n)	downstairs	
kàn (v)	to look, see	
dì	ordinal prefix	
pái (n)	row, line	
zěnmeyàng	what about it?	

[很] [给] [请] [问]

日 [日] 出 [I]

部 [阝] 影 [影]  
电 [田] 心 [心]  
意 [心] 意思 [意思]  
有 [冂] 挺 [扌]  
都 [广] 家 [家]  
说 [讠] 都 [都]  
下 [阝] 说 [说]  
个 [丨] 下 [下]  
期 [月] 个 [个]  
来 [丨] 期 [期]  
吧 [口] 来 [来]

<b>hěn</b> (adv.)	<i>very</i>
<b>gěi</b> (v)	<i>to give; for</i>
<b>qǐng</b> (v)	<i>to invite</i>
<b>wèn</b> (v)	<i>to ask</i>

<b>Rǐchū</b> (N)	<i>Sunrise (film version of a play by Cao Yu)</i>
<b>bù</b> (MW)	<i>for films</i>
<b>jiānyǐng</b> (n)	<i>film</i>
<b>yìsī</b> (n)	<i>meaning</i>
<b>u yìsī</b> (v-o)	<i>to be interesting</i>
<b>tǐng</b> (adj.)	<i>very, rather</i>
<b>dàjiā</b> (p)	<i>everybody</i>
<b>dōu</b> (adv.)	<i>all, both</i>
<b>shuō</b> (v)	<i>to speak, say</i>
<b>xià</b> (adj.)	<i>next</i>
<b>gè</b> (MW)	<i>see 3.1</i>
<b>xīngqī</b> (n)	<i>week</i>
<b>lái</b> (v)	<i>to come</i>
<b>ba</b>	<i>particle indicating suggestion</i>

## Table of stroke order of Chinese characters

去	土	厃
影	日	京 (一 一 亡 丶 亯 亨 京 京) 乡
剧	尸	尸 (乚 丂 尸) 古 (- + 亯 古 古)
		刂 (丨 丨)
院	阝	𠂔 (、 𠂔 𠂔) 元 (- = 𠮾 元)
号	口	亏 (一 亏)
的	白	白 (、 亼 亼 亼 亼) 勹 (ノ 匚 勹)
音	立	立 (、 一 亊 亊 立) 曰
乐	乚	𠂔 𠂔 乐 乐
会	人	人 (ノ 人) 云 (- = 云 云)

还	不(一 丿 不 不) 迂(乚 丨 迂)					*this component is always written last
有	宀(一 宀) 月					
吗	口	马(フ 马 马)				
楼	木	米	女			
下	一 丶 丶 下					
看	扌(一 二 三 扌) 目(丨 ロ ロ ロ 目)					
第	ノヽ(フ ハ ハ ハ ハ ハ)					
	弟(一 二 弓 弟 弟)					
排	扌	非(丨 丨 丨 丨 丨 丨)				
怎	亾	(フ ハ ハ ハ ハ) 心				
样	木	羊(ヽ ノ ノ 兰 兰 羊)				
很	彳	(彳 夂 行) 艮(フ ヲ ヲ 艮 艮)				
给	纟	合(フ ハ ハ ハ 合 合)				
请	讠	青(一 二 中 声 声 青 青)				
问	门(乚 丨 门) 口					
出	乚	口	中	出	出	
部	立	口	阝			
电	田(丨 ロ ロ 曰 电) 丨					
意	宀	曰	心			
思	田	心				
挺	扌	壬(一 二 千 壴) 又(フ フ)				

都	者	(一 + 土 扌 者 者 者)	者
说	兑	(一 + 又 兑 兑 兑)	兑
个	人		
星	日	生 (一 一 牛 生)	生
期	其	(一 十 廿 廿 廿 其 其)	月
来		一 一 丶 立 幺 来 来	来
吧	口	巴 (一 𠂇 𠂇 巴)	巴

## Grammar

### 1 Dates

We have already covered months of the year and days of the week in 10.5 and 10.3 but we still do not know how to tackle dates. The order for a date is the reverse of that used in English: year, month, day, hour.

The year is read as single numbers followed by the word *níán* (年) ‘year’: 1949 *yījiǔsìjiǔ níán* (*yī jiǔ sì jiǔ níán*), 1976 *yījiǔqīliù níán*, 1988 *yījiǔbābā níán*.

When asking what the date is the Chinese use *jǐ yuè jǐ hào?* (Lit. how many months how many numbers):

Question: *Jīntiān (shì) jǐ yuè jǐ hào?*

Answer: *Jīntiān wǔyuè èrshí’èr hào.* (22 May)

Question: *Xīngqītiān jǐ hào?*

Answer: *Xīngqītiān sānshíyī hào.* (31st)

Equipped with this information we can now tackle such phrases as 9 am on Monday, 11 July 1936: *Yījiǔsānliùnián qīyuè shíyī hào* (*ri*\* *xīngqīyī shàngwǔ jiǔ diǎn*).

Note that in Chinese you move from the general to the particular. As we are on date, the chart below should be of interest!

\* *Rì* (日) is used more frequently in formal, written Chinese whereas *hào* is commonly used in the spoken language.

# China's main dynasties

夏	Xià	c. 21st–16th century BC
商	Shāng	c. 16th–11th century BC
周	Zhōu	c. 11–256 BC
秦	Qín	211–206 BC
汉	Hàn	206 BC–AD 220
三国	Sānguó	220–280
	Three Kingdoms	
晋	Jin	265–420
南北朝	Nán-Běi Cháo	420–589
	North/South Dynasties (see 17.1)	
隋	Suí	581–618
唐	Táng	618–907
五代	Wǔdài	907–960
	Five Dynasties	
宋	Sòng	960–1279
辽	Liáo	970–1125
金	Jin	1115–1234
元	Yuán	1279–1368
明	Míng	1368–1644
清	Qīng	1644–1911
中华民国	Zhōnghuá Mínguó Republic of China	1912–1949
中华人民共和国	Zhōnghuá Rénmín Gònghéguó People's Republic of China	1949–

NB 公元前 gōngyuán qián BC  
 公元 gōngyuán AD  
 世纪 shìjì century  
 二十一世纪 èrshíyī shìjì 21st century

## 2 Titles

As capital letters cannot exist in the Chinese script, except artificially in romanization, the titles of books, films, plays, etc. are distinguished by placing them between 《 》 marks: 《Richū》‘Sunrise’.

### Exercise 15.1

Learn the following radicals, their romanization and their meaning.

- 1 刂 (刀) *dāo* 'knife'.  
 2 示 (宀) *shì* 'omen'.  
 3 亼  
人 } *rén* 'person' (we used to call it 'the man' radical!).  
 4 目 *mù* 'eye'.  
 5 竹 (竹) *zhú* 'bamboo'.  
 6 纟 *sī* 'silk'.  
 7 言 (言) *yán* 'speech'.  
 8 丨 *shù* 'vertical (line)'.  
 9 田 *tián* 'field'.

**Exercise 15.2**

Write out each of the following characters in *pinyin* and put the common component contained in the characters of each group in the brackets:

e.g. 谢 *xiè*、说 *shuō*、请 *qǐng* (讠).

- 1 意 \_\_\_\_、志 \_\_\_\_、怎 \_\_\_\_ ( ).  
 2 报 \_\_\_\_、挺 \_\_\_\_、排 \_\_\_\_ ( ).  
 3 号 \_\_\_\_、员 \_\_\_\_、问 \_\_\_\_ ( ).  
 4 都 \_\_\_\_、部 \_\_\_\_、邮 \_\_\_\_ ( ).  
 5 来 \_\_\_\_、七 \_\_\_\_、下 \_\_\_\_ ( ).

**Exercise 15.3**

Write out the characters you have met containing each of the following components. (In each case, find the number of characters indicated by the dashes.)

e.g. 口: 吧、吗。

- 1 土: \_\_\_\_、\_\_\_\_、\_\_\_\_。  
 2 女: \_\_\_\_、\_\_\_\_。  
 3 丨: \_\_\_\_、\_\_\_\_。  
 4 木: \_\_\_\_、\_\_\_\_、\_\_\_\_、\_\_\_\_、\_\_\_\_。  
 5 月: \_\_\_\_、\_\_\_\_、\_\_\_\_。  
 6 口: \_\_\_\_、\_\_\_\_、\_\_\_\_。  
 7 彳: \_\_\_\_。  
 8 亼: \_\_\_\_、\_\_\_\_。  
 9 亻: \_\_\_\_、\_\_\_\_、\_\_\_\_、\_\_\_\_。  
 10 辶: \_\_\_\_、\_\_\_\_。

**Exercise 15.4**

Write the following *pinyin* sentences in Chinese characters and then translate them into English.

- 1 *Kàn diànyǐng zěnmeyàng?*  
 2 *Lóuxià yǒu rén ma?*

- 3 《Richū》zhè bù diànyǐng yǒu méi you yìsi?
- 4 Shàng (上 last) ge xīngqī nǐ méi lái.
- 5 Yīnyuèhui jǐ yuè jǐ hào?

### Exercise 15.5

Translate into Chinese characters:

- 1 Today (今天) is 3 November.
- 2 Excuse me, what is the date today?
- 3 There is nobody upstairs (樓上 lóushàng).
- 4 Everybody says that shopping is very interesting.
- 5 Have you still got any money?/How much do you want?
- 6 I was in (在 zài) China in 1968.



# buying tickets (ii)

打电话买票  
*dǎ diànhuà mǎi piào*

In this chapter you will learn

- about telephone numbers
- how to describe the characters in your Chinese name
- how to describe imminent action
- more about radicals

王永寿

Wáng Yǒngshòu

售票员

Shòupiàoyuán

王

售票员

王

售票员

王

售票员

王

售票员

王

售票员

王

售票员

(拨五五么，零九七八，过了一会儿才有人接)

(Bō wǔ wǔ yāo, líng jiǔ qī bā, guò le yíhuǐr cái yǒu rén jiē)

喂，首都剧场吗？

Wèi, Shǒudū Jūchǎng ma?

是，您是哪里？

Shì, nín shì nǎlǐ?

我是北大的英国专家。请问，《上帝的宠儿》  
还在演吗？

Wǒ shì Běidà de Yīngguó zhuānjiā. Qǐng wèn,  
《Shàngdì de Chǒng'ér》hái zài yǎn ma?

还在演，可是快要不演了，大后天就不演了。

Hái zài yǎn, kěshì kuài yào bù yǎn le, dàhòutiān  
jiù bù yǎn le.

明天、后天都有票吗？

Míngtiān, hòutiān dōu yǒu piào ma?

明天客满了，后天的票不多了。

Míngtiān kèmǎn le, hòutiān de piào bù duō le.

后天星期五，能不能给我留两张好票？我今  
天下午去取。

Hòutiān xīngqīwǔ, néng bu néng gěi wǒ liú liǎng  
zhāng hǎo piào? Wǒ jīntiān xiàwǔ qù qù.

行，可是今天下午一定来取，因为票快卖完  
了，不好留。

Xíng, kěshì jīntiān xiàwǔ yídìng lái qù, yīnwei  
piào kuài mài wán le, bù hǎo liú.

您放心吧，我一定会去。

Nín fàng xīn ba, wǒ yídìng huì qù.

您贵姓？

Nín guixìng?

我姓王，名字叫王永寿。

Wǒ xìng Wáng, míngzì jiào Wáng Yǒngshòu.

王是三横一竖的王，

'Wáng' shì sān héng yí shù de 'Wáng',  
'永'是'永远'的'永'，'寿'是'长寿'的'寿'。

'yǒng' shì 'yǒngyuǎn' de 'yǒng', 'shòu' shì  
'chángshòu' de 'shòu'.

好了，我记下来了。

Hǎo le, wǒ jì xiàilai le.

太谢谢您了，下午见。

Tài xièxie nín le, xiàwǔ jiàn.

再见。

Zàijiàn.

打电话	dǎ diànhuà (v-o)	to telephone
拨	bō (v)	to dial
么	yāo (num)	one (used orally only)
过	guò	
了	le	modal particle
一会儿	yíhuír	
才	cái	
人	rén (n)	person
接	Jiē	take hold of, receive; to meet
喂	wèi	hello (on telephone)
首都剧场	Shǒudū Jūchǎng (N)	Capital Theatre
北大	Běidà	
英国	Yīngguó	
专家	zhuānjīā (n)	expert
在	zài	in the middle of doing
演	yǎn (v)	to perform; to act
可是	kěshì	
快要.....了	kuài yào . . . le	(see 16.4)
大后天	dàhòutiān (TW)	the day after the day after tomorrow
就	jiù	
后天	hòutiān (TW)	the day after tomorrow
客满	kèmǎn (adj.)	sold out, full house
星期五	xīngqīwǔ	
能	néng (aux. v.)	to be able to, can
留	lú (v)	to reserve for someone; remain; let grow
今天	jīntiān (TW)	today
下午	xiàwǔ (TW)	afternoon
取	qǔ (v)	to get, fetch
行	xíng	
一定	yídèng	
因为	yīnwei or yīnwèi	
卖	mài (v)	to sell
-完	-wán	
放心	fàng xīn (v-o)	to set one's mind at rest
会	huì	
贵姓	guìxìng? (Lit. expensive surname)	
名字	míngzì (n)	may I ask your name? (given) name

叫	<b>jìao</b>	<i>to be called; to call</i>
横	<b>héng</b> (adj.)	<i>horizontal</i>
竖	<b>shù</b> (adj.)	<i>vertical</i>
永远	<b>yǒngyuǎn</b> (adj.)	<i>forever</i>
长寿	<b>chángshòu</b> (n)	<i>long life, longevity</i>
记下来	<b>jì xiàilai</b> (v + CDE)	<i>to note down; to record</i>
太	<b>tài</b>	<i>extremely; too</i>
见	<b>jiàn</b>	
《上帝的宠儿》	<b>《Shàngdì de Chǒng'ér》 (N)</b>	<i>'Amadeus' (Lit. God's favourite), play by Peter Shaffer</i>

## **Table of stroke order of the more difficult characters**

拨	扌	发(一 十 丂 丂 丂)
首	乚 (一 丂)	百(一 一 丂 丂 丂 丂 丂)
场	土	场(弓 丂 丂)
北	丨	十 扌 北 北
专	一	二 专 专
家	宀	豕(一 一 丂 丂 丂 丂 丂)
演	氵	宀 勇(一 一 丂 丂 丂 丂 丂 勇 勇)
就	亻	京 尤(一 十 尤 尤)
客	宀	各(夕 夂 各 各)
满	氵	朮(一 一 丂 丂 丂 丂 丂 丂 丂)
能	厃	目 龄(一 𠂔 𠂔 龄)
留	囗	口 又 囗 口 田
取	耳	一 丂 丂 丂 丂 耳 又(一 又)

为	丶 ノ 为 为
放	方 (一 二 丂 方) 女 (ノ フ ケ 女)
贵	聿 (ノ ハ ハ 中 聿) 贝
横	木 黄 (一 十 丶 丶 丶 芦 昔 昔 莜 苗 黄 黄)
竖	丨 又 (丨 𠂇 𠂇 𠂇) 立
永	、 丂 永 永
远	元 辵 Remember this component is always written last no matter what its position is in the character
寿	夀 (一 二 三 夀) 扌
记	讠 已 (ノ ノ 已)
太	大 太
上	丨 卜 上
帝	宀 (一 二 丶 丶 宀 宀) 市 (丨 ロ 市)
宠	宀 龙 (一 丂 九 龙 龙)

Grammar

## 1 Telephone numbers

Telephone numbers are often made up of seven or eight digits, each of which is usually said separately:

551 0978 wǔ wǔ yāo líng jiǔ qī bā  
6673 8830 liù liù qī sān bā bā sān líng

**Yāo** is used instead of **yī** when telephone numbers or large numbers for rooms, buses, trains and so on, are broken down into single digits. This avoids any confusion with **qī** (seven).

## 2 Where are you?

Instead of asking *who* you are, the Chinese often ask *where* you are. (In actual fact the Chinese are really asking you for the name of your work unit.) In response to *Nín shì nǎlǐ?* Mr King could equally well have replied that he was Beijing University! (*Wǒ shì Bēijīng Dàxué*). The idea being that you follow this up with the equivalent of your rank and number so that again you can be slotted into that imaginary filing system! Of course you may be asked who you are and the polite form would probably be *Nǐ (nín) shì nǎwèi?* (*Lit.* you are which polite MW for people?) In both *Nín shì nǎlǐ?* and *Nín shì nǎwèi?* the *shì* may be omitted. Don't be surprised if you are simply asked who you are without any frills: *Nǐ shì shéi?*

## 3 Describing your 'character'

Mr King says he is 'the three horizontals and one vertical' King, that the *yōng* in his name is the *yōng* in *yōngyuǎn* 'eternal' and the *shòu* is as the *shòu* in *chángshòu* 'longevity'! That leaves the box office clerk in no doubt as to how to write his name. Because Chinese is so full of homophones it is common practice to describe one's name in this way so that there can be no misunderstanding as to what characters are used. Thus *Shǐ Āili*'s name, literally 'history loves principle', could be described as *Shǐ shì lishǐ de shǐ, ài shì ài guó de ài, lǐ shì dàolǐ de lǐ* 'the shǐ as in history, the ài as in patriotic and the lǐ as in principle (or truth)'.

## 4 (*Kuài*) *yào* V . . . *le*

To indicate imminent action or that the action of the verb is going to take place within a relatively short space of time we can put *yào* in front of the verb and the modal particle *le* at the end of the sentence. *Kuài* or *jiù* can be put before *yào* to make the imminence of the action even clearer:

*Tā yào dǎ diànhuà le.* 'She's going to phone'.

《*Rìchū*》 *kuài yào yān le.* 'Sunrise is coming on soon'.

*Wǒ xiàwǔ jiù yào zǒu le.* 'I'm leaving this afternoon'.

Note that an adverb or adverbial phrase of time may come before *jiù yào* V . . . *le* but not before *kuài yào* V . . . *le*.

As you can see, the concept of 'imminent' is a relatively elastic one but the juxtaposition of *míngtiān* and *kuài* as in *Wǒ*

*péngyou míngtiān kuài yào chū guó le* does seem to be taking this too far (hence the rule) whereas *Wǒ péngyou míngtiān jiù yào chū guó le* ‘My friend is going abroad tomorrow’ is perfectly acceptable. This construction can also appear as:

*kuài V . . . le:*

*Piào kuài mài wán le.* ‘The tickets are almost sold out’.

but not

*jiù V . . . le*

which would be far too ambiguous as *jiù* can be used in so many different ways.

The question form is made by adding *ma* to the statement and *méi you* is used for an answer in the negative: *Huǒchē kuài yào kāi le ma?* ‘Is the train about to leave?’ *Méi you* ‘No’.

## i The three Ps

Making a telephone call in China is not always as easy as it may appear in this chapter as many of us know to our cost. A whole morning can sometimes be spent making three or four long-distance calls so patience and persistence are required. Apart from local calls, all calls have to go through the operator although this is slowly changing as more modern equipment is being installed. *Zhàn xiān le* ‘the line’s engaged’ (Lit. occupied line) is a phrase with which one soon becomes very familiar.

Buying tickets of any sort in China, given the vastness of the population, is no easy matter and it is often very difficult for individuals to buy tickets for any even moderately popular event. As we have said before, it is usually the work unit which performs this function. Foreigners are sometimes privileged in this respect. With patience, persistence and politeness they can, on occasions, manage to obtain tickets which seem to be unavailable to the general public.

### Exercise 16.1

Learn the following radicals, their romanization and their meaning:

1 草	<i>cǎo</i>	‘grass’.
2 水	<i>shuǐ</i>	‘water’.
3 心	<i>xīn</i>	‘heart’.
4 女	<i>nǚ</i>	‘woman’.
5 耳	<i>ěr</i>	‘ear’.
6 宀	—	‘roof’.
7 贝	<i>bèi</i>	‘shell, object of value’.
8 八	<i>bā</i>	‘eight’.
9 食	<i>shí</i>	‘food’.

Some characters appear to be made up of more than one recognizable radical. Which one do you choose to look up the character under? You will slowly learn that certain radicals seem to take precedence over others. The 'five elements' (wood, fire, earth, metal and water) for instance, but these are all defeated by 'heart'. If you are totally at sea, look at the left-hand side of the character first and see if you can spot a radical. The 'head' is another place to look (grass, bamboo, various kinds of roofs). In absolute dire straits try the horizontal or vertical lines or the dot!

### Exercise 16.2

Write out each of the following characters in *pinyin* and say what its radical is; e.g. 喂 *wèi* 'mouth'.

- 1 演 2 行 3 记 4 打 5 取  
6 过 7 英 8 接 9 卖 10 天

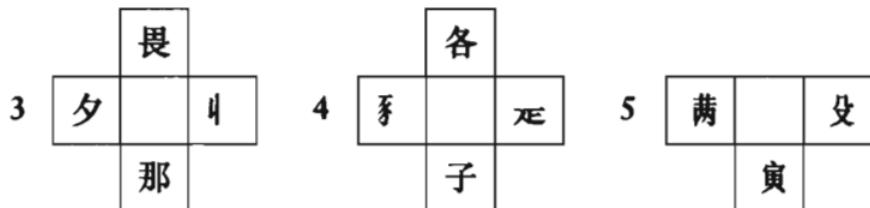
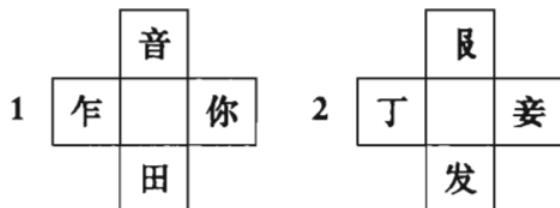
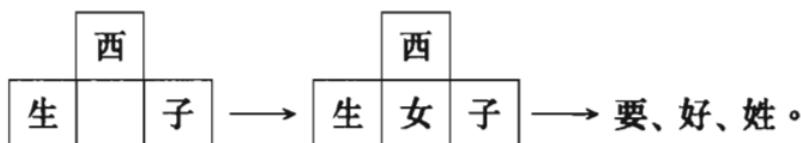
### Exercise 16.3

For each of the following characters take out the radical and then count up the number of strokes remaining. Indicate what the radical is: e.g. 行 → 3 (一); 了 → 1 (ノ)

- 1 话 2 剧 3 专 4 叫 5 今  
6 满 7 星 8 贵 9 客 10 姓

### Exercise 16.4

Fill in the square in the centre with a component or character which when combined with each of the components in the other squares forms a separate character:



**Exercise 16.5**

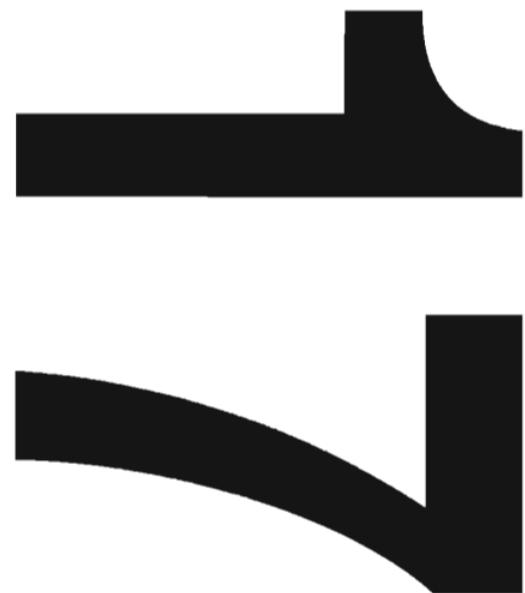
Write the following *pinyin* sentences in Chinese characters and then translate them into English:

- 1 Jīntiān méi yǒu rén gěi wǒ dǎ diànhuà.
- 2 Shǒudū Jùchǎng zài nǎr?
- 3 Tā míngtiān xiàwǔ jiù yào qù Bēijīng (北京) le.
- 4 Nǐ hòutiān néng bu neng lái jiē wǒ?
- 5 Xīngqīwǔ xíng bu xíng? Bù xíng, jiù xīngqīliù ba.

**Exercise 16.6**

Translate into Chinese characters:

- 1 I went to the Capital Theatre today. (了)
- 2 What is your (expensive) name? My name is Shi, Shi Aili.
- 3 He says he'll save two tickets for us.
- 4 They want to see that film this afternoon but it's sold out.
- 5 Would it be all right if I come and pick up the tickets next Friday?



# directions and transport

问路、坐车 wèn lù, zuò chē

In this chapter you will learn

- about famous places of interest in and around Tiananmen Square
- how to ask for and understand directions
- the points of the compass
- how to express the distance between two points
- about place words
- more about the stroke order of difficult characters

## Famous places of interest in and around Tiananmen Square

## 1 景山公园

Jǐngshān Gōngyuán  
Jingshan Park

## 2 故宫

Gùgōng

## 3 天安门

Tiān'ānmén

## 4 天安门广场

Tiān'ānmén  
Guǎngchǎng

N

## 6 人民英雄纪念碑

Rénmín Yingxióng

Jīniènbēi

## 7 中国历史博物馆

Zhōngguó Lìshí

Bówùguǎn

## 8 毛主席纪念堂

Máo Zhǔxí

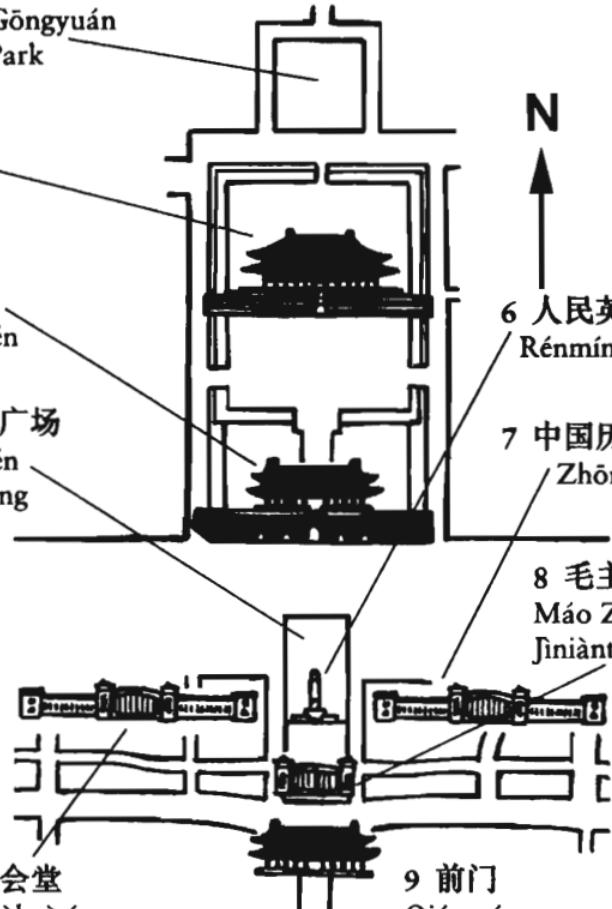
Jīniàntáng

## 5 人民大会堂

Rénmín Dàihuìtáng

## 9 前门

Qiánmén



## Pattern one:

to taxi-driver, bus-conductor, etc.

我要去PW      Wǒ yào qù PW.

我要去天坛    Wǒ yào qù Tiāntán.

## Pattern two:

you are in the vicinity of a place (PW) and ask a passer-by

PW在哪儿? 怎么走?

PW zài nǎr? Zěnme zǒu?

Standing in Tiananmen Square

故宫在哪儿? 怎么走?

Gùgōng zài nǎr? Zěnme zǒu?

## Pattern three:

as for Pattern two, but slightly more formal

a 请问PW在哪儿? 怎么走?

Qǐng wèn, PW zài nǎr? Zěnme zǒu?

In the North

- b 劳驾PW在哪儿? 怎么走?  
*Láojià, PW zài nǎr? Zěnme zǒu?*
- c 请问/劳驾PW怎么走?  
*Qǐng wèn/láojià PW zěnme zǒu?*  
 请问, 人民大会堂在哪儿? 怎么走?  
*Qǐng wèn, Rénmín Dàihuìtáng zài nǎr?  
 Zěnme zǒu?*

► Pattern four: reply to a question asking for directions  
 往 direction 走 Wàng Direction zǒu.  
 往东走 Wàng dōng zǒu.

► Linking question and answer

1 甲 请问, 前门在哪儿? 怎么走?

Jiǎ Qǐng wèn, Qiánmén zài nǎr? Zěnme zǒu?  
 乙 前门离这儿不远。往南走就到了。  
 Yǐ Qiánmén lí zhèr bù yuǎn. Wàng nán zǒu jiù dào le.

2 甲 劳驾, 故宫在哪儿? 怎么走?

Jiǎ Láojià, Gùgōng zài nǎr? Zěnme zǒu?  
 乙 (pointing) 离这儿很近, 你看, 就在那儿, 你往北走就到了。  
 Yǐ Lí zhèr hěn jìn, nǐ kàn, jiù zài nàr, nǐ wàng běi zǒu jiù dào le.  
 甲 谢谢你。  
 Jiǎ Xièxie nǐ.

问路	wèn lù (v-o)	ask the way
坐车	zuò chē (v-o)	go by transport
天坛	Tiāntán (N)	Temple of Heaven
怎么	zěnme	
走	zǒu	
故宫	Gùgōng (N)	the Forbidden City (the Imperial Palace)
劳驾	láojià	excuse me
人民大会堂	Rénmín Dàihuìtáng (N)	Great Hall of the People
往	wàng (prep.)	towards, to
东	dōng	east
甲	jiǎ	A (the first of the Ten Heavenly Stems)
乙	yǐ	B (the second of the Ten Heavenly Stems) (See Chapter 22)
前门	Qiánmén (N)	Qianmen
离	lí (prep.)	(distance) from

这儿 (这里)	<b>zhèr</b> (zhèlǐ)	
不	<b>bù</b>	
远	<b>yuǎn</b> (adj.)	<i>far</i>
南	<b>nán</b>	<i>south</i>
到	<b>dào</b>	<i>arrive, go to</i>
近	<b>jìn</b> (adj.)	<i>near</i>
你	<b>nǐ</b>	
那儿 (那里)	<b>nàr</b> (nàlǐ) (PW)	<i>there</i>
北	<b>běi</b>	<i>north</i>

## **Table of stroke order of the more difficult characters**

路	足(フロウモウルフ)						各	
坐	从(フスムツム)						土	
车	一 二 三 车							
劳	丂	一(フ) 一(フ) 力(カ) 力(カ)						
驾	加	马						
民	乚(ム) 丶(ム) 乚(ム) 亼(イ) 𠂇(イ)							
堂	丶(ム) 丶(ム) 丶(ム)							
	室(ム フク 室 室 室 室)							
往	彳	主(ム ハラ ム ハラ ム ハラ)						
甲		口	口	曰	甲			
乙	乙							
前	丶	月	丶					
离	丶	ニ	文	吉	吉	离	离	
这	文	(ム ハラ 文)	辶					
里		口	口	曰	旦	里		
南	十	南(ム ム ム ム ム ム)						

## Dialogue

Mr King comes out of the Imperial Palace (*Gùgōng*) and asks the way to the Great Hall of the People (*Rénmín Dàhūitáng*):

王 人民大会堂离故宫远吗?

*Rénmín Dàhūitáng* lì *Gùgōng* yuǎn ma?

路人 不远, 离故宫很近, 就在天安门广场西边儿。

*Lùrén* *Bù yuǎn, lì Gùgōng hěn jìn, jiù zài Tiān'ānmén Guǎngchǎng xībianr.*

王 中国历史博物馆也在西边儿吗?

*Zhōngguó Líshǐ Bówùguǎn* yě zài xībianr ma?

路人 不, 中国历史博物馆和中国革命博物馆就在天安门东边儿, 人民大会堂对面。

*Bù, Zhōngguó Líshǐ Bówùguǎn hé Zhōngguó Gémìng Bówùguǎn jiù zài Tiān'ānmén dōngbianr, Rénmín Dàhūitáng duìmiàn.*

王 人民英雄纪念碑呢?

*Rénmín Yǐngxióng Jìniànbēi* ne?

路人 在天安门广场中间, 在毛主席纪念堂前边儿。

*Zài Tiān'ānmén Guǎngchǎng zhōngjiān, zài Máo Zhǔxí Jìniàntáng qianbianr.*

王 那么, 前门在毛主席纪念堂后边儿对不对?

*Nàme, Qiánmén zài Máo Zhǔxí Jìniàntáng hòubianr duì bu duì?*

路人 对, 这几个地方都很有意思, 值得看一看。

*Duì, zhè jǐ ge dìfang dōu hěn yǒu yìsi, zhídé kānyikàn.*

路人	<i>lùrén</i> (n)	passer-by; stranger
天安门广场	<i>Tiān'ānmén</i>	Tiananmen Square
西边儿	<i>xībianr</i> (n)	west (side)
中国历史博物馆	<i>Zhōngguó Líshǐ Bówùguǎn</i> (N)	Museum of National History (Lit. China history museum)
也	<i>yě</i>	
中国革命博物馆	<i>Zhōngguó Gémìng Bówùguǎn</i> (N)	Museum of Revolution (Lit. China revolution museum)
东边儿	<i>dōng(bianr)</i> (PW)	east (side)
对面	<i>duìmiàn</i> (PW)	opposite
人民英雄纪念碑	<i>Rénmín Yǐngxióng Jìniànbēi</i> (N)	Monument to the People's Heroes (Lit. people's hero monument)
呢	<i>ne</i>	
中间	<i>zhōngjiān</i> (PW)	middle; between

毛主席纪念堂

前边儿那么儿对儿几地方得儿后边儿

Máo Zhǔxí	<i>Mao Zedong</i>
Jīnìan táng (N)	<i>(Chairman Mao) Mausoleum</i>
qiánbianr (PW) nàme	<i>front, in front of name</i>
hòubianr (PW) duì	<i>back, behind</i>
dìfang (n)	<i>place</i>
zhíde (v)	<i>to be worth, deserve</i>

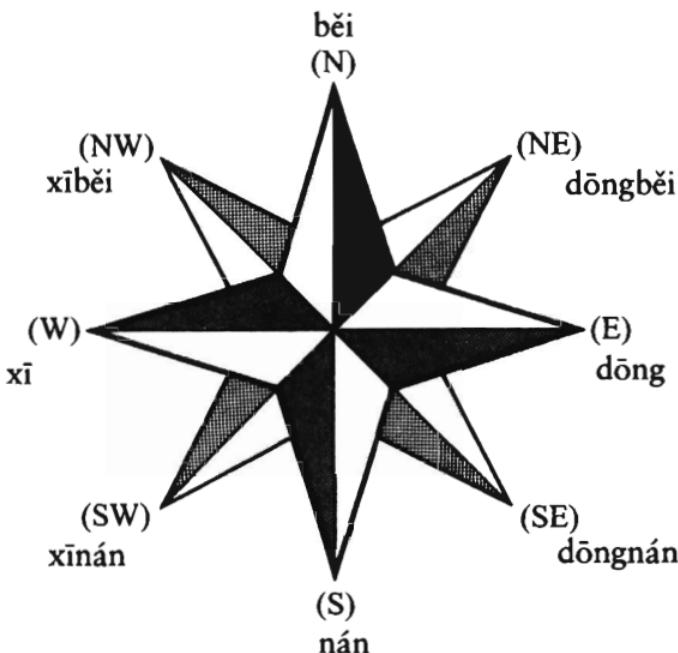
## Table of stroke order of the more difficult characters

广		广	
边		刀 力 边	
历	厂	力	
史	口	史	
博	十	甫(一 厂 𠩺 𠩺 甫 甫)	𠩺
物	牛	(ノ 牛 牛)勿(ノ 勅 勅 勿)	
馆	宀	(ノ 夂 宀)官(一 宀 广 宀 宀 宀 官)	
革	一	十 丶 丶 丶 芦 苑 苗 苗 革	
命	人	一 一 口 叩	
面	一	一 一 广 百 而 而 面 面 面	
雄	玄	(一 广 玄 玄)隹	
碑	石	(一 丶 石 石 石)卑(一 白 丶 丶 丶 卑)	
席	广	芾(一 丶 丶 丶 芦 苗 蒂)	
值	亼	直(一 丶 丶 广 丶 丶 丶 直)	
得	彳	日	寸(一 丶 丶 子 寸)

# Grammar

## 1 Points of the compass

Perhaps as China is situated in the East, the important cardinal points for her are east and west (in that order!) rather than north and south. Whereas when listing the cardinal points we say north, south, east, west, the Chinese say *dōng*, *nán*, *xī*, *běi* (E, S, W, N).



Instead of south-east they say ‘east-south’ (*dōngnán*), instead of north-west, ‘west-north’ (*xīběi*) and so on. NB The figure above shows the western representation of the compass. The Chinese version always shows South at the top.

The Chinese are more likely to give you directions in terms of north, south, etc. than left and right. This stems from the fact that old Chinese cities (Beijing is a good example) are laid out on a north-south, east-west axis, so in these cases, this is the most helpful way for someone to orientate him/herself.

## 2 Place words

*qiánbiān	<i>front, in front of, before</i>
*hòubiān	<i>back, at the back of, behind</i>
*shàngbiān	<i>top, on, over, above</i>
*xiàobiān	<i>bottom, below, under</i>
zuǒbiān	<i>left</i>
yòubiān	<i>right</i>
*lǐbiān	<i>inside</i>
*wàibiān	<i>outside</i>
zhōngjiān	<i>middle, between</i>
duīmiàn	<i>opposite</i>
pángbiān	<i>side</i>

(All these words are often followed by ‘-ér’ which renders the *biān* toneless: *qiánbianr*, *hòubianr*, etc. and I have generally glossed them as such.)

\* -*biān* may be replaced by -*miàn* or -*tóu* in the examples above. Which one is used seems to depend on the speaker, with Southerners tending to use -*tóu* more, and -*biān* and -*miàn* being interchangeable.

Place words such as those listed above function as nouns in Chinese. When such a place word is used to tell us more about another noun it is usually followed by *de*: *qiánbiān de rén* ‘the person/people in front’.

Conversely, when it is itself preceded by another noun or pronoun the *de* is normally omitted: *zhuōzi pángbiān* ‘beside the table’. The same rule applies to *dōngbiān*, *xībiān*, etc. and as students often put these place words in the wrong position it may be helpful to memorize the following ‘pair’ of examples:

*dōngbiān de xuéxiào* ‘the school to the east’

*xuéxiào dōngbiān* ‘to the east of the school’.

In the first example we are talking about the school, in the second example we are talking about what exists to the east of it. This is exactly the same rule as in 3.5 but the frequent omission of *de* before the place word when used in this way tends to obscure this fact. Think of the *de* as being there when working out where the place word should come in such cases.

When the place word *lǐbiān* or *shàngbiān* is attached to a noun, *biān* is very often omitted:

- zài jiā lǐ* 'at home'  
*zài chéng lǐ* 'in town'  
*zài yǐzi shàng* 'on the chair'.

This also works with *xià* in such expressions as:

- yǐzi xià* 'beneath the chair'  
*zhuōzi xià* 'beneath the table'.

The *biān* in other place words is seldom omitted, however, and where it is, the phrase should be learnt separately: *guówài* 'overseas, abroad'.

If these phrases occur at the beginning of the sentence, the use of *zài* is optional:

*Jiālǐ yǒu rén* 'there's somebody at home' but it is compulsory after the verb: *Wǒ yào fàng zài yǐzi shàng* 'I want to put (it) on the chair'.

Some adverbial phrases do not take *zài* wherever they occur in the sentence. Examples include:

- chūntiān lǐ* 'in the spring'  
*jiàqī zhōng* 'in the holidays'  
*sānyuè zhōng* 'mid-March'

Note that *lǐ* is used in the first example and *zhōng* in the second, although both are translated into English as 'in'.

Conversely, other adverbial phrases may take an optional *zài* but no other place word:

- (*zài*) *zhōumò* 'at the weekend'  
 (*zài*) *yìjiǔjiǔlíng nián* 'in 1990'

Some take neither *zài* or any other place word: *èryuè fèn(r)* 'in February' although *èryuè* by itself is also possible.

All the above examples should be noted and added to as your studies progress. Listen carefully to Chinese speakers and imitate them as far as possible. The recording will help you do this.

The verbs *shì* 'to be' and *yǒu* 'to have' are both used to denote existence and are often to be found with the place words described above. The basic difference is that the object of a sentence with *yǒu* is usually indefinite whereas the object of a sentence with *shì* may be either definite or indefinite and usually implies a judgement that something is so (and not something else):

Gùgōng qiánbianr yǒu yì tiáo dà jiē 'There's a big street in front of the Forbidden City' (indicating existence, position).

Gùgōng qiánbianr shì Tiān'ānmén Guǎngchǎng 'In front of the Forbidden City is Tiananmen Square' (not the Temple of Heaven for instance).

### Exercise 17.1

Look at the map at the beginning of this chapter and answer the following questions using the points of the compass. (Use the point of reference given in brackets after the question.)

Gùgōng zài nǎr? (Jǐngshān Gōngyuán) → Gùgōng zài Jǐngshān Gōngyuán nánbianr.

- 1 Jǐngshān Gōngyuán zài nǎr? (Gùgōng.)
- 2 Qiánmén zài nǎr? (Máo Zhǔxí Jiniàntáng.)
- 3 Rénmín Dàhuítáng zài nǎr? (Rénmín Yīngxióng Jiniànbei.)
- 4 Zhōngguó Lìshǐ Bówùguǎn zài nǎr? (Rénmín Yīngxióng Jiniànbei.)
- 5 Máo Zhǔxí Jiniàntáng zài nǎr? (Rénmín Dàhuítáng.)

### 3 Jiǎ and yǐ

Jiǎ and yǐ are the first and second of the ten Heavenly Stems just like alpha, beta in Greek. They are also often used in the same way as we use 'A' and 'B' in English.

### 4 A // B

When we wish to express how far A is from B where the positions of A and B are fixed, the construction is as follows:

A lí B distance in time or space.

Gōngyuán lí shāngdiàn hěn yuǎn 'The park is a long way from the shops'.

Hòutiān lí jīntiān hái yǒu liǎng tiān 'The day after tomorrow is still two days away (from today)'.

Niújīn lí Lúndūn yǒu jiǔshíyī gōnglǐ 'Oxford is 91 kilometres (public *lǐ*) from London'.

### Exercise 17.2

Using the map again, answer the following questions.

Gùgōng lí Qiánmén yuǎn ma? → Gùgōng lí Qiánmén yuǎn.

- 1 Jǐngshān Gōngyuán lí Qiánmén yuǎn ma?
- 2 Rénmín Dàhuítáng lí Rénmín Yīngxióng Jiniànbei jìn bu jin? Zěnme zǒu?
- 3 Máo Zhǔxí Jiniàntáng lí Tiān'ānmén yuǎn bu yuan? Zěnme zǒu?

- 4 Rénmín Yīngxióng Jìniànbēi lí Zhōngguó Lìshǐ Bówùguǎn  
hěn jìn, shì bu shi?
- 5 Niújīn lí Lúndūn yǒu duō yuǎn?
- 6 Sānshí hào lí èrshíqī hào hái yǒu jǐ tiān?
- 7 Yuándàn (New Year's Day) lí Shèngdànjié (Christmas Day)  
yǒu jǐ ge xīngqī?

### Exercise 17.3

Write out the characters you have met with the following radicals or character components. (Go through Chapters 14–17 to find the answers.)

e.g. 艹 → 苹 \_\_\_\_\_

1 宀	8 目	15 月
2 丶	9 心/忄	16 口
3 禾	10 艹	17 手
4 门	11 土	18 人 or 亼
5 阝 (RHS)	12 女	19 辶
6 丶	13 丨	20 火
7 丶	14 木	

### Exercise 17.4

Write out your answers to Exercises 17.1 and 17.2 (1–4 only) in characters.

### Exercise 17.5

Translate into Chinese characters:

- Excuse me, where is the Temple of Heaven? How do I get there?
- Is the Great Hall of the People a long way from here? No, it's just opposite.
- The Monument to the People's Heroes is to the east of the Great Hall of the People but to the west of the Museum of National History.

### i Regional differences

Given China's vastness, it is not surprising that there are a number of major dialects in China and countless minor ones. These do not include the languages of the minority peoples such as Tibetan (Zàngwén), Thai (Tàiwén), Vietnamese (Yuènánwén), Uighur (Wéiwú'ěrwén), etc. Some expressions which you will hear frequently in the North such as láojiā are hardly heard in the South. Although

*pǔtōnghuà* has standardized much of the vocabulary you will still find regional differences. Examples include:

	North	South*
'potato'	<i>tǔdòu</i>	<i>mǎlíngshǔ</i>
'tomato'	<i>xīhóngshì</i>	<i>fāngqié</i>
'pineapple'	<i>bōluó</i>	<i>fènglí</i>
'taxi'	<i>chūzūqichē</i>	<i>jichéngchē</i>
'bicycle'	<i>zíxíngchē</i>	<i>jiǎotàchē</i>

\* plus Taiwan and overseas Chinese communities

# 1 at the post office

在邮电局 zài yóudìànjú

In this chapter you will learn

- how to buy stamps
- how to send letters and parcels
- how to move the direct object in front of the verb using bǎ
- more about the stroke order of difficult characters

► Mr King goes to the post office to send a parcel of books back home, and post two letters.

- 王 请问，寄包裹是在这儿吗？  
*Qǐng wèn, jì bāoguǒ shì zài zhèr ma?*  
营业员 不，在隔壁。  
*Bù, zài gébi.*  
王 这儿能买邮票吗？  
*Zhèr néng mǎi yóupiào ma?*  
营业员 能。  
*Néng.*  
王 这两封信多少钱？  
*Zhè liǎng fēng xìn duōshao qián?*  
营业员 寄哪儿？  
*Ji nǎr?*  
王 重的寄上海，另(外)一封寄美国。  
*Zhòng de jì Shànghǎi, lìng (wài) yì fēng jì Měiguó.*  
营业员 上海的要寄航空还是寄平信？  
*Shànghǎi de yào jì hángkōng háishi jì píngxìn?*  
王 寄航空。  
*Ji hángkōng.*  
营业员 (把信放在天平上)寄美国的两块四，寄上海的三毛。一共两块七。  
*(Bǎ xìn fàng zài tiānpíng shàng) Jì Měiguó de liǎng kuàisì, jì Shànghǎi de sān máo. Yígòng liǎng kuàiqī.*  
(王先生给他十块)  
*(Wáng xiānsheng gěi tā shí kuài)*  
营业员 找你七块三。  
*Zhǎo nǐ qī kuàiqī sān.*  
王 谢谢。(走到邮寄包裹的地方)  
*Xièxie. (Zǒu dào yóují bāoguǒ de dìfang)*  
王 同志，请问，把这包书寄到英国要多少钱？  
*Tóngzhì, qǐng wèn, bǎ zhè bāo shū jì dào Yīngguó yào duōshao qián?*  
营业员 (把书放在天平上) 重五公斤，三十六块七毛钱。要不要挂号？  
*(Bǎ shū fàng zài tiānpíng shàng) Zhòng wǔ gōng jīn, sānshíliù kuàiqī máo qián. Yào bu yào guà hào?*  
王 嗨，挂号吧。  
*Ng, guà hào ba.*

营业员

再加上挂号费六毛钱，一共三十七块三。请把邮票贴上，再填一张包裹单，把收件人、寄件人的地址和姓名填写清楚。

Zài jiā shàng guàhào fèi liù máo qián, yígòng sānshíqī kuài sān. Qǐng bǎ yóupiào tiē shàng, zài tián yì zhāng bāoguǒdān, bǎ shōujìnrén、jijiàn rén de dìzhǐ hé xìngmíng tiánxiě qīngchu.

(过了一会儿)

(Guò le yíhuír)

邮票贴好了，包裹单也填好了。

Yóupiào tiē hǎo le, bāoguǒdān yě tián hǎo le.

把书给我吧。这是收据，请收好。

Bǎ shū gěi wǒ ba. Zhè shì shōujù, qǐng shōu hǎo.

谢谢你。请问，这儿可以打长途电话吗？

Xièxie nǐ. Qǐng wèn, zhèr kěyǐ dǎ chángtú diànhuà ma?

可以。你去‘电报、电话’柜台问一问。

Kěyǐ. Nǐ qù ‘diànbào, diànhuà’ guítái wènyíwèn.

好，麻烦你了。

Hǎo, máfan nǐ le.

没什么。

Méi shénme.

邮电局

yóudiànjú (n)

post and telecommunications office

寄  
包裹

jì (v)

to post, mail

营业员

bāoguǒ (n)

parcel, package

隔壁

yíngyèyuán (n)

clerk, shop employee

这儿

gébì (PW)

next door

封  
信

zhèr

寄  
哪儿

fēng (MW)

for letters

重  
上海

xìn (n)

letter

另 (外)

jì (v)

to post, mail

美国

nǎr

航空 (信)

zhòng (adj.)

heavy

还是

Shànghǎi (PW)

Shanghai

平信

lìng(wài) (adj.; adv)

another; separately

把

Měiguó (PW)

USA, America

放 (在)

hángkōng (xìn)

airmail

天平

háishi

píngxìn (n)

surface mail

bǎ (prep.)

a preposition showing disposal

fàng (zài) (v)

to put (on)

tiānpíng (n)

scales

到	-dào (DE)	-to
邮	yóujì (v)	to send by post or mail
志	tóngzhì (n)	comrade
同	shū (n) [běn]	book
书	gōngjīn (n)	kilogram (Lit. public catty)
公	guà hào (v-o)	to register (Lit. hang number)
斤	ñg	uh-huh, hm
挂	jiā (shang) (v)	to add (on)
号	guàhàofèi (n)	registration charge
嗯	xiān (conj.)	first
加 (上)	tiē (shang) (v)	to stick (on)
挂号费	tián (xiě) (v)	to fill in
先	bāoguǒdān (n)	parcel form
贴 (上)	shǒujìlànrénn (n)	addressee, recipient
填 (写)	jǐjlànrénn (n)	sender
包裹单	dizhǐ (n)	address
收件人	xìngmíng (n)	full name
寄件人	qīngchu	clear, clearly
地址	shōujù (n)	receipt
姓名	shōu (hǎo) (v)	to put away; to receive
清楚	chángtú diànhuà (n)	long distance telephone call
收据	kěyǐ	can, may
收 (好)	diànbào (n)	telegram
长途电话	guìtái (n)	counter
可以	máfan	trouble, troublesome
电报		
柜台		
麻烦		

Table of stroke order of the more difficult characters

局	尸	月	局	局	局
寄	宀	大	可	(一	丨
裹	一	昊	𠂇	(	一
营	艹	乚	昌		
业	丨	丨	丶	业	业
隔	阝	口	𠂔		
壁	辟	月	辛	(	土
书	乚	马	书	书	

重		一 二 广 丶 丶 丶 丶 丶 丶 丶 重 重
费	弗	(一 二 丶 丶 丶 丶 丶 丶 丶 弗) 贝
先	ノ	牛 牛 牛 牛 先
填	土	真 (一 二 广 丶 丶 丶 丶 丶 丶 直 真 真)
写	亼	与 (一 与 与)
单	丶	單 (丨 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 𠂔 单)
址	土	止 (丨 十 止 止)
楚	林	疒
据	扌	居
以	レ レ	以 以
柜	木	巨 (一 丶 丶 丶 巨)
烦	火	页 (一 丶 丶 丶 丶 丶 丶 页)

## Grammar

### 1 The *bǎ* construction (I)

By using *bǎ*, the direct object is brought forward to a position in front of the verb instead of after it so the sentence order becomes:

Subject *bǎ* object verb + other element(s)

Wǒ *bǎ* bāoguǒ fàng zài tiānpíng shàng  
'I put the parcel on the scales'.

It is important to note that:

- 1 The verb cannot stand on its own after *bǎ* and that something else has to come after it even if it is only *le* or the verb is simply reduplicated:

Tā bǎ zìxíngchē mài le. 'He sold the bicycle.'

Qǐng nǐ bǎ chuānghu kāikai. 'Please open the window.'

- 2 The object of a *bǎ* sentence is normally a *specific* person or thing(s) even when no specification is overtly expressed in the Chinese; it cannot refer to people or things in general:  
*Tā bǎ shū jì zǒu le* 'She posted the books'.
- 3 Negatives, auxiliary verbs, adverbial phrases of 'time when' and 'time within which' go before *bǎ*. When *dōu* refers to the subject it comes directly after the subject and before *bǎ*, but when it refers to the object it comes directly after the object and before the verb.

Wǒ jīntiān méi bǎ diànhuà hào mǎ jì xiàlai 'I didn't note down the telephone number(s) today'.

Yíngyèyuán yào bǎ shōujù gěi wǒ 'The clerk wants/wanted to give me the receipt'.

Nǐ zhè liǎng ge xīngqī zěnme méi bǎ zhè běn shū kàn wán ne? 'How come you haven't finished this book during the last two weeks?'.

Wǒmen dōu bǎ yīfú chuān shàng le (*chuān*: to wear) 'We all put the clothes on'.

Wǒmen bǎ yīfú dōu chuān shàng le 'We put all the clothes on'.

- 4 Although *bǎ* cannot be translated into English it does contain a sense of disposal, i.e. to hold or take an object and do something with it (hence the hand radical), which is why it cannot be used with verbs which contain no such idea of disposal such as *shì*, *yǒu*, *zhīdào*, *juéde*, *xǐhuān*, *zài*, *lái*, *qu* and *huí*. These points are summarized in the following table:

Subj. (N or pr.)	Adv. time	Neg.	Aux. v.	Prep.	Obj.	Verb	Other elements
Wǒ				<i>bǎ</i>	<i>shìqing</i>	<i>zuò</i>	wán
Wǒ				<i>bǎ</i>	<i>shìqing</i>	<i>zuò</i>	wán
Wǒ		<i>bù</i>	<i>néng</i>	<i>bǎ</i>	<i>shìqing</i>	<i>zuò</i>	wán
Wǒ	<i>jīntiān</i>	<i>bù</i>	<i>néng</i>	<i>bǎ</i>	<i>shìqing</i>	<i>zuò</i>	wán
Tā				<i>bǎ</i>	<i>xìn</i>	<i>xiě</i>	wán le
Tā		<i>méi</i>		<i>bǎ</i>	<i>xìn</i>	<i>xiě</i>	wán
Tā	<i>hái</i>	<i>méi</i>		<i>bǎ</i>	<i>xìn</i>	<i>xiě</i>	wán ne

## Some uses of the *bă* construction (II)

- 1 When the main verb is followed by the resultative ending *zài* or *dào* plus a place word:
 

*Qǐng nǐ bă dítú fàng zài zhuōzi shàng* ‘Please put the map on the table.’

*Wǒ yǐjīng bă tā sòng dào* (*sòng* ‘to see somebody off’) *feijīchǎng* (‘airport’) *le* ‘I’ve already seen her off to the airport’.
  - 2 When the verb is reduplicated:
 

*Qǐng nǐ bă zhè jiàn shìqing hăohāo xiāngyixiāng* ‘Please think over this matter carefully’.
  - 3 When the main verb is followed by the resultative ending *gěi* and takes both a direct and an indirect object (note that *gàosu* ‘to tell’ also comes into this category although it does not take *gěi*):
 

*Wǒmen bă qián huán gěi* (*huán* ‘to give or pay back’) *lǎobǎn* (‘the boss’) *le* ‘We’ve paid back the money to the boss’.

*Tā zǎo jiù* (‘long ago’) *bă nà jiàn shìqing gàosu wǒ le* ‘He told me about that matter ages ago.’
  - 4 When verbs of movement take the directional endings *lái* or *qu*, *huí*, *zǒu*, etc.:
 

*Tāmen zuótian bă zhàopiàn* (‘photograph’) *dài huílai le* ‘They brought the photos back yesterday’.

*Xuésheng bă guāngpán bōfàngjī jiè zǒu* (*jiè* ‘to borrow; lend’) *le* ‘The student borrowed the CD player (and went off with it)’.
  - 5 When there is a quantified expression in the sentence such as *yí cì*:
 

*Wǒ bă kèwén kàn le yí cì* ‘I(’ve) read the text once’.  
 (If *bă* were not used then the sentence would read *Wǒ kàn le yí cì kèwén*. Note that if the object were a pronoun, the word order would be reversed, i.e. *Wǒ kàn le tā yí cì*.)
  - 6 When the main verb is followed by the resultative ending *chéng* (Lit. ‘to become’) or *zuò* (Lit. ‘to regard as’) *Wàiguórén jīngcháng bă ‘shǒudū’* (‘capital’) *liǎng ge zì niàn chéng ‘shǒudōu’*. ‘Foreigners often read “shǒudū” as “shǒudōu”:’
- Nǐ wèi shénme bă wǒ dāng zuò* (*dāng* ‘to be, work as’) *nǐ de dírén* (enemy) *ne?* ‘Why do you regard me as your enemy?’.

**Exercise 18.1**

Turn the following sentences into *bǎ* sentences:

Yíngyèyuán zài xìnfēng (envelope) shàng tiē yóupiào →  
Yíngyèyuán bǎ yóupiào tiē zài xìnfēng shàng.

- 1 Qǐng nǐ shōu hǎo shōujù.
- 2 Bāoguǒdān shàng yào xiě qīngchu jìjiàn rén de dìzhǐ hé xìngmíng.
- 3 Jiā shàng guàhàofei yígòng yào duōshao qián?
- 4 Tā méi tián hǎo bāoguǒdān.
- 5 Yóukè (tourist) méi hăohăo kānyikàn Gùgōng.

Turn the following *bǎ* sentences into sentences without *bǎ*: Wǒ jīntiān yào bǎ zhè fēng xìn jì zǒu → Wǒ jīntiān yào jì zǒu zhè fēng xìn.

- 6 Shòupiàoyuán bǎ liǎng zhāng hǎo piào liú gěi Wáng xiānsheng le.
- 7 Wàiguó zhuānjiā yīnggāi bǎ jùchǎng de diànhuà hàomǎ (number) jì xiàlai.
- 8 Shòuhuòyuán bú yuàn yì bǎ sīchóu chènshān mài gěi tā.
- 9 Dàifu (doctor) yào bǎ bìngrén (patient) sòng (send) dào yīyuàn (hospital).
- 10 Wǒ yí ge Zhōngguó péngyou yì tiān néng bǎ liǎng bāo yān xī wán (xī ‘to inhale, smoke’).

## 2 Same character different pronunciation

Several characters have two or more different readings depending on context. 都 *dōu* is read as *dū* in 首都; 大夫 ‘doctor’ is read as *dàifu* not *dàfu*; 还 is read *huán* as a verb meaning ‘to give or pay back’ but as *hái* when it is an adverb meaning ‘still’; 和 is read as *huo* in *nuǎnhuo* ‘warm’; 行 is read as *háng* in *yínháng* ‘bank’ and so on. Some characters have the same pronunciation but different tones but they do not lie within the scope of this book!

## 3 -shang

As a resultative verb ending, *-shang* is often used to indicate:

- a that the object has become attached to something else as a result of the action of the verb:

Qǐng xiān bǎ yóupiào tiē shàng ‘Please stick the stamps on first’. (i.e. to the wrapping paper).

*Tiānqì lěng le, yīnggāi chuān shàng máoyī* ‘It’s turned cold, you ought to put a sweater on’.

- b Or that the completion of the action of the verb has resulted in something being closed or brought together:

*Qǐng nǐ bǎ mén guān shàng* ‘Please close the door’.

*Jì bāoguō děi yòng bù* (cloth) *bāo shàng* (wrap up), *féng shàng* (sew up), *zài bǎ shōujiànrén de xìngmíng hé dìzhǐ xiě zài bù shàng*. ‘In China when you send a parcel, you have to wrap it up in a piece of cloth, sew it up and then write the name and address of the recipient on the cloth.’ (This is absolutely normal practice when sending small items except for books – the sender must also write her/his name and address on the cloth too.)

#### 4 *Xiān V<sub>1</sub> zài V<sub>2</sub>*

The construction *xiān V<sub>1</sub> zài V<sub>2</sub>* shows a sequence of actions, first V<sub>1</sub> has to be done, then V<sub>2</sub>. This means that you can only carry out the action of the second verb when you have carried out the action of the first:

*Qǐng xiān bǎ yóupiào tiē shàng, zài tián yì zhāng bāoguǒdān.* ‘Please stick the stamps on first and then fill out a parcel form’.

(Note that the *xiān* is sometimes omitted in this construction, leaving only the *zài* before the second verb. This *zài* is written 再 as in 再见 *zàijiàn* not as in 在, ‘at, in’.)

#### i Comrade and others

Although the term 同志 *tóngzhì* is still used, it is less common than it was and will presumably eventually become even less so. Terms of address which were regarded as ‘feudal’ before the Great Proletarian Cultural Revolution (now written in Chinese with inverted commas to express political disapproval) are coming back into fashion. It is quite common to address youngish women as *xiǎojie*. The once universal *ài rén* ‘love person’ for husband or wife is also slowly being replaced with the more conventional and less intimate *xiānsheng* or *zhàngfu* for ‘husband’ and *tàitai* or *qīzi* for ‘wife’. These ‘new/old’ terms are particularly in favour with some people who live in the coastal provinces or come into contact with foreigners.

## Receipts

Most Chinese hang on to their receipts like mad as there is a tremendously widespread system of 报销 *bàoxiāo* 'reimbursement of expenses'. Many of the Chinese people travelling on the little mini-buses 小公共汽车 *xǐǎo gōnggòng qìchē* (usually called 面包车 *mǐnbāochē* [Lit. bread vehicle because of their shape] when they belong to a work unit) or on trains, planes or in taxis are on business (出差 *chū chāi*) and consequently can claim back all expenses. Hence the loudhailers used by minibus drivers and conductors encouraging prospective passengers to take advantage of the fact that *píao kěyǐ bàoxiāo* and to use the mini-buses, which are a more expensive but much more efficient means of transport. For a Chinese, his/her grade or position in the ranking order determines whether he/she travels hard or soft class on the train (see next chapter).

### Exercise 18.2

Write out each of the following characters in *pinyin* and put their common component or radical in brackets afterwards.

e.g. 把、挂、打 → *bǎ*, *guà*, *dǎ* (扌)

- 1 想、您、怎、意、思、志。
- 2 请、说、谢、话。
- 3 喂、售、员、吗、问、号。
- 4 近、还、过、这、远、边。
- 5 部、那、邮、都。

Repeat this exercise for yourself in subsequent chapters.

### Exercise 18.3

Write a character for each of the following phonetic transcriptions so as to make a word with the character given.

e.g. 北 *biān*, 北 *jīng* → 北边, 北京.

- 1 东 *xi*, 东 *biān*.
- 2 *wài* 国, *Zhōng* 国.
- 3 售 *huò* 员, 售 *píao* 员.
- 4 *máo* 衣, 衣 *fu*.
- 5 电 *yǐng*, 电 *huà*, 电 *bào*.
- 6 星期 *èr*, 星期 *sì*.
- 7 地 *tú*, 地 *fāng*, 地 *zhǐ*.
- 8 *shōu* 件人, *jì* 件人.

### Exercise 18.4

Translate this passage into colloquial English and then into Chinese characters.

Wáng xiānsheng rén hěn hǎo dànshi tā yǒu yí ge xiǎo máobìng (毛病 ‘defect’) tā hěn xǐhuan huā (花 ‘spend’) qián. Qù mǎi yí jiàn chènshān, tā jiù mǎi sān jiàn, nǐ yào tā mǎi yì běn zázhì jiù gěi nǐ mǎi shí běn. Tā shuō dōu hěn yǒu yìsī suōyǐ dōu mǎi le. Ràng (让 ‘let’) tā qù mǎi dōngxi, nǐ zěnme néng fàng xīn ne?

### Exercise 18.5

Translate the following into *pinyin* and then into Chinese characters:

- 1 You can make long distance phone-calls in Chinese post and telecommunications offices.
- 2 This is your receipt, please put (it) away carefully.
- 3 Please fill in this parcel form. Write the names and addresses of the recipient and sender clearly. (NB The name comes after the address in Chinese so reverse the order.)
- 4 Have you stuck the stamps on? Not yet.
- 5 Posting books is a hassle but worth it.



# at the railway station

在火车站 zài huǒchēzhàn

In this chapter you will learn

- how to buy railway tickets
- about Chinese trains
- how to express similarities
- how to express percentages and fractions
- about Chinese festivals
- more about foreign names expressed in Chinese

► Foreigners are very fortunate in being able to buy their train tickets in a special office at Beijing Railway Station (*Bēijīng Huǒchēzhàn*) otherwise they would have to queue (*pái duì* v-o) for a very long time. Miss Scurfield and Mr King wish to go to Tai'an (*Tài'ān*) over the mid-Autumn Festival (*Zhōngqiūjié*) in order to climb Mount Tai (*Tàishān*). Miss Scurfield goes to buy the tickets.

- 史** 九月二十七、八号么六么次还有硬卧吗?  
**售票员** 要几张?  
**史** 要两张。  
**售票员** 对不起，只剩一个上铺。软卧行吗?  
**史** 软卧太贵了，那么我看看（拿出火车时刻表查一下）。  
**售票员** 星期六一百二十五次几点开？啊，上午十点三十八分，晚上八点一刻到泰安—可以。星期六一百二十五次有软座吗?  
**史** 售票员 一百二十五次没有软座，只有硬座、硬卧和软卧。您买硬卧下铺就等于软座了。  
**史** 售票员 好，那就这样吧。  
**史** 您有学生证或者专家证吗？如果有，票价就跟中国人一样，要不，贵百分之七十五。  
**史** 售票员 有学生证，也有优待证所以就可以付人民币，是不是？  
**史** 是的。（付钱以后，就接着问）您是第一次来中国吧？  
**史** 售票员 是啊，我刚来几个月。  
**史** 售票员 您中国话讲得不错。您为什么要去泰安而不去一个比较好玩儿的地方呢？  
**史** 我非常想爬泰山，中秋节那天晚上在泰山顶上看日落，又在月光下吃月饼，第二天还希望能看到日出。  
**史** 售票员 你这个人真有意思呀！您跟谁一起去？  
**史** 售票员 跟我男朋友一起去。  
**史** 售票员 他是中国人还是外国人？  
**史** 售票员 是外国人，他是我的未婚夫。  
**史** 年轻的时候不浪漫一阵子还等到老了才浪漫吗？我的未婚夫很喜欢唐诗，他选了好几首，准备在泰山顶上给我朗诵。这些诗都是描写月光的。  
**史** 售票员 真逗你们！  
**史** 售票员 请问，我有一个朋友快要回国了，想坐火车经过莫斯科，能在这里买票吗？  
**史** 售票员 不行，要去国际饭店中国旅行社订票。  
**史** 售票员 你帮了我不少忙，太谢谢你了。  
**史** 售票员 没什么。祝你们中秋节玩儿得愉快。

This is the same dialogue, this time in *pinyin*:

- Shǐ** *Jǐyúè èrshíqī, bā hào yāo liù yāo cì hái yǒu yìngwò ma?*  
**Shòupiàoyuán** *Yào jǐ zhāng?*  
**Shǐ** *Yào liǎng zhāng.*  
**Shòupiàoyuán** *Duibuqǐ, zhǐ shèng yí ge shàngpù. Ruǎnwò xíng ma?*
- Shǐ** *Ruǎnwò tài guì le. Nàme wǒ kànkàn (ná chū huōchē shíkèbiǎo chá yíxià). Xīngqǐllù yǐbǎi'èr shíwǔ cì jǐ diǎn kāi? À, shàngwǔ shí diǎn sānshíbā fēn, wǎnshàng bā diǎn yíkè dào Tàï'an – kěyǐ. Xīngqǐllù yǐbǎi'èrshíwǔ cì yǒu ruǎnzuò ma?*  
**Shòupiàoyuán** *Yǐbǎi'èrshíwǔ cì méi yǒu ruǎnzuò, zhǐ yǒu yìngzuò, yìngwò hé ruǎnwò. Nín mǎi yìngwò xiàpù jiù děngyú ruǎnzuò le.*  
**Shǐ** *Hǎo, nà jiù zhèyàng ba.*  
**Shòupiàoyuán** *Nín yǒu xuéshēngzhèng huòzhě zhuānjiāzhèng ma? Rúguō yǒu, piàojià jiù gēn Zhōngguórén yíyàng, yàobù, guì bǎifēn zhī qīshíwǔ.*
- Shǐ** *Yǒu xuéshēngzhèng, yě yǒu yōudàizhèng suōyǐ jiù kěyǐ fù rénmínlì, shì bu shì?*  
**Shòupiàoyuán** *Shìde. (Fù qián yǐhòu, jiù jiēzhe wèn) Nín shì dì yí cí lái Zhōngguó ba?*
- Shǐ** *Shì a, wǒ gāng lái jǐ ge yuè.*  
**Shòupiàoyuán** *Nín Zhōngguóhuà jiǎng de búcuò. Nín wèi shénme yào qù Tàï'an ér bú qù yí ge bìjiào hǎowán de dìfang ne?*
- Shǐ** *Wǒ fēicháng xiǎng pá Tàishān, Zhōngqiūjíé nà tiān wǎnshàng zài Tàishān dǐng shàng kàn rìluò, yòu zài yuèguāng xià chī yuèbǐng. Dì èr tiān hái xīwàng néng kàn dào rìchū.*  
**Shòupiàoyuán** *Nín zhè ge rén zhēn yǒu yìsi ya! Nín gēn shéi yìqǐ qù?*
- Shǐ** *Gēn wǒ nán péngyou yìqǐ qù.*  
**Shòupiàoyuán** *Tā shì Zhōngguórén háishi wàiguórén?*  
**Shǐ** *Shì wàiguórén, tā shì wǒ de wèlhūnfū.*  
**Shòupiàoyuán** *À, nǐmen yǐjīng dìnghūn le. Nánguài nǐmen yuànyí zài Tàishān shàng kàn rìluò, nǐmen gòu làngmàn de!*
- Shǐ** *Niánqīng de shíhou bú làngmàn yízhènzi hái děng dào lǎo le cáimàn ma? Wǒ de wèlhūnfū hěn xǐhuan Táng shī, tā xuǎn le hǎo jǐ shǒu, zhǔnbèi zài Tàishān dǐng shàng gěi wǒ lángsòng. Zhè xiē shī dōu shì miáoxiě yuèguāng de.*

Shòupiàoyuán

Shǐ

Shòupiàoyuán

Shǐ

Shòupiàoyuán

*Zhēn dòu nǐmen!**Qǐng wèn, wǒ yǒu yí ge péngyou kuài yào huí guó le, xiǎng zuò huōchē jīngguò Mòsīkē, néng zài zhèlǐ mǎi piào ma?**Bù xíng, yào qù Guójì Fàndiàn Zhōngguó Lǚxíngshè ding piào.**Nǐ bāng le wǒ bù shǎo máng, tài xièxie nǐ le.**Méi shénme. Zhù nǐmen Zhōngqiūjíe wánr de yúkuài.*

火车站

么

次

硬卧

对不起

剩(下来)

上铺

软卧

拿出

火车

时刻表

一百

开

上午

软座

硬座

下铺

等于

这样

专家证

如果

票价

跟A一样

百分之X

优待证

人民币

接着

刚

huōchēzhàn (n)

yāo (num.)

cì (MW)

yìngwò (n.)

duìbuqǐ

shèng (xiàlái) (v)

shàngpù (n)

ruǎnwò (n)

ná chū (v)

huōchē (n)

shíkèbiǎo (n)

yì bǎi

kāi (v)

shàngwǔ (TW)

ruǎnzuò (n)

yìngzuò (n)

xiàpù (n)

děngyú (v)

zhèyàng

zhuānjiāzhèng (n)

rúguō (conj.)

piàojia (n)

gēn A yíyàng

bǎifēn zhī X

yōudàizhèng (n)

railway station

one (used orally only)

time

hard sleeper

sorry; excuse me

be left (over); remain

upper berth

soft sleeper

to take out

train

timetable, schedule

one hundred

to start; to open;

to drive

morning

soft seat (train)

hard seat (train)

bottom berth

to be equal to; be

equivalent to

like this, in this way

expert card

if

ticket price

the same as A

X per cent

preferential card (often known as white card)

(see p.206)

RMB (Chinese currency)

to carry on; follow

just

中国话	<b>Zhōngguóhuà</b>	<i>Chinese language (older term)</i>
讲	<b>jǐang</b> (v)	<i>to speak; to explain</i>
为什么	<b>wèi shénme</b> (conj.)	<i>why</i>
而	<b>ér</b> (conj.)	<i>but; and</i>
好玩 (儿)	<b>hǎowán(r)</b> (adj.)	<i>entertaining, enjoyable</i>
爬	<b>pá</b> (v)	<i>to climb</i>
顶	<b>dǐng</b> (n)	<i>top, peak; MW for hat</i>
日落	<b>rìluò</b> (n)	<i>sunset</i>
月光	<b>yuèguāng</b> (n)	<i>moonlight</i>
月饼	<b>yuèbǐng</b> (n)	<i>mooncake</i>
希望	<b>xīwàng</b> (v and n)	<i>to hope; hope</i>
未婚夫	<b>wèihūnfū</b> (n)	<i>fiancé</i>
订婚	<b>dìnghūn</b> (v-o)	<i>to be or get engaged</i>
难怪	<b>nánguài</b> (conj.)	<i>no wonder</i>
够	<b>gòu</b> (adv.)	<i>rather, quite; enough (adj.)</i>
浪漫	<b>làngmàn</b> (adj.)	<i>romantic</i>
年轻	<b>niánqīng</b> (adj.)	<i>young</i>
一下子	<b>yízhènzl</b> (n)	<i>a period of time, spell</i>
等	<b>děng</b> (v)	<i>wait</i>
唐	<b>Táng</b> (N)	<i>the Tang Dynasty (AD 618–907)</i>
诗 (首)	<b>shī</b> (n) [shǒu]	<i>poem</i>
选	<b>xuǎn</b> (v)	<i>to choose</i>
好几	<b>hǎo jǐ</b> (adj.)	<i>a good many</i>
准备	<b>zhǔnbèi</b> (v)	<i>to prepare</i>
朗诵	<b>lǎngsòng</b> (v)	<i>to recite, read about with expression</i>
描写	<b>miáoxiě</b> (v)	<i>to describe</i>
逗	<b>dòu</b> (adj.)	<i>funny</i>
回国	<b>huí guó</b> (v-o)	<i>to return to your own country</i>
经过	<b>Jīngguò</b> (v)	<i>to go through, pass</i>
莫斯科	<b>Mósīkē</b> (N)	<i>Moscow</i>
国际饭店	<b>Guójí Fàndiàn</b> (N)	<i>the International Hotel</i>
中国旅行社	<b>Zhōngguó Lǚxíngshè</b> (N)	<i>China Travel Service</i>
订	<b>dìng</b> (v)	<i>to book, reserve, subscribe to</i>
帮忙	<b>bāng máng</b> (v-o)	<i>to help, do a favour</i>
不少	<b>bù shǎo</b>	<i>quite a bit, quite a few</i>
祝	<b>zhù</b> (v)	<i>to offer good wishes</i>
愉快	<b>yúkuài</b> (adj.)	<i>happy, pleased</i>

## i On trains

In China one does not buy a single or return ticket to X but asks for a certain type of seat on a certain number train on a certain day to X! In general, trains with one or two figure numbers are express, those with three figures semi-fast or ordinary stopping trains. The ordinary method of notation (see 2.11) is used when expressing train numbers of 100 or less, numbers over 100 may be expressed as three individual digits. To avoid possible confusion with *qī* ('seven'), *yāo* is used instead of *yī* ('one') as in the example in the dialogue or in telephone numbers. On long distance trains (and I mean long distance) you can travel soft or hard sleeper or hard seat. On shorter distance main routes you can travel soft or hard seat, on 'minor' routes hard seat only. Soft sleepers are arranged in small compartments of four (two-up two-down). Hard sleepers are arranged in blocks of six (two *shàngpù*, two *zhōngpù* and two *xiàpù*) in huge compartments. Each block of six has its own Thermos flask of hot water (as does each soft sleeper compartment) which is filled at intervals by the *chéngwùyuán* ('train attendant') responsible for that part of the train. Everybody in hard class usually brings her/his own tea-cup with lid and her/his own supply of tea-leaves. (Cups with lids are normally provided free of charge in soft class.) There is usually a *cānchē* ('restaurant car') on all long- and medium-distance trains where you can generally get a reasonably good meal. Try the cardboard boxes of *kuàicān* ('fast food'). Some people like to bring their own chopsticks to use. When you start your journey, the loudspeakers announce that your new life on the train is about to begin and lists the various rules and regulations you should adhere to make the journey a happy one. Early to bed, early to rise are the general principles to be observed on Chinese trains. It has hitherto been impossible to buy return tickets in China so as soon as you get to a place you have to start thinking of how and when you are going to get out of it! Travelling on Chinese trains is well worth the effort however and a way of experiencing Chinese society in miniature.

## Zhengs of all sorts

As in most socialist countries, IDs of all kinds are *de rigueur* in China. All Chinese have a *gōngzuòzhèng* ('work ID card'), foreign experts have a *zhuānjiāzhèng* ('expert's ID card'), students have a *xuéshēngzhèng* ('student card') and so on. These cards entitle the bearer to special privileges or allow her/him access to places which would otherwise be barred to her/him. Chinese visiting foreign friends or colleagues who live in foreigners' compounds or hotels

have to show their *gōngzuòzhèng* and possibly fill out a form saying whom they are going to visit, his/her room number, etc. before being allowed in by their Chinese compatriots at the door or gate. Handled sensitively, this issue is not quite as formidable as it appears. You can always go to the main door/gate of your building to meet your friends to save them any embarrassment. The Chinese authorities, for their part, claim it is to ensure the safety of their foreign guests and that of their possessions.

It used to be the case that a *yōudàizhèng* ('superior treatment card') entitled the bearer to pay in *rénmínbì* (RMB) where the ordinary foreigner would normally have been required to pay in FEC (foreign exchange certificates – *wàihuiquàn\** in Chinese), e.g. for accommodation, food and entertainment in some hotels and 'official' guest-houses, taxi fares and goods purchased in Friendship Stores (*Yōuyì Shāngdiàn*) or hotels. Foreign experts and teachers recruited by Chinese *dānwèi* as well as foreign students sponsored by the Chinese government were given *yōudàizhèng*. When FEC were abolished in 1994, *yōudàizhèng* were no longer required as everything could be paid for in *rénmínbì*. A foreign expert's ID may still entitle her/him to some discounts.

\* Most people appear to pronounce this *wàihuijuàn*.

## Grammar

### 1 More on the comparative

We have already met the comparative in 7.5 and again in 8.3. To express that 'A is the same as B' we say *A gēn B yíyàng*. In the text *piàojià gēn Zhōngguórén yíyàng* stands for *piàojià gēn Zhōngguórén de piàojià yíyàng* 'The price is the same as for Chinese'. This can be taken a step further using the formula:

'A is as adjective as B',	<i>A gēn B yíyàng adjective:</i>
<i>A gēn B yíyàng guì</i>	'A is as expensive as B'.
<i>Niúròu gēn yú yíyàng guì</i>	'Beef is as expensive as fish'.

#### Exercise 19.1

Write out the following sentences in characters and then translate them into English. Look up any characters you don't know in the index.

- 1 *Yìngwò gēn ruǎnwò yíyàng ma?*  
*Bù yíyàng, ruǎnwò bǐ yìngwò guì duōle.*

- 2 *Yǐngwò gēn yìngzuò yǒu shénme bù yíyàng?*  
*Yǐngzuò bǐ yìngwò piányi de duō.*
- 3 *Nǐ gēn tā yíyàng bù xǐhuan tīng yīnyuè ma?*  
*Bù, wǒ hěn xǐhuan tīng gǔdiǎn yīnyuè.*
- 4 *Wǒ gēn wǒ de wèihūnqī* (未婚妻 fiancée) *yíyàng làngmàn,*  
*dōu xǐhuan xiě shī.*
- 5 *Zài Ōuzhōu Riběn diànsì gēn zài Zhōngguó yíyàng nán mǎi ma?*

## 2 Percentages and fractions

As stated in 15.1, the Chinese move from the general to the particular, so in line with this principle instead of saying 75%, the Chinese say 100 parts classical possessive marker *zhī* 75, i.e. *bǎifēn zhī qīshíwǔ*. Sixty per cent would be *bǎifēn zhī liùshí* and so on.

To say something is 10% more expensive than something else the adjective for ‘expensive’ *guì* is placed in front of the percentage: *guì bǎifēn zhī shí* so ‘this video-recorder is 20% more expensive than that one’ would be:

*Zhè tái lùxiàngjī bǐ nà tái (lùxiàngjī) guì bǎifēn zhī èrshí.*  
‘How many per cent’ is expressed as *bǎifēn zhī duōshao*?

Fractions work in exactly the same way. Three quarters ( $\frac{3}{4}$ ) is expressed as four parts *zhī* three, i.e. *sìfēn zhī sān*;  $\frac{7}{8}$  *bāfēn zhī qī*, etc. ‘How many eighths’ would therefore be *bāfēn zhī jǐ* (not *duōshao* as the answer has to be less than ten.)

If you want to say something is ‘twice as expensive as something else’ the formula is *A bǐ B guì yí bèi*, where *bèi* 倍 means ‘times or -fold’.

### Exercise 19.2

Write out each sentence in characters including translating the percentage, fraction or -fold contained in the brackets:

*Wàiguórén de piàojià bǐ Zhōngguórén guì (75%).*

→ 外国人的票价比中国人贵百分之七十五。

- 1 *Guójì Fàndiàn bǐ Běijīng Fàndiàn guì (50%).*
- 2 *Shuǐdiànfei bǐ qùnián guì (10%).*
- 3 *Xiàpù bǐ shàngpù guì (20%).*
- 4 *Dǎ chángtú diànhuà bǐ dǎ diànbào guì bǎifēn zhī duōshao?*  
*Guì (200%).*
- 5 *Riběn yǐfu bǐ Zhōngguó yǐfu guì (300%).*

- 6 Píngguō bù hǎo chī, wǒ zhī chī le (1/4).
- 7 Wàiguó yān hǎo chōu (抽 to smoke), zhè bāo yǐjīng chōu le (2/3).
- 8 Yīnyuèhuì de piào zuótān mài le (7/8).
- 9 Guóchǎn diànsì bǐ wàiguó diànsì piányi (one-fold).
- 10 Zài Zhōngguó Měiguó zhuānjiā bǐ Yīngguó zhuānjiā duō (ten-fold).

### 3 Use of ér

Ér 而 is another reminder of how much classical Chinese is contained in the modern language. It is not just used by educated people either, which shows how deeply engrained it is in the linguistic memories of the Chinese. Ér is a conjunction roughly meaning ‘and’ if the sentence is made up of two complementary halves and ‘but’, ‘whereas’ if they are contrasting. It combines with *qiě* 且 to mean ‘moreover’ and in this context often appears with *bùdàn* 不但 to form a pair of conjunctions, *viz.* *bùdàn...érqiě* ‘not only...but also...’: *Tā bùdàn méi lái érqiě hái găosu wǒ tā yōngyuăn bú huì zài lái* ‘Not only did she not come but she also told me that she would never come again’.

### 4 More on yòu

We met the construction *yòu...yòu* in 5.11 meaning ‘both...and...’. The most common meaning for *yòu* (又) is ‘again’ but it is to be distinguished from *zài* (再) in that *yòu* means ‘again’ in the past, whereas *zài* means ‘again’ in the present or future. It may be useful to memorize the following sentences:

*Tā zuótān lái le. Tā jīntān yòu lái le. Tā shuō tā míngtiān zài lái* She came yesterday. She came again today. She says she’s coming again tomorrow’. In the text, however, *yòu* has yet another meaning of ‘in addition’.

*Zhōngqiūjié nà tiān wǎnshàng zài Tàishān dǐng shàng kàn rìluò, yòu zài yuèguāng xià chī yuèbǐng.*

It can also be translated as something like ‘but’, ‘yet’, and ‘at the same time’ in a sentence where it links two contradictory states of mind:

*Wǒ yào chū qu, yòu pà xià yǔ* ‘I want to go out but I’m afraid it’s going to rain’.

*Wǒ ài nǐ, yòu hèn nǐ* ‘I love and hate you at the same time’.

## 5 Extensions of place words

*Zài yuèguāng xià* ‘Beneath the light of the moon’ is to be taken literally, but what about: *Zài nǐ bāngzhù zhī* (classical possessive marker) *xià*? Does it literally mean ‘underneath your help’? Of course not, it is just the Chinese way of saying ‘with your help’. Another good example of this is: *Zài gòngchǎndǎng de lǐngdǎo* (leadership) (*zhī*) *xià* ‘Under the leadership of the Communist Party’. If we replace *xià* with *zhōng* we may get a sentence such as *wǒmen péngyou zhī zhōng* (之中) or *wǒmen péngyou zhī jiān* (之间), both of which mean ‘between or amongst friends’.

## 6 Use of *gòu*

*Gòu* (够) literally means ‘sufficient’ or ‘enough’ but it is combined with a wealth of adjectives or nouns to form expressive colloquial phrases such as:

<i>gòugé</i>	‘up to standard’
<i>gòu péngyou</i>	‘really friendly’
<i>gòu yìsi</i>	‘fascinating’
<i>gòuqìang</i>	‘hard to bear, terrible’.

Here *gòu làngmàn* means ‘really romantic’.

## 7 To sit, to drive, to sit astride

The Chinese language is much more precise than is English when it comes to expressing how or by what form of transport one goes somewhere. One sits (*zuò*) in a car, bus, train, plane or boat:

<i>zuò</i> (坐) <i>qìchē</i> (汽车)	‘by car’ (Lit. steam vehicle)
<i>zuò gōnggòngqìchē</i> (公共汽车)	‘by bus’ (Lit. public together steam vehicle)
<i>zuò fēijī</i> (飞机)	‘by plane’ (Lit. fly machine)
<i>zuò chuán</i> (船)	‘by boat’

but ‘sits astride’ a bicycle, a horse or a motorbike:

<i>qí</i> (骑) <i>zìxíngchē</i> (自行车)	‘by bicycle’ (Lit. self-propelling machine)
<i>qì mǎ</i> (马)	‘on horseback’
<i>qí mótuōchē</i> (摩托车)	‘on a motorbike’.

Note the horse radical (马) employed in the character for *qí*. *Qí* (奇) is used to provide the phonetic element for the character as

a whole. We have met the verb *kāi* (开) meaning ‘to open’ (as of doors) or ‘to turn on’ (as of lights, radios, etc.). The same verb also means ‘to drive’ as of cars, trains, planes and buses.

### Exercise 19.3

Choose the correct verb from *zuò*, *qí* and *kāi* to fill the blank in each sentence and then write out the whole sentence in characters.

*Nǐ huì bu hui \_\_\_\_\_ mǎ? → 你会不会骑马?*

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ *huōchē bì* \_\_\_\_\_ *gōnggòngqichē kuài duō le.*
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ *feījī de rén gōngzī hěn gāo.*
- 3 *Zài Zhōngguó* \_\_\_\_\_ *zixíngchē de rén fēicháng duō.*
- 4 *Yōude rén xǐhuān* \_\_\_\_\_ *mótúōchē yīnwei hěn zìyóu* (自由  
‘free/freedom’)
- 5 *Yīngguórén shíqī suì cái kěyǐ* \_\_\_\_\_ *chē.*

## 8 *Zhēn dòu nǐmen*

Not all colloquial expressions are grammatical as can be seen from the above example. The normal word order has been reversed, giving a fresher, more casual effect, or the impression that the sentence was perhaps an afterthought. Listen out for such expressions and learn them.

## 9 Foreign names (II)

Foreign names can be expressed in Chinese in two principal ways, *viz.* by rendering the sounds with disregard to the meaning; by translating the meaning. *Mòsikē* (莫斯科) ‘Moscow’ falls into the first of these categories as ‘no then science’ does not appear to have a great deal of significance.

*Niújīn* (牛津) ‘Oxford’ on the other hand, falls into the second category as *niú* (‘ox’) and *jīn* (‘ford’) precisely express the meaning of the English Ox-ford. Of course there are further refinements in that when rendering the sounds, care can be taken to find characters with a ‘good’ meaning (if that is the intention of course!). Thus Hyde Park is translated as *Hǎi* (海) *dé* (德) *gōngyuán* (公园) ‘Sea virtue public enclosure’ (park), but it could have been translated as *Hài* (害) *dé* (德) *gōngyuán* ‘Harm(s) virtue park’.

Mozambique was originally translated into Chinese as *Mò* (莫) *sān* (三) *bí* (鼻) *jǐ* (给) ‘No three nose(s) provide’ but was later changed to *Mò* (莫) *sāng* (桑) *bí* (比) *kè* (克) ‘No mulberry tree

compare overcome' which was obviously an improvement as *sāng* has poetic overtones which I won't go into here and *kè* is suitably strong.

Kennedy fared much worse. In Chinese *xiàngshēng* ('cross talk') his name was translated as *kěn* (啃) *ní* (泥) *de* (的) 'gnaw mud person' but officialdom saw fit to change it to *Kěn* (肯) *ní* (尼) *dí* (迪) 'willing Buddhist nun enlighten'!

### Exercise 19.4

Translate the following Chinese renderings of foreign words back into English by looking at the pronunciation and/or finding out the meaning in a Chinese–English dictionary.

e.g. 罗马尼亚 *Luómǎniyà* → Romania.

- 1 热狗包 *règōubāo*.
- 2 汉堡牛肉包 *hàn'bǎoniúròubāo*.
- 3 可口可乐 *kěkǒukělè*.
- 4 雅马哈 *Yā* \_\_\_\_.
- 5 加拿大 *Jiānádà*.
- 6 古巴 *Gǔbā*.
- 7 剑桥 *Jiànqiáo*.
- 8 华沙 *Huáshā*.
- 9 华盛顿 *Huáshèngdūn*.
- 10 撒切尔夫人 *Sāqī'ér* *fūrén*.

### Exercise 19.5

Translate the following sentences into colloquial English:

- 1 中国的中秋节是阴历 (*yīnlì* 'lunar calendar') 八月十五日。那天晚上大家要看月亮 (*yuèliàng* 'the moon')、吃月饼。
- 2 唐诗很有名 (*yǒu míng* 'to be famous') 也很有意思，都值得学中文的人看一看。
- 3 跟朋友一起去买东西一定很好玩(儿)。
- 4 您贵姓？您叫什么名字？我都要记下来好吗？
- 5 要是你有学生证和优待证，火车票价跟中国人一样，同时 (*tóngshí* 'moreover') 也可以付人民币。

## i On festivals and mooncakes

Prior to 1949, the Chinese followed the lunar calendar which is said to have been in existence for almost 4000 years and is still used to calculate China's traditional festivals. The most important ones are: 春节 *Chūnjié* 'the Spring Festival' or 'Lunar New Year' which falls on the first day of the first lunar month. The Lunar New Year itself may

occur as early as 21 January and as late as 21 February. It is the major festival in China when most Chinese have at least 3–4 days' holiday and everybody tries to get back home to celebrate. (Avoid travelling in China at this time if possible.) Couplets wishing the household happiness, prosperity and longevity are written in the old way, i.e. vertically not horizontally, on red paper and pasted on either side of the door. The children normally get new clothes, everybody consumes vast quantities of food (noodles at midnight on New Year's Eve ensure long life). Firecrackers which ensure a deafening sound are set off, mainly on New Year's Eve and on New Year's Day supposedly to warn off evil spirits, hence the need for a big noise.

**元宵节** *Yuánxiāo jié* 'the Lantern Festival' or 'the Feast of the First Full Moon' falls on the 15th day of the first lunar month. People (or more usually work-units in the cities) make lanterns (灯 *dēng*) which are then exhibited at colourful lantern fairs, usually held in a park. The lanterns were apparently used as torches to help people see the good spirits which were flying in the sky by the light of the first full moon. Dragon dances and lion dances are performed to the noisy accompaniment of gongs and drums. *Yuánxiāo* are the special food associated with the Lantern Festival. They are small round dumplings made of glutinous rice, usually with a sweet filling. Their roundness symbolizes the full moon.

**清明节** *Qīngmíng jié* 'the Pure Brightness Festival' falls during the first few days of the third lunar month. This is the day on which the Chinese traditionally 'sweep' the graves of their dead and pay them their respects. This used to involve making offerings of food and wine, burning incense, candles and paper money. This may still happen in the countryside but people in the towns generally confine themselves to tidying up the graves and laying flowers (white is for mourning in China, so don't give people white flowers).

**端午节** *Duānwǔ jié* 'the Dragon Boat Festival' falls on the fifth day of the fifth lunar month and commemorates 屈原 *Qū Yuán* a great poet and patriot of the state of Chu during the Warring States period (475–221 bc). Qu Yuan's story is too long to be told here. Why not find it out for yourself? Why do the Chinese hold dragon boat races and eat 粽子 *zòngzi* (pyramid shaped dumplings made of glutinous rice wrapped in bamboo or reed leaves) on *Duānwǔ jié*?

**中秋节** *Zhōngqiū jié* 'the Mid-Autumn Festival' falls on the 15th day of the eighth lunar month. People traditionally admire the full moon which is said to be at its brightest and clearest on this day of the year, and eat mooncakes 月饼 *yuèbǐng*, special pastries with savoury or sweet fillings of various kinds. Find out who or what lives on the

moon in Chinese mythology. Who was Cháng'é (嫦娥) and why did she fly to the moon?

After the founding of the People's Republic in 1949, the solar calendar was adopted in China. The main holidays according to the solar calendar are:

元旦	<i>Yuándàn</i> 'New Year's Day'
国际劳动妇女节	<i>Guójí Láodòng Fùnǚjié</i> 'International Working Women's Day' (8 March)
国际劳动节	<i>Guójí Láodòngjié</i> 'International Labour Day' (1 May)
青年节	<i>Qīngniánjié</i> 'Youth Day' (4 May)
国际儿童节	<i>Guójí Értóngjié</i> 'International Children's Day' (1 June)
	(1 July is the Anniversary of the Founding of the Communist Party of China but there is no set phrase for it with -jié)
建军节	<i>Jiànjūnjié</i> 'Anniversary of the Founding of the People's Liberation Army' (1 August)
国庆节	<i>Guóqìngjié</i> 'National Day' (1 October)



# change money?

**In this chapter you will learn**

- how to change money
- how to open an account in China
- about exchange rates
- how to emphasize that something has to be done

► The ordinary foreigner used to find him or herself conducting all his or her money matters through the Bank of China (*Zhōngguó Yínháng*).

凡是外国人存钱、取钱、换钱都要通过中国银行。熊先生去北京语言学院的中国银行分行打听一下情况。

**熊 营业员甲** 请问一下，活期存款和定期存款有什么不一样？  
活期存款和定期存款样式不同，利率也不同。定期的利息当然比活期要高得多。

**熊 营业员甲** 定期存款还有一些什么规定？  
定期存款有三个月的，有半年的，也有一、两年的，利(息)率都不同。存的时间越长，利息越高。如果取钱的时候存钱的时间没到期，那就只能按照活期利息计算。

**熊 营业员甲** 啊，我明白了，跟英国大同小异。在中国可以开一个外币帐户吗？  
当然可以。这样就可以从国外直接存钱，是英镑就存英镑，是美元就存美元，依此类推。

**熊 营业员甲** 那就很方便。我想打听一下，把旅行支票换成外汇券非在中国银行办理不可吗？

**熊 营业员甲** 对了，但是你尽管放心，基本上所有接待外国人的大旅馆都有中国银行的点儿，大城市的友谊商店里也有。

**熊 营业员甲** 牌价一样吗？  
不管你在什么地方换，牌价都是一模一样的，你甭操心了。别忘了，一定要把外汇兑换证明好好儿保存，千万别丢了，否则出境的时候不能把剩下来的人民币再换成外汇。

**熊 营业员甲** 现在换钱可以吗？  
可以。请先填这张取钱表。护照带来了吗？

**熊 营业员甲** 哟呀，真没想到，怎么办？  
护照号码还记得吗？

**熊 营业员甲** 还记得。  
那就算了。按规定换钱的时候应该出示护照，但是除非我们怀疑有什么问题，想对照本人的签字，填上护照号码就行了。(接过熊先生填好的表) 你是十一号(给他一个号码牌) 请等一会儿吧。

**营业员乙** 十一号。  
欸，在这儿呢。

**熊 营业员乙** 请把钱点一点。  
(点好了) 正好。谢谢(对营业员甲说) 今天给你添了不少麻烦。

**营业员甲** 没什么麻烦。欢迎你再来。  
(熊出门的时候正好碰到另外一种换钱的!)

**换钱的** Change money?

Fánshì wàiguórén cún qián, qǔ qián, huàn qián dōu yào tōngguò Zhōngguó Yínháng. Xióng xiānsheng qù Běijīng Yúyán Xuéyuàn de Zhōngguó Yínháng fēnháng dǎtīng yíxià qíngkuāng.

**Xióng**

Qǐng wèn yíxià, huóqí cúnkuǎn hé dìngqī cúnkuǎn yǒu shénme bù yíyàng?

**Yíngyèyuán Jiǎ**

Huóqī cúnkuǎn hé dìngqī cúnkuǎn yàngshì bù tóng, lìlù yě bù tóng. Dìngqī de lìxī dāngrán bì huóqī yào gāo de duō

**Xióng**

Dìngqī cúnkuǎn hái yǒu yíxiē shénme guīdīng? Dìngqī cúnkuǎn yǒu sān ge yuè dē, yǒu bànnián dē, yě yǒu yì, liǎng nián dē, lì(xī)lù dōu bù tóng. Cún dē shíjiān yuè cháng, lìxī yuè gāo. Rúguǒ qū qián dē shíhou cún qián dē shíjiān méi dàoqī, nà jiù zhǐ néng ànzhào huóqī lìxī jìsuàn.

**Xióng**

À, wǒ míngbai le, gēn Yingguó dàtóng-xiāoyi. Zài Zhōngguó kěyǐ kāi yí ge wàibì zhànghù ma?

**Yíngyèyuán Jiǎ**

Dāngrán kěyǐ. Zhèyàng jiù kěyǐ cóng guówài zhījīe cún qián, shì Yingbàng jiù cún Yingbàng, shì Měiyuán jiù cún Měiyuán, yīcǐ lèituī.

**Xióng**

Nà jiù hěn fāngbiàn. Wǒ xiǎng dǎtīng yíxià, bǎ lǚxíng zhīpiào huàn chéng wàihuiquàn fēi zài Zhōngguó Yínháng bànlǐ bùkě ma?

**Yíngyèyuán Jiǎ**

Duile, dànshi nǐ jǐnguǎn fàng xīn, jīběnshang suǒyǒu jiēdài wàiguórén dē lǚguǎn dōu yǒu Zhōngguó Yínháng dē diǎnr, dà chéngshì dē Yōuyì Shāngdiàn lǐ yě yǒu.

**Xióng**

Páijià yíyàng ma?

**Yíngyèyuán Jiǎ**

Bùguǎn nǐ zài shénme difang huàn, páijià dōu shì yímó-yíyàng dē, nǐ bēng cǎo xīn le. Bié wàng le, yídīng yào bǎ wàihui duìhuàn zhèngmíng hǎohāor bǎocún, qiānwàn bié diū le, fǒuzé chūjing dē shíhou bù néng bǎ shèng xiàilai dē rénmínbi zài huàn chéng wàihui.

**Xióng**

Xiànzài huàn qián kěyǐ ma?

**Yíngyèyuán Jiǎ**

Kěyǐ. Qǐng xiān tián zhè zhāng qǔqiánbiǎo. Hùzhào dài lai le ma?

**Xióng**

Āiyā, zhēn méi xiǎng dào, zěnmē bàn?

**Yíngyèyuán Jiǎ**

Hùzhào hàomǎ hái jídē ma?

**Xióng**

Hái jídē.

**Yíngyèyuán Jiǎ**

Nà jiù suàn le. Àn guīdīng huàn qián dē shíhou yīnggāi chūshì hùzhào, dànshi chúfēi wǒmen huáiyí yǒu shénme wèntí, xiǎng duizhào běnrén dē qiān zì, tián shàng hùzhào hàomǎ jiù xíng le.

(Jiē guò Xióng xiānshèng tián hǎo de biǎo) Nǐ shì shíyī hào. (Gěi tā yí ge hàomǎ pái) Qǐng děng yíhuír ba.

Shíyī hào.

Èi, zài zhèr ne.

Qǐng bǎ qián diǎnyidiǎn.

(Diǎn hǎo le) Zhèng hǎo. Xièxie. (Duì yíngyèyuán Jiǎ shuō) Jǐntiān gěi nǐ tiān le bù shǎo máfan.

Méi shénme máfan. Huānyíng nǐ zài lái. (Xióng chū mén de shíhou zhèng hǎo pèng dào lìngwài yì zhǒng huàn qián de)

Change money?

**Yíngyèyuán Yí**

**Xióng**

**Yíngyèyuán Yí**

**Xióng**

**Yíngyèyuán Jiǎ**

**Huàn qián de**

**凡是**

fánshì (adv.) *every, any, all*

**存钱**

cún qián (v-o) *deposit money*

**取钱**

qǔ qián (v-o) *withdraw money*

**换钱**

huàn qián (v-o) *change money*

**通过**

tōngguò (v) *to pass through*

**中国银行**

Zhōngguó Yínháng (N) *Bank of China*

**分行**

fēnháng (n) *branch (bank)*

**打听**

dǎtīng (v) *to enquire*

**活期存款**

huóqī cúnkuǎn (n) *current account*

**定期存款**

dìngqī cúnkuǎn (n) *deposit account*

**一样**

yíyàng (adj.) *the same, alike*

**样式**

yàngshì (n) *form, pattern*

**不同**

bù tóng (adj.) *different*

**利(息)率**

lì(xī)lǜ (n) *rate of interest*

**利息**

lìxī (n) *interest*

**规定**

guīdìng (n) *rule, regulation*

**到期**

dàiqī (v-o) *become due, expire*

**计算**

jísuàn (v) *to count, calculate*

**明白**

míngbai (v; adj.) *to understand; clear*

**大同小异**

dàtóng-xiǎoyì (adj.) *similar in major areas but different on minor points*

**外币**

wàibì (n) *foreign currency*

**帐户**

zhànghù (n) *account*

**国外**

guójūai (adj.) *overseas, abroad*

**直接**

zhíjìe (adj.; adv.) *direct, directly*

**英镑**

Yīngbàng (n) *pound Sterling*

**美元**

Měiyuán (n) *US dollar*

**依此类推**

yīcǐ lèitui *others can be deduced similarly*

**方便**

fāngbiàn (adj.) *convenient*

旅行支票	<b>lǚxíng zhīpiào</b> (n)	<i>traveller's cheque</i>
V + 成 外汇 (券)	<b>V + chéng wàihuì(quàn)</b> (n)	<i>see 20.2 foreign exchange (certificate) (FECs abolished in 1994)</i>
非...不可 办理	<b>fēi ... bùkě bànli (v)</b>	<i>see 20.3 to conduct, handle, transact</i>
尽管	<b>jǐnguǎn</b> (adv.; conj.)	<i>feel free to; even though, despite</i>
基本 (上)	<b>jīběn (shang)</b> (adj.)	<i>basic(ally)</i>
所有	<b>suǒyǒu (de)</b> (adj.)	<i>all</i>
接待	<b>jiēdài (v)</b>	<i>to receive, admit</i>
点儿	<b>diǎnr (n coll.)</b>	<i>spot, small branch</i>
城市	<b>chéngshì (n)</b>	<i>city, town</i>
友谊商店	<b>Yǒuyì Shāngdiàn (N)</b>	<i>Friendship Store</i>
牌价	<b>páijia (n)</b>	<i>market quotation (exchange rate)</i>
不管...都/也	<b>bùguǎn ... dōu/yě</b>	<i>see 20.6</i>
一模一样	<b>yìmú-yíyàng</b>	<i>exactly alike</i>
甬	<b>béng (v)</b>	<i>bú yòng, 'needn't' (coll.)</i>
操心	<b>cāo xīn (v-o)</b>	<i>to worry about</i>
忘(记)	<b>wàng (jì) (v)</b>	<i>to forget</i>
兑换	<b>duihuàn (v)</b>	<i>to exchange</i>
证明	<b>zhèngmíng (n; v)</b>	<i>certificate; to prove</i>
保存	<b>bǎocún (v)</b>	<i>to keep, preserve</i>
千万	<b>qiānwàn (adv.)</b>	<i>whatever you do (Lit. ten million)</i>
丢	<b>diū (v)</b>	<i>to lose</i>
否则	<b>fǒuzé (conj.)</b>	<i>otherwise, or else</i>
出境	<b>chūjìng (v-o)</b>	<i>leave the country</i>
取钱表	<b>qǔqiánbiǎo (n)</b>	<i>cash withdrawal form</i>
护照	<b>hùzhào (n)</b>	<i>passport</i>
带	<b>dài (v)</b>	<i>to bring, take</i>
哎呀	<b>āiyā (interj.)</b>	<i>oh dear (expressing surprise)</i>
怎么办?	<b>zěnme bàn?</b>	<i>what's to be done?</i>
号码	<b>hàomǎ (n)</b>	<i>number</i>
记得	<b>jìde (v)</b>	<i>to remember</i>
算了	<b>suàn le</b>	<i>forget it, let it pass</i>
出示	<b>chūshì (v)</b>	<i>to show, produce</i>
除非	<b>chúfēi (conj.)</b>	<i>unless (see 20.7)</i>
怀疑	<b>huáiyí (v)</b>	<i>to suspect</i>
问题	<b>wèntí (n)</b>	<i>question, problem</i>

对照	<b>dúizhào</b> (v)	<i>to compare</i>
本人	<b>běnrén</b> (n)	<i>in person, oneself</i>
签字	<b>qiān zì</b> (v-o; n)	<i>to sign; signature</i>
牌	<b>pái</b> (n)	<i>plate (here disc); brand; card</i>
欸	<b>èi</b> (interj.)	<i>yes (verbal response to enquiry)</i>
点	<b>diǎn</b> (v)	<i>to check, count (e.g. money)</i>
正好	<b>zhènghǎo</b> (adv.; v)	<i>just right; to happen to</i>
碰到	<b>pèng (dào) (v)</b>	<i>to bump (into)</i>
另外	<b>lìng(wài) (adj.; adv.)</b>	<i>another; separately</i>

## Grammar

### 1 *Fánshì . . . dōu*

One way of expressing that everyone of a certain category of person, creature or inanimate object possesses the same kind of characteristic is to use the construction: *Fánshì* + identification of group + *dōu* ('all') + characteristic:

*Fánshì xiǎoháir dōu xǐhuan chī táng* 'All children like eating sweets'.

*Fánshì Yídàlì júzǐ dōu hěn tián* 'All Italian tangerines are very sweet'.

In the text we have *Fánshì wàiguórén . . . dōu yào tōngguò Zhōngguó Yínháng* 'All foreigners . . . have to go through the Bank of China'.

### 2 Verb + *chéng*

When *chéng* (成) ('to become') is attached to certain verbs such as *xiě* (写) 'write', *fānyì* (翻译) 'translate', *niàn* (念) 'to read aloud', *biàn* (变) 'to change' or 'transform' and *huàn* (换) 'to exchange' (or change clothes, buses, money), it functions like a resultative verb ending (see 5.1). It differs from resultative verb endings like *-hǎo*, *wán*, etc. in that it must be followed by a noun which shows what the subject or object has turned into or become. This construction is often to be found together with *bǎ* (把) but not invariably so, as can be seen from the second example:

*Wǒ bǎ gǔshi fānyì chéng Xībānyáwén* 'I translated the story into Spanish'.

Tā màn mānr de biàn chéng yí ge hǎo rén ‘He slowly turned into a good person’.

Lǎoshī bǎ nuǎnhuo de ‘huó’ niàn chéng ‘hé’. ‘The teacher read the “huó” in “nuǎnhuo” as “he”’ . . . bǎ lǚxíng zhīpiào huàn chéng wàihuiquàn . . . ‘to change traveller’s cheques into FEC’.

### Exercise 20.1

Choose a suitable verb to fill the blank in each sentence. Each verb to be used once only. Choose from *biàn*, *fānyì*, *huàn*, *niàn* and *xiě*.

- 1 Xuésheng niàn kèwén (text) de shíhou bǎ ‘dàifu’ \_\_\_\_ chéng ‘dàfu’.
- 2 Kuài sǐ (die) de shíhou, hěn duō rén yào gǎnkuài (hastily) \_\_\_\_ chéng hǎo rén!
- 3 Bǎ kèwén \_\_\_\_ chéng Yīngwén róngyì bu róngyì?
- 4 Lǎoshī (teacher) bìng méi yǒu zhùyì, zài hēibǎn (blackboard) shàng bǎ ‘hái’ zì \_\_\_\_ chéng ‘bù’ zì.
- 5 Wǒ yào bǎ mǎkè (DM) \_\_\_\_ chéng Rìyuán (yen).

### 3 Fēi verb . . . bùkě

This is an emphatic expression meaning ‘must’, ‘have to’. *Fēi* comes from classical Chinese and means *bú shì* (不是), *bùkě* is a shortened form of *bù kěyǐ* ‘not permissible’ so the whole phrase means ‘not to do the action of the verb is not permissible’!

Wǒ fēi qù bùkě ‘I absolutely have to go’.

Tā fēi yào jié hūn bùkě ‘She insists on getting married’.

. . . fēi zài Zhōngguó Yínháng bànlì bùkě ma? ‘Does (it) have to be done (transacted) at the Bank of China?’.

### 4 Adjective/noun + *shang*

A neat and easy way of forming an adverb from adjectives, such as *jīběn* (基本) ‘basic’ and nouns such as *shíjì* (实际) ‘reality’ is simply to add *-shang* (上) so that *jīběnshang* becomes ‘basically’ and *shíjíshang* becomes ‘in reality’. Other examples are:

<i>yishùshang</i> (艺术上)	‘artistically’
<i>zhèngzhìshang</i> (政治上)	‘politically’
<i>jīngjìshang</i> (经济上)	‘economically’
<i>lìlùnshang</i> (理论上)	‘theoretically’
<i>shíshíshang</i> (事实上)	‘in actual fact’ (an alternative to <i>shíjíshang</i> )
<i>shēnghuóshang</i> (生活上)	‘in life’
<i>lìshíshang</i> (历史上)	‘historically’

## 5 All and all

There are several ways of expressing ‘all’ in Chinese and it is important to distinguish their different grammatical functions. *Dōu* is an adverb and therefore precedes the verb, *suōyōu (de)* is an adjective and precedes the noun it is referring to and *yíqiè* is a noun:

*Tāmen dōu bù xǐhuan tā* ‘None of them likes him’.

*Suōyōu de rén bù xǐhuan tā* ‘Nobody likes him’ (Lit. all people don’t like him).

*Tāmen bù xǐhuan yíqiè* ‘They like nothing’ (Lit. they not like all).

Chinese would be more likely to say, however, *Tāmen yíqiè dōu bù xǐhuan* (see 21.11). It sounds so much better balanced and in the end that’s what distinguishes the beginner from a fluent speaker of the language.

## 6 Bùguǎn . . . dōu/yě

*Guǎn* has several meanings but two of its principal meanings as a verb are ‘to be in charge of / to run’ and ‘to bother about’ or ‘to mind’: *Tā guǎn fángzì* ‘He’s in charge of the house (or housing)’, *Wǒ guǎn háizi* ‘I’m in charge of the children’, *Nǐ bié guǎn wǒ!* ‘Don’t bother about me!’. Taking this one step further, *bùguǎn* can be used as a verb to express the idea of ‘regardless of’, ‘no matter’ (what, how, etc.). *Bùguǎn zěnmeyàng* ‘no matter what, in any case’.

Expanded into full sentences it expresses the idea that no matter what happens in the first clause, the state of affairs in the second clause will continue to be so:

*Bùguǎn nǐ qù bu qu, wǒ dōu/yě yào qù* ‘No matter whether you’re going or not, I am’.

*Bùguǎn jǐngchá* (‘police’) *zěnme mà* (‘curse’ berate) *shìwēizhě* (‘demonstrator’), *tāmen dōu bù chéngrèn cuòwu* (‘acknowledge one’s mistake’). Work this one out for yourself:

*Bùguǎn nǐ zài shénme difang huàn, páijià dōu shì yímó-yíyàng de . . .* ‘No matter where you change (money), the exchange rate (Lit. plate price) is exactly the same . . .’.

*Búlùn . . . (dōu)* and *wúlùn . . . (dōu)* are used very much like *bùguǎn . . . dōu* but are to be found more in the written language:

Búlùn xìngbié ('gender')*,* niánlíng ('age') 'regardless of sex and age'.

Wúlùn nánnǚ lǎoshào 'No matter whether male or female, young or old'. Wúlùn rúhé is a set adverbial phrase meaning 'whatever happens':

Wúlùn rúhé wǒmen yě yào jìxù ('continue') dìkàng ('resist').

## 7 Chúfēi . . . cái

As used in the text, *chúfēi* simply means 'unless' or 'only if' . . . *chúfēi* wǒmen huáiyí yǒu shénme wèntí ' . . . unless we suspect there is a problem . . .'. In a more complicated construction usually coupled with *cái*, it still has this meaning but you have to remember when translating that *cái* already contains the negative. The following examples will hopefully make this point clear:

*Chúfēi míngtiān chū tàiyang, wǒmen cái qù* 'We won't go unless it's sunny tomorrow' (*chū tàiyang* 'to be sunny' Lit. 'come out excessive' *yáng*).

*Chúfēi yǒu rén bāngmáng, wǒ cái zuò de wán* 'I can't finish (it) unless somebody helps (me)' or 'I can only finish (it) if somebody helps me'.

## 8 More on the nominalizer *de*

From 5.12 we see that *de* placed after a pronoun or adjective makes it into a noun. Likewise if *de* is placed after a verb-object the whole phrase becomes nominal:

<i>Huàn qián de</i> (rén 'understood')	'money changer' (person who changes money)
<i>Zuò fàn de</i>	'cook' (person who makes food)
<i>Hē jiǔ de</i>	'drinker' (person who drinks alcohol)
<i>Jiāo shù de</i>	'teacher' (person who teaches books)
<i>Kāi chē de</i>	'driver' (person who drives vehicles)

## i Waiting! More waiting! And yet more waiting!

A lot of time is spent in the big cities in China just waiting. Waiting to attract the attention of the shop assistant, waiting (not queuing note, although it is getting better) to buy tickets, waiting for one's number to come up at the bank (roughly four people check each transaction). This activity (waiting) ties in with my 3 Ps (see Chapter 16) but don't

always hope to be rewarded – the 3 Ms (see Chapter 14) sometimes prevail. Keep trying, or rather keep waiting!

## Change money?

It is no longer the case that ordinary foreigners have to conduct all their money matters through the Bank of China. It is now perfectly possible to hold accounts and to change traveller's cheques and so on at other banks as well.

Since US dollars are now readily available and accessible to many Chinese from banks in China, the black market in them has shrunk considerably. A black market doubtless still exists in some parts of China but it is totally illegal and you can get badly burnt.

### Exercise 20.2

Using the text, say whether the following statements are true or false.

- 1 Fánshì wàiguórén cún qián, qǔ qián, huàn qián dōu yào tōngguò Zhōngguó Yínháng.
- 2 Zài Zhōngguó, huóqī cúnkuǎn hé dìngqī cúnkuǎn lìlù yíyàng.
- 3 Dìngqī cúnkuǎn yǒu bù tóng shíjiān de.
- 4 Cún de shíjiān yuè cháng, lixī yuè gāo.
- 5 Zài Zhōngguó bù néng kāi yí ge wàibì zhàngzhù.
- 6 Bǎ lǚxíng zhīpiào huàn chéng wàihuìquàn fēi zài Zhōngguó Yínháng bànlǐ bùkě.
- 7 Dà chéngshì de Yōuyì Shāngdiàn méi yǒu Zhōngguó Yínháng de diānr.
- 8 Huàn qián de shíhou bù tóng de difang yǒu bù tóng de páijià.
- 9 Waihuì duìhuàn zhèngmíng diū le, chūjìng de shíhou jiù bù néng bǎ shèng xiàlai de rénmínbiì zài huàn chéng wàihuì.
- 10 Huàn qián de shíhou zuìhǎo bǎ hùzhào dài qu.
- 11 Zài Zhōngguó zhǐ yǒu yì zhǒng huàn qián de bànfǎ (method).

### Exercise 20.3

Put the following sentences into characters and then translate them into colloquial English. The relevant grammar points in the sentence are printed in bold.

- 1 Fánshì Zhōngguórén dōu xǐhuan chī Zhōngguó cài.
- 2 Fánshì zài Zhōngguó Yínháng huàn qián, páijià dōu yíyàng.
- 3 Huóqī cúnkuǎn hé dìngqī cúnkuǎn lixilù bù tóng.

- 4 Wǒ jīntiān fēi bǎ lǚxíng zhīpiào huàn chéng Měiyuán bùkě.
- 5 Qù guówài, fēi dài hùzhào bùkě, fǒuzé bù néng chūjìng.
- 6 Líshíshàng Yàzhōu (亚洲 ‘Asia’) hé Fēizhōu (非洲 ‘Africa’)  
hěn bù yíyàng.
- 7 Tā de diànhuà hàomǎ hái jìde ma? Qiānwàn bié wàng le  
míngtiān gěi tā dǎ diànhuà.
- 8 Ōuzhōu guójiā (国家 ‘country’) zhèngzhíshang dàtóng-  
xiǎoyì.
- 9 Bùguǎn nǐ qiān le zì méi you, wǒ dōu yào kàn hùzhào.
- 10 Bùguǎn yíngyèyuán diǎn le jǐ cì qián, tā yě yào diǎn yí cì.
- 11 Nǐ de yìsi shì chúfēi pèng dào tā cái rènshirènshi, duì bu  
duì?
- 12 Chúfēi yǒu guīdìng, wǒ cái zhèyàng bàn.

### Exercise 20.4

Translate the following sentences into *pinyin* and then into Chinese characters:

- 1 ‘I’ve caused you a lot of trouble today’. Yíngyèyuán: ‘Not at all, please come back tomorrow’.
- 2 She originally (本来 *běnlái*) wanted to go to the bank and change money today but she’s forgotten to bring the traveller’s cheques.
- 3 ‘What do you suspect him of?’ ‘I don’t know, but I don’t like the way he looks.’ (样子 *yàngzi*.)
- 4 The rate of interest (from) a deposit account (use 的) is much higher than that (from) a current account.
- 5 Those who drive shouldn’t drink. (Use v-o construction.)

# 21

## traveller's notes

旅途见闻 *lǚtú jiàn wén*

In this chapter you will learn

- how to express two actions going on simultaneously
- about Chinese proverbs
- about abbreviations in Chinese
- about similarities and dissimilarities
- how to express the passive
- when to use *chuān* and when to use *dài* for 'to wear'
- about *yīn* and *yáng*

► 在中国旅行可以了解中国人生活的各个方面，比如说中国人放假、出差等情况。

王永寿和史爱理正在杭州玩儿，坐在世界闻名的西湖旁边儿，一边吃着三明治，一边聊天儿。

史

王

史

王

史

王

史

张锡群

史

张锡群

王

史

张锡群

王

张锡群

王

张锡群

王

张锡群

来杭州旅行的可真多呀！

可不是吗！没想到中国旅游事业发展得那么快。

你知道吗？中国有一句俗语：‘上有天堂，下有苏、杭’，所以来杭州找人间乐园的人总是很多！

那倒是，你注意了没有？中国人喜欢照相。

是的。他们的照相机有老式的，也有新式的。‘佳能’、‘尼康’等日本货好象特别受欢迎。听说照相机也是可以租的。

对了，但是凡是有游客的地方都有职业照相的。

中国人还有一点不太象我们，他们很喜欢合伙儿出去玩儿，或者是同学或者是同事或者是同乡。（说着就有一个戴着太阳镜的年轻小伙子走过来）。

(坐下就问)你们是哪国人？是来杭州玩儿的吗？

是的，我们是英国人。你是本地人吗？

不是，我是苏州人，来杭州办一点事。

苏州地方不错，有人叫它中国的威尼斯。也有人说‘苏州出美人’。

(他正在说话的时候有一个小孩儿拉着他妈妈的手指着王永寿和史爱理大声喊着‘老外老外！’)

(笑着说)‘老外’听起来还是有一种亲密的感觉，但是听到什么‘洋鬼子’、‘高鼻子’，心里就有一点不自在。这些称呼平常并没有什么坏的意思，主要是因为一些中国人没有跟外国人接触过，所以第一次碰到觉得十分新鲜。他们不懂这样称呼很不礼貌。你们听过这句话吗？‘天不怕，地不怕，就怕洋鬼子说中国话’！

没听说过，真好玩儿！我想问你一个问题，可以吗？

当然可以。什么问题？

你觉得中国人有种族偏见吗？

这怎么说呢？我们受过教育的人，中国人也好，外国人也好，一般来说，都不认为自己有什么偏见，但是坦率地说，下意识肯定还是会有一点的。

一点也不错。咱们应该承认是有偏见的，要不很容易‘自欺欺人’。承认错误等于改了一半儿了。

太对了，我完全同意。

Zài Zhōngguó lǚxíng kěyǐ liǎojiě Zhōngguórén shēnghuó de  
gègè fāngmiàn, bìrú shuō Zhōngguórén fàng jià, chū chāi děng  
qíngkuàng. Wáng Yōngshòu hé Shǐ Àili zhèngzài Hángzhōu  
wánr, zuò zài shìjiè wénming de Xīhú pángbianr, yìbiān chīzhe  
sānmíngzhì, yìbiān liáo tiānr.

- Shī** Lái Hángzhōu lüyóu dē kě zhēn duō ya!  
Kěbúshì mal Méi xiǎng dào Zhōngguó lüyóu shiyè fāzhǎn dē nàmè kuài.
- Shī** Nǐ zhīdao ma? Zhōngguó yǒu yí jù súhuà: 'Shàng yǒu tiāntáng, xià yǒu Sū, Háng', suōyǐ lái Hángzhōu zhǎo rénjiān lèyuán dē rén zōngshi hěn duō!
- Wáng** Nà dàoshì. Nǐ zhùyì le méi you: Zhōngguórén xǐhuan zhào xiàng.
- Shī** Shì de. Tāmēn dē zhàoxiàngjī yǒu lǎoshì də, yě yǒu xīnhì də. 'Jiānéng', 'Níkāng' děng Rìběn huò hǎoxiàng tèbié shòu huānyíng. Tíngshuō zhàoxiàngjī yě shi kěyǐ zū de.
- Wáng** Duile, dànshi fánshì yǒu yóukè dē dìfang dōu yǒu zhíyè zhàoxiàng de.
- Shī** Zhōngguórén hái yǒu yìdiǎn bù tài xiàng wǒmēn, tāmēn hěn xǐhuan héhuǒr chū qu wánr huòzhě shì tóngxué huòzhě shì tóngshì huòzhě shì tóngxiāng!  
(Shuōzhe jiù yǒu yí ge dàizhe tàiyángjìng de niánqīng xiāohuǒzi zǒu guòlai)  
(zuò xià jiù wèn) Nǐmēn shì nǎ guó rén? Shì lái Hángzhōu wánr dē ma?
- Shī** Shì de. Wǒmēn shì Yīngguórén. Nǐ shì běndirén ma?
- Zhāng Xīqún** Bú shì, wǒ shì Sūzhōurén, lái Hángzhōu bàn yìdiǎn shì.
- Wáng** Sūzhōu dìfang búcuò, yǒu rén jiào tā Zhōngguó de Wēinísī. Yě yǒu rén shuō 'Sūzhōu chū měirén'. . . (Tā zhèngzài shuō huà dē shíhou yǒu yí ge xiāoháir lāzhe tā māma dē shǒu zhǐzhe Wáng Yōngshòu hé Shī Áilí dà shēng hǎnzhe 'Lǎowài, lǎowài!')
- Shī** (xiàozhè shuō) 'Lǎowài' tīng qǐlai háishi yǒu yì zhǒng qīnmì dē gǎnjué, dànshi tīng dào shénme 'yángguǐzi'、'gāo bízi', xīnlí jiù yǒu yìdiǎn bù zìzài.
- Zhāng Xīqún** Zhè xiē chēnghū jīngcháng bìng méi yǒu shénme huài dē yìsi, zhǔyào shì yīnwei yìxiē Zhōngguórén méi yǒu gēn wàiguórén jiēchùguo suōyǐ dì yí cì pèng dào juéde shífēn xīnxiān. Tāmen bù dōng zhèyàng chēnghū hěn bù lǐmào. Nǐmēn tīngguo zhè jù huà ma? 'Tiān bù pà, dì bù pà, jiù pà yángguǐzi shuō Zhōngguóhuà!'
- Wáng** Méi tīngshuōguo, zhēn hǎo wánr! Wǒ xiǎng wèn nǐ yì ge wèntí, kěyǐ ma?
- Zhāng Xīqún** Dāngrán kěyǐ. Shénme wèntí?
- Wáng** Nǐ juéde Zhōngguórén yǒu zhǒngzú piānjiàn ma?

## Zhāng Xīqún

Zhè zěnme shuō ne? Wǒmen shòuguo jiàoyù de rén, Zhōngguórén yě hǎo, wàiguórén yě hǎo, yibān lái shuō, dōu bù rènwéi zìjǐ yǒu shénme piānjian, dànshì tǎnshuài de shuō, xiàiyíshí kěnding háishi huì yǒu yìdiǎn de.

## Wáng

Yìdiǎn yě bù cuò. Zánmēn yīnggāi chéngrèn shì yǒu piānjiàn de, yàoobù hěn róngyì ‘zì qī qī rén’. Chéngrèn cuòwù děngyú gǎi le yǐbàn(r) le.

## Zhāng Xīqún

Tài duile, wǒ wánquán tóngyi.

旅途

lǚtú (n) *journey, trip*

见闻

jiànwén (n) *what one sees and hears*

了解

liǎojiě (v) *to find out, understand, know*

各个

gègè (adj.) *each, every*

放假

fàng jià (v-o) *have a holiday or vacation*

出差

chū chāi (v-o) *be on a business trip*

杭州

Hángzhōu (N) *Hangzhou*

闻名

wénmíng (adj.) *well known, famous*

西湖

Xīhú (N) *West Lake*

旁边儿

pángbiānr (n) *side*

一边...一边...

yìbiān ... yìbiān *see 21.1*

三明治

sānmíngzhì (n) *sandwich*

旅游

lǚyóu (n; v) *tourism, to tour*

可

kě (adv.) *emphasizes tone of speaker*

呀

yā (interj.) *indicating surprise*

可不是吗

kěbúshì ma? *exactly; that's just the way it is*

事业

shìyè (n) *undertaking, cause*

发展

fāzhǎn (v) *to develop*

俗话 [句]

súhuà (n) [jù] *common saying, proverb*

天堂

tiāntáng (n) *heaven, paradise*

苏杭

Sū, Háng (N) *Suzhou and Hangzhou*

人间乐园

rénniān lèyuán (n) *paradise on earth*

注意

zhùyì (v) *to pay attention to*

照相机

zhàoxiàngjī (n) [tái] *camera*

老式

lǎoshì (adj.) *old-fashioned*

新式

xīnshì (adj.) *latest type, new-style*

佳能

'Jiānéng' (N) *'Canon'*

尼康 好象受	'Níkāng' (N) hǎoxiàng (v) shòu (v)	'Nikon' to seem (see 21.4) to receive, be subjected to (see 21.6)
租 职业 合伙 (儿)	zū (v) zhíyè (n) héhuǒ(r) (v-o)	to rent, hire occupation, profession form a company or partnership
同学 同乡	tóngxué (n) tóngxiāng (n)	fellow student person who was born in the same place as oneself
戴 太阳镜 [副] 小伙子 本地 办事	dài (v) tài yángjìng (n) [fù] xiǎohuǒzi (n) běndì (n) bàn shì (v-o)	to wear (see 21.8) sunglasses young fellow this locality to arrange for something to be done
它 威尼斯 美人拉	tā (p.s.) Wēinísī (N) měirén (n) lā (v)	it Venice beautiful woman to pull; to play (of stringed instruments)
手 大声 (地) 喊 老外 听起来 亲密 感觉 洋鬼子 高鼻子 心里 自在 称呼	shǒu (n) dàshēng(de) (adv.) hǎn (v) lǎowài (n) tīng qǐlai (v) qīnmì (adj.) gǎnjué (n) yángguǐzi (n) gāo bízì (adj. + n) xīnlì zìzài (adj.) chēnghū (n; v)	hand loudly to shout, cry out 'old foreigner' to sound, ring close, intimate feeling, sense foreign devil big nose (Lit. tall nose) in the heart or mind at ease, comfortable form of address; to address
坏 主要 觉得 十分 新鲜 礼貌 话 [句] 怕	huài (adj.) zhǔyào (adj.; adv.) juéde (v) shéifēn (adv.) xīnxīān (adj.) lǐmào (adj.; n) huà (n) [jù] pà (v)	bad; broken principal(lly) to feel extremely, very fresh courteous; manners remark, word(s) to fear, be afraid of

种族	<i>zhǒngzú</i> (n)	race
偏见	<i>piānjiàn</i> (n)	prejudice, bias
教育	<i>jiàoyù</i> (n; v)	education; to educate
A 也好 B 也好	<i>A yě hǎo B yě hǎo</i>	see 21.10
一般来说	<i>yíbān lái shuō</i>	generally speaking
认为	<i>rènwéi</i> (v)	to think, consider
坦率(地)	<i>tǎnshuài(de)</i>	frank(lly)
下意识	(adj.; adv.)	
肯定	<i>xiàiyìshí</i> (n)	subconsciousness
咱们	<i>kěndìng</i> (adj.; adv.; v)	definite(lly); affirm
自欺欺人	<i>zánmen</i> (p.p.)	we (see 21.12)
错误	<i>zì qī qī rén</i>	deceive yourself as well as others
改	<i>cuòwù</i> (n)	mistake, error
完全	<i>gǎi</i> (v)	to alter, change, correct
同意	<i>wánquán</i> (adj.; adv.)	complete(lly)
	<i>tóngyì</i> (v)	to agree with

## Grammar

### 1 *Yìbiān V<sub>1</sub> . . . yìbiān V<sub>2</sub>*

When we want to indicate that two actions are going on simultaneously we can use the construction *yìbiān V<sub>1</sub>, yìbiān V<sub>2</sub>*:

*Tāmen yìbiān kàn fēngjǐng, yìbiān liáo tiānr.* ‘They chatted whilst looking at the scenery.’ *Yǒude rén yìbiān kàn diànshì, yìbiān chī fàn.* ‘Some people have their meals watching the TV.’

*Tāmen yìbiān chīzhe sānmíngzhì, yìbiān liáo tiānr.* ‘They chatted while eating (their) sandwiches.’

When expressing the continuous past or present, one of the two verbs may be followed by *zhe* to emphasize the continuity of that verb (see the example above).

### 2 Chinese proverbs

Chinese proverbs or idioms are known as *chéngyu* (成语) (*Lit. become language*) which are usually set phrases made up of four characters, although they are not necessarily limited to four, or *súhuà* (*Lit. custom talk*, i.e. ‘old saying’) which can be of any length. Both are an integral part of the Chinese language. All

Chinese of whatever educational level seem to know and use some *chéngyǔ* or *súhuà* and the higher their level the more they are likely to use them. *Chéngyǔ* have their origins in classical poetry which was traditionally regarded in China as the highest medium of artistic expression (as opposed to the novel which is translated as *xiǎoshuō* 'small talk'). Many Chinese are now unaware of which poem a particular *chéngyǔ* comes from and who it was written by, but this cultural inheritance gives weight and beauty to the modern language and a pithiness which it would otherwise lack. The text has some good examples of different proverbs:

*Shàng yǒu tiāntáng, xià yǒu Sū, Háng*

'Above there is heaven, below there is Suzhou and Hangzhou'  
(i.e. these two places are regarded as being very beautiful).

*Sūzhōu chū měirén*

'Beautiful women come from Suzhou.'

*Tiān bù pà, dì bù pà, jiù pà yángguǐzì shuō Zhōngguóhuà*

'I'm not afraid of heaven or earth, only of foreign devils speaking Chinese'.

*Zì qī qī rén*

'Deceive oneself as well as others' (Lit. self cheat cheat people).

Four-character phrases are particularly concise and contain a wealth of meaning.

### 3 More on abbreviations

We looked briefly at abbreviations in 4.5 and can now take things a step further. As you can see in the proverb: *Shàng yǒu tiāntáng, xià yǒu Sū, Háng* the *zhōu* of *Sūzhōu* and *Hángzhōu* has been dropped, so that the famous balance that the Chinese love so much can be retained, giving four characters in each phrase. Try saying it with the two *zhōus* back in place and you'll see what I mean. Not the same effect at all, is it? The same thing is done when referring to two countries one after another.

*Zhōng, Yīng liǎng guó*

'the two countries China and the UK' (note the reversed word order in Chinese)

*Sū, Óu (Sūlián Óuzhōu)*

'the Soviet Union and Europe'.

This practice gives a much smoother rhythm to the sentence. How unpleasing to the ear it would be to say *Zhōngguó, Yīngguó liǎng guó*.

## 4 To resemble or not? (*xiàng* and *hǎoxiàng*)

Students often confuse *xiàng* (象) and *hǎoxiàng* (好象) and of course they do appear to be very similar. Memorize a model sentence for each to avoid confusion. *Xiàng* means ‘to resemble’ in the sense of ‘to look like somebody or something’ whereas *hǎoxiàng* means ‘to seem’ or ‘to look like something has happened or is going to happen’:

*Nǐ xiàng nǐ māma*

‘You look like your mum’

*Tā bù xiàng wǒ*

‘She’s not like me’

*Nà ge xuésheng hǎoxiàng bìngle*

‘It seems that student is ill’

*Hǎoxiàng yào xià yǔ*

‘It looks like rain’.

‘*Jiānéngróng*’、‘*Níkòng*’ *děng Riběnhuò hǎoxiàng hěn shòu huānyíng* ‘Japanese makes such as “Canon” and “Nikon” seem very popular’ (Lit. ‘Canon’, ‘Nikon’, etc. Japanese goods seem very receive welcome).

*Zhōngguórén hái yǒu yìdiǎn bù tài xiàng wǒmen.*

‘The Chinese have another way in which they are very different from us’ (Lit. Chinese people still have one point not too resemble us).

### Exercise 21.1

Choose *xiàng* or *hǎoxiàng* to fill the blank space in each sentence. You can rewrite the exercise in characters for extra practice. Check your answers using the Vocabularies at the back of the book. Please take this instruction as read for subsequent exercises.

- 1 *Xiāohuǒzi \_\_\_\_\_ lái Hángzhōu bàn shì.*
- 2 *Wǒ jiějie hěn \_\_\_\_\_ wǒ bàba, wǒ bìjiào \_\_\_\_\_ wǒ māma.*
- 3 *Fǎguórén (the French) \_\_\_\_\_ bu \_\_\_\_\_ Yídàlìrén (Italians)?*
- 4 *Zhōngguó lùyóu shìyè \_\_\_\_\_ fāzhǎn de hěn kuài.*
- 5 *Tā tài \_\_\_\_\_ nǐ, jīntiān \_\_\_\_\_ yòu bǎ zhàoxiàngjī wàng le!*

## 5 Balance with opposites

Balance in Chinese is very important. This sometimes makes for what looks at first sight to be a slightly wordy sentence as the verb is often repeated, but with further study you will appreciate this feeling of balance and harmony within the sentence. Compare the difference in feeling between *Lǎoshī jiāo Zhōngwén hé Yingwén* and *Lǎoshī jiāo Zhōngwén yě jiāo Yingwén*. Both are grammatically correct and mean ‘The teacher teaches (both) Chinese and English’ but the second somehow

feels better. This can be taken one step further in the use of opposites, or contrasting ideas within the same sentence:

*Wǒ yǒu cháng de, yě yǒu duǎn de* 'I have both long ones and short ones'

*Tāmen de zhàoxiàngjī yǒu lǎoshì de, yě yǒu xīnshì de* 'They have both modern and old-fashioned cameras' (Lit. as for their cameras have old-fashioned ones, also have new style ones).

## 6 *Shòu* and the passive

We have already seen in 8.10 that verbs in Chinese are neither active nor passive although some verbs of motion *appear* to be passive, even in Chinese, without changing their form or having anything added to them:

*Bào mǎi lái le* 'The newspaper has been bought' (by you, me, etc.)

However, the passive is usually expressed by using one of the following constructions:

### 'Receiving' etc.

To express the idea of 'receiving' or 'accepting', 'suffering' or 'being subjected to something' we use *shòu* (受) + verbal noun. For example:

*shòu fá* 受罚

'be punished' (suffer punishment)

*shòu hài* 受害

'be injured or killed' (suffer harm)

*shòu huānyíng* 受欢迎

'be welcomed' (receive welcome)

*shòu jiàoyù* 受教育

'be educated' (receive education)

*shòu jīng* 受惊

'be frightened' (suffer fright)

*shòu piàn* 受骗

'be fooled or taken in' (suffer cheat)

*shòu shāng* 受伤

'be wounded' (suffer wound)

*shòu tuō* 受托

'be commissioned' (accept entrust)

*shòu yǐngxiǎng* 受影响

'be influenced' (accept influence).

This group should be memorized before use and new ones added to your mental list only when you have read or heard them. Do not make up your own.

### Construction

This construction follows the pattern:

Subject + *bèi* (被) + agent + verb (+ other elements)  
*ràng* (让)  
*jìao* (叫)

Wǒ bèi tā dǎ le ‘I was hit by him/her’

Tā ràng gǒu yǎo le ‘He was bitten by the dog’

Nǐ jiào xuésheng xuǎn le dāng xuésheng dàibiǎo. ‘You have been chosen by the students as student representative.’

If it is not clear who (or what) the agent is, an indefinite rén (人) may be used instead:

Dīng lǎoshī jiào } rén qǐng qù hē chá le.  
                  ràng }  
                  bèi }

‘Mr Ding was invited (by somebody) to have tea’. *Bèi*, *ràng* and *jiào* can be used interchangeably but *bèi* is used more in the formal written language, *ràng* and *jiào* in the spoken.

NB When no agent is marked in the sentence, only *bèi* can be used: Wǒ bèi jǐnggào le ‘I was warned’.

The negative adverb and/or auxiliary verb go before *bèi*, etc. Other adverbs such as *zuótiān* (昨天) and *yǐjīng* (已经) normally precede *bèi* (*ràng*, *jiào*) too.

### Exercise 21.2

Select *jiào*, *ràng*, *bèi* or *shòu* to fill the blank spaces in the following sentences. Where there is more than one alternative, please give all of them.

- 1 Zhōngguó xuésheng zài 1989 nián liùyuè sān, sì hào \_\_\_\_ zhèngfǔ (government) bài le.
- 2 \_\_\_\_ jiàoyù de rén piānjiàn yīnggāi shǎo yíxiē.
- 3 Wǒ gàoosu (tell) tā bié zhèyàng zuò, suǒyǐ \_\_\_\_ tā mà (swear at, curse) le yíxià.
- 4 Kěxī, xiǎoháir dōu hěn róngyì \_\_\_\_ piàn.
- 5 Tā \_\_\_\_ mìmì jǐngchá (secret police) bǔ (arrest) le.

## 7 Tóng with everyone?

Tóng is an adjective with the meaning ‘same’, ‘alike’, ‘similar’ and has given rise to a whole series of useful expressions of which some of the more common are listed below:

tóngbāo (n) 同胞 (same parents)

‘compatriot’

tóngháng (n) 同行 (same profession)

‘person in the same profession’

tóngjū (v) 同居 (same live)

‘cohabit’

tóngnián (n) 同年 (same year)

‘of the same age’

tóngqíng (v) 同情 (same emotion)

‘to sympathize with’

tóngshí (adv.) 同时 (same time)

'at the same time, in the meantime'

tóngshì (n) 同事 (same job)

'colleague'

tóngxiāng (n) 同乡 (same native place)

'person who comes from the same birth place'

tóngxìng (adj.; n) 同姓 (same surname)

'of the same surname'

tóngxìngliàn (adj.; n) 同性恋

'homosexual'

(same sex love)

tóngxué (n) 同学 (same study)

'fellow student'

tóngyì (v) 同意 (same meaning)

'to agree with'

tóngzhì (n) 同志 (same aspiration)

'comrade'

## 8 Dài or chuān?

Both these verbs mean 'to wear'. *Chuān* is the more widely used whereas *dài* is confined to items worn on extremities (but *not* shoes on feet!):

*dài màozi*

'wear a hat' (also 'to be labelled', e.g. counter-revolutionary)

*dài yǎnjìng*

'wear glasses'

*dài lǐngdài*

'wear a tie'

*dài shǒutào*

'wear gloves'

*dài shǒubiǎo*

'wear a watch'

*dài ērhuán*

'wear ear-rings'

*dài jièzhī*

'wear a ring'

*dài shǒuzhuó*

'wear a bracelet'.

The only exceptions to this 'rule' appear to be 'shoes' and 'socks' which are *chuān*-ed rather than *dài*-ed. NB This *dài* 戴 is not the same *dài* as the verb meaning 'to take' or 'to bring' which is written 带.

### Exercise 21.3

Choose *dài* or *chuān* to fill the blank space in each sentence.

- 1 *Yǐqián zài jiàotángli* (in church) *fùnǚ yào* \_\_\_\_ *màozi* (hat), *xiànzài bù yídìng dài le*.
- 2 *Dōngtiān, tiānqì lěng* \_\_\_\_ *hěn hòu* (thick) *de shǒutào* (gloves) *hěn yǒu yòng*.
- 3 *Chū qu de shíhou, fēi* \_\_\_\_ *shang xié* (shoes) *bùkě yīnwei jiē* (street) *shàng tài zāng* (dirty) *le*.
- 4 *Yǒu yìxiē jùlèbù* (social club), *chúfēi nánrén* \_\_\_\_ *lǐngdài* (tie) *cái néng jìn qu*.

- 5 Nǐ jīntiān \_\_\_\_ de máoyī hěn hǎo kàn. Shì zìjǐ zhī (knit, weave) de ma?

## 9 Yīn and yáng please!

Any of you who have dabbled in Chinese philosophy or traditional Chinese medicine will have some idea of the concept of *yīn* and *yáng*. It all comes back to balance in the end! *Yīn* 阴, written with the moon radical, is the feminine or negative principle in nature whereas *yáng* 阳, written with the sun radical, is the masculine or positive principle. To the Chinese way of thinking each individual (and on a much larger scale the universe) is made up of *yīn* and *yáng* and only when the right balance is achieved between the two will s/he be in good mental and physical health. *Yīn* characteristics include sensitivity, softness, feelings centred around home, family and friends; *yáng* characteristics centre around work, competitiveness, assertion, hence the traditional division into male and female. This is a fascinating subject to explore which could give you a whole different outlook on life – go for it!

Vocabulary items associated with *yīn* and *yáng*:

<i>yīnlì</i> 阴历	'lunar calendar' (the Chinese New Year or Spring Festival is based on the lunar calendar)
<i>yánglì</i> 阳历	'solar calendar'
<i>yīntiān</i> 阴天	'cloudy, overcast'
<i>tài yáng</i> 太阳	(excessive <i>yáng</i> ) 'the sun'
<i>tài yáng jìng</i> 太阳镜	(excessive <i>yáng</i> mirror) 'sunglasses'
<i>yángdiàn</i> 阳电	'positive electricity'
<i>yīndiàn</i> 阴电	'negative electricity'.

In traditional Chinese medicine a deficiency of *yáng* (*yáng xu* 阳虚) is associated with a lack of vital energy; a deficiency of *yīn* (*yīn xu* 阴虚) with an insufficiency of body fluid, irritability, thirst and constipation being its symptoms.

These are but a few examples, for a much fuller list consult any medium-sized Chinese–English dictionary.

## 10 A yě hǎo, B yě hǎo

This is a useful expression, meaning 'no matter whether A or B, something is still the case':

Xuéxí Hánnyǔ yě hǎo, xuéxí Ālābóyǔ yě hǎo, tā dōu hěn gǎn xìngqù (gǎn xìngqù ‘be interested in something’) ‘He’s very interested in studying both Chinese and Arabic’.

Zhōngguórén yě hǎo, wàiguórén yě hǎo, yìbān lái shuō, dōu bù rènwéi zìjǐ yǒu shénme piānjiàn ‘Generally speaking, neither Chinese nor foreigners think they have any prejudices’.

## 11 (lián) yìdiǎn yě/dōu bù

This construction shares some similarities with 9.10 iii, question words used to indicate inclusiveness or exclusiveness. The pattern here is: (lián) yìdiǎn yě/dōu bù + adjective/verb (Lit. even little bit also not adj./v), (lián) yìdiǎn yě bù cuò ‘absolutely right’, Wǒ (lián) yìdiǎn yě bù tóngyi ‘I don’t agree at all’, ‘I disagree entirely’.

If the action took place in the past then *méi* is used instead of *bù*: Zhè běn xiǎoshuō tā (lián) yìdiǎn yě méi kàn ‘He hasn’t read a word of this novel’. The *yìdiǎn* may be replaced by such expressions as *yì fēn zhōng* (‘one minute’) *yì fēn qián* (‘one cent/penny’), any expression indeed consisting of *yì* (one) MW + noun:

Jiějie yì fēn qián yě méi huā ‘My (elder) sister didn’t spend any money at all’

Kāi huì de shihou, wǒ de tóngshì yí jù huà yě bù shuō ‘My colleague never says a word at meetings’ (*kāi huì* v-o ‘hold a meeting’).

In such cases the construction can also be used in the affirmative, i.e. without *bù* in which case *lián* is normally retained.

Tā lián xìn dōu kàn le ‘She even read the letter’.

Wèile dádào (达到 ‘achieve, reach’) tāmen de mùbiāo (aim), lǐngdǎo lián zìjǐ de rénmín dōu huì xīshēng (sacrifice). ‘In order to achieve their objective, leaders will even sacrifice their own people’.

## 12 Zánmen and wǒmen

Both these personal pronouns mean ‘we’ but *zánmen* specifically includes both the speaker and the person or persons spoken to, so if you want to make this point use *zánmen*. You will find several examples of *zánmen* in the texts of this chapter and Chapter 22.

## 13 False friends?

As I have already tried to indicate in 21.7, *tóngqíng* ‘to sympathize with’ and *tóngyì* ‘to agree with’ already contain the idea of ‘with’ in the verb and so there is no need to add anything else. This means that the direct object follows on directly after the verb:

*Wǒ tóngyì nǐ de yíjiàn*  
*Tóngqíng ta méi yǒu yòng*

‘I agree with your opinion’  
‘There’s no point in sympathizing with him’.

By the way, ‘wear one’s hair long’ does not use *chuān* or *dài* as the verb but *liú* 留 ‘let grow’.

### i Doing your own thing?

In Chinese society, particularly since Liberation, the emphasis has been on the collective, not on the individual, although the advent of the responsibility system *zérènzhì* (责任制) the open-door policy and the economic reforms of the 1980s have led to more people thinking for themselves and making their own decisions about their future. The Democratic Movement *mínzhǔ yùndòng* (民主运动) of 1989 has also to be seen in this light. Nevertheless, the general trend is still for everyone to know everyone else’s business. The ever resourceful Chinese have devised various methods of coping with this social phenomenon, one of which is the use of the term *bàn shì* (办事) ‘to go and get something done’. When asked why you are late for work or why you are leaving early or why you happen to be in a particular place, the answers might be, respectively:

*Duibuqǐ, lái wǎn le, wǒ bàn le yídiǎn shì.*

*Wǒ yào qù bàn yídiǎn shì.*

*Wǒ lái bàn yídiǎn shì.*

Curiously enough, people rarely ask what the *shì* is. I suspect everybody needs to use this let-out clause from time to time and therefore respects other people’s right to use it too.

### Foreign devils and ‘old’ foreigners

Non-Chinese used to be classified as ‘devils’ *guǐ(zì)* 鬼(子) which is generally regarded as a term of abuse in China, *guǐ* traditionally being regarded as unhappy spirits who have to be placated in some way by those still on earth. In Imperial times Westerners were called *yángguǐzi* ‘devils from across the sea’ or ‘foreign devils’, while the

Japanese were called *Riběn guǐ(zì)*. Mr Qian's eldest son in Lu Xun's famous novel *The True Story of Ah Q* is called Imitation Foreign Devil *Jiǎ yángguǐzi* because he came back from Japan with straight legs, i.e. he walked differently and had had his pigtail cut off. I have not heard the term *yángguǐzi* for many years but I can't say the same for the term involving the Japanese who have a more recent unhappy history with China. Another expression still in use to refer to caucasian non-Chinese is *gāo bīzī* 'tall noses'. Some Chinese might cite their noses not being sufficiently 'tall', *bīzī bù gòu gāo* as a reason for not being able to enjoy certain privileges accorded to foreigners – funny, but not without irony you might say. We have discussed the use of *lǎo* 'old' and *xiǎo* 'young' in 5.10 and it is in this light that I have never found the term *lǎowài* offensive. Children and adolescents use it most, but it has always seemed to me to express active curiosity rather than any animosity. *Wài* is, of course, an abbreviation for *wàiguórén* 'foreigner'.

### Exercise 21.4

Answer the following questions based on the text: Work in pinyin or characters.

- 1 Zài Zhōngguó lǚxíng kěyǐ liǎojiě shénme ne?
- 2 Wáng Yǒngshòu hé Shǐ Ailǐ zài shénme difang?
- 3 Tāmen yǐbiān chǐzhe sānmíngzhì, yǐbiān zuò shénme?
- 4 Zhōngguórén xǐhuan bu xǐhuan zhào xiàng? Tāmen de zhàoxiàngjī zěnmeyàng?
- 5 Rìběn zhàoxiàngjī shòu huānyíng ma?
- 6 Zhíyè zhàoxiàng de duō bu duō?
- 7 Zhōngguórén xǐhuan yí ge rén chū qu wánr ma?
- 8 Zhāng Xīqún shì shénme difang rén?
- 9 Shǐ Ailǐ tīng dào yángguǐzi, gāo bīzī zhè yàng de chēnghū tā xīnlǐ gāoxìng bu gāoxìng?
- 10 Wǒmen shòuguo jiàoyù de rén yě yǒu zhōngzú piānjiàn ma?
- 11 Wáng Yǒngshòu tóngyi bu tóngyi Zhāng Xīqún de shuōfǎ (way of saying things)?
- 12 Wǒmen wèi shénme yào chéngrèn cuòwù ne?

### Exercise 21.5

Translate the following passages into colloquial English:

- 1 Zài yǒuxiē fāngmiàn Zhōngguórén hé wàiguórén dàtóngxiāoyì, dōu xǐhuan chū qu wánr, zhǎo rénjiān lèyuán! Shéi bù yuànyì zhù de hǎo, chuān de hǎo, chī de hǎo ne? Zhōngguórén yě bù liwài (exception). Yǐqián zài Zhōngguó lǚyóu de Zhōngguórén hěn shǎo, xiànzài yì nián bǐ yì nián duō le.

在有些方面中国人和外国人大同小异，都喜欢出去玩儿，找人间乐园！谁不愿意住得好，穿得好，吃得好吗？中国人也不是什么例外。以前在中国旅游的中国人很少，现在一年比一年多了。

- 2 *Liǎojiě lìngwài yí ge mǐnzu (nation) hěn bù róngyi, lián liǎojiě zìjǐ de mǐnzu yě bù róngyi. Zhōngguó mǐnzu shì ge gǔlǎo (ancient) de mǐnzu. Tā de lishi, wénhuà (culture) gēn wǒmen de hěn bù yíyàng, gèng bù bì shuō tā de wénzì (script) ne! Xué qǐ Zhōngwén lai bùdàn (not only) hěn yǒu yìsi érqiè (but also) duì wǒmen gèrén (individual) hěn yǒu yòng.*

了解另外一个民族很不容易，连了解自己的民族也很不容易。中华民族是个古老的民族。它的历史、文化跟我们的很不一样，更不必说它的文字呢！学起中文来不但很有意思而且对我们个人很有用。

### Exercise 21.6

Translate the following sentences into *pinyin* and then into Chinese characters:

- 1 Let's (use *zánmen*) talk about education whilst watching the sunset.
- 2 'Deceiving oneself as well as others' is a proverb well worth paying attention to.
- 3 Because of the Hong Kong (香港 *Xiānggǎng*) question, relations between Britain and China have become very complex (复杂 *fùzá*).
- 4 He is my colleague so of course that influences my opinion (意见 *yìjiàn*). (Use the passive.)
- 5 You haven't had a single day's holiday this year, so no wonder you're so tired.
- 6 She hasn't even eaten a sandwich today, so how come she's not starving?

# farewell to all that!

**In this chapter you will learn**

- how to make a toast
- how to give presents and make appropriate remarks on receiving them
- about exclamations
- about the Chinese zodiac
- more about Chinese proverbs
- about classical Chinese poetry

► Mr King and Miss Scurfield are preparing to return to the UK, the former after teaching one year at Beida, the latter after completing her compulsory year of study abroad. The Lis have invited them for a farewell dinner.

王永寿和史爱理打算回英国。前者在北大教了一年书，后者在中国学了一年必修课程。李先生和夫人为他们饯行。

- 李 欢迎，欢迎。请进。
- 李太太 外面冷吗？
- 史 有一点。风很大，我们是顶着风骑车来的，真费劲儿。
- 王 这是我们的一点心意（给李太太几个罐头和一些水果）。
- 李 太客气了，又让你们破费。
- 史 没什么，一点小意思吧。
- 王 那就谢谢你们了。不过，好朋友之间是不讲客气的。
- 李太太 别老站在外面厅里，请屋里坐，暖和暖和。
- 李 喝茶还是喝咖啡？
- 王 还是喝茶吧。
- 李太太 唉，爱理，你要回国了，今天可算是‘最后的晚餐’了，多遗憾哪！
- 史 别这么说，听了，心里不是滋味。
- 李太太 东西收拾好了没有？
- 史 差不多都收拾好了。
- 李太太 你们需要帮忙，尽管说吧，千万别客气。
- 史 我不会客气，不过真的没什么事儿。大部分书已经寄走了，邮费挺贵的，但是不寄不行。
- 李 史 行李会不会超重？
- 史 一般超重两、三公斤没什么关系，我打算把一些重的东西放在手提包里。象磁带什么的，我已经分给朋友了。贝多芬、莫扎特等古典音乐磁带就送给你们吧。
- 李 好极了！谢谢你。（转向王永寿）永寿，你教书教了一年了，有什么感想呢？听说有一点儿想留在中国是吗？
- 王 这叫做‘流连忘返’，但是最近父母身体不怎么样，想回去看一看再说。啊——一年过得真快，‘光阴似箭，日月如梭’！
- 李 你真是地地道道的中国通，跟中国人打成一片。难怪你的学生那么喜欢你，又认真又能干，又富于幽默感。爱理，你也舍不得走，是不是？
- 史 是的。今年收获很大，可惜不能多留。
- 李 你可算是‘满载而归’了！
- 史 也可以这么说。
- 李太太 来吃饭吧。饺子包好了。正在煮。先喝酒吧，这儿有冷盘。文华，把酒打开吧！

- 李  
史  
李  
王  
李  
太太  
王  
李  
王  
史  
李  
太太  
史  
李  
太太  
王  
史  
李  
王  
  
李  
史  
李  
太太  
史  
李  
太太  
李  
李  
太太  
李  
李  
王
- 这瓶酒不错，是白葡萄酒，合资企业的产品。中国酒一般是甜的，但是我们知道你们不太喜欢喝甜的。好，干杯！祝你们一路平安，早日回来！  
 祝你们身体健康，万事如意！  
 咱们来照几张相吧。不过，等饺子来了再照，更有中国味道。啊，饺子来了！  
 你有闪光灯吗？  
 有。准备好了吗？笑一笑！哦，我忘了把镜头盖打开了。  
 你这个人太糊涂，浪费人的表情，快一点儿吧！  
 我也来照几张，洗好了就给你们寄来。有没有我们在英国的地址？  
 没有。  
 我给你们写下来，爱理，有笔吗？我的圆珠笔坏了。  
 有，给你。李太太，你的饺子真好吃，下一次一定要教我怎么包。  
 好吧，欢迎你尽早回来……酱油和醋都在这儿。  
 谢谢你。我放一点酱油。我这个人是绝对不会吃醋的，哈哈！  
 永寿，你看，你要多留一年，一点问题都没有！  
 我比爱理安静，稳定。她朋友满天下，要有一个人吃醋的话，肯定是我！  
 胡说 my dear！你的多少女生跟我说你这个人真帅！  
 来，再喝一杯。祝咱们之间的友谊万古长存！干杯！  
 李老师，下个星期五是你的生日，可惜那个时候我们已经离开中国了，所以我们现在要再敬你一杯，提前祝你‘寿比南山，福如东海’！我们还给你准备了一点小东西。  
 那怎么行？来的时候已经送东西了，怎么又送了？  
 那是给你们两个人的，这是生日礼物。希望你能为虎年添点虎气！  
 你们实在太客气了。  
 爱理，你怎么了？别哭了，‘后会有期’，毕业以后再来吧。  
 别管我。没事儿。我是一个伤感主义者！跟朋友告别的时候，总会想起‘相见时难别亦难’这句话来。  
 那倒是。你们‘不远万里而来’，确实不容易。但是你们来中国的机会还是会很多的。  
 等你们再来，我们开一个联欢会，怎么样？为了明、后年我们再相会，来，再干一杯！  
 这次不能不回去，爱理，你还要读一年书。但是以后机会多得很。  
 飞机几点钟起飞？  
 下午四点四十。应该三点钟到。

李史

我们去送送你们吧。

李

不用了，机场太远了，太不方便了。今天晚上就算告别了吧。要不，我受不了，还要告一次别！

李太太

看情况吧。如果能早一点儿下课，我们一定去。好，不谈这个了。再干最后一杯吧。

李

我不行了，再喝，我就要醉了！你们看，脸都红了！没关系，你不是开车的！来，为了大家幸福、快乐，干杯！

李太太、  
史、  
王

干杯！

Wáng Yǒngshòu hé Shǐ Àili dǎsuàn huí Yīngguó. Qiánzhě zài Běidà jiāo le yì nián shū, hòuzhě zài Zhōngguó xué le yì nián bixiūkèchéng. Lǐ xiānsheng hé fùrén wèi tāmen jiànxíng.

Lǐ

Huānyíng, huānyíng. Qǐng jìn.

Lǐ (t)

Wàimian lěng ma?

Shǐ

Yǒu yìdiǎn. Fēng hěn dà, wǒmen shì dǐngzhe fēng qí chē lái de, zhēn fèijīnr.

Wáng

Zhè shì wǒmen de yìdiǎn xīnyì. (Gěi Lǐ tài tai jǐ ge guàntóu hé yìxiē shuǐguō.)

Lǐ

Nǐmen tài kèqi le, yòu ràng nǐmen pòfèi.

Shǐ

Méi shénme, yìdiǎn xiǎoyīsi ba.

Lǐ

Nà jiù xièxie nǐmen le. Búguò, hǎo péngyou zhī jiān shì bu jiǎng kèqi de.

Lǐ (t)

Bié lǎo zhàn zài wàimian tīng lǐ, qǐng wǔlǐ zuò, nuǎnhuo nuǎnhuo.

Lǐ

Hē chá háishi hē kāfēi?

Wáng

Háishi hē chá ba.

Lǐ (t)

Ai, Àilǐ, nǐ yào huí guó le, jīntiān kě suàn shì 'zuihòu de wǎncān' le, duō yǐhàn na!

Shǐ

Bié zhème shuō, tīng le, xīnlǐ bú shì zīwèi.

Lǐ (t)

Dōngxi shōushi hǎo le méi you?

Shǐ

Chàbuduō dōu shōushi hǎo le.

Lǐ (t)

Nǐmen xūyào bāngmáng, jǐnguǎn shuō ba, qiānwàn bié kèqi.

Shǐ

Wǒ bù huì kèqi, bùguò zhēnde méi shénme shì. Dà bùfēn shū yǐjīng jì zǒu le, yóufèi tǐng guì de, dànshi bù jì bù xíng.

Lǐ

Xǐnglǐ huì bu huì chāozhòng?

Shǐ

Yǐbān chāozhòng liǎng, sān gōngjīn méi shénme guānxi.

Wǒ dǎsuàn bǎ yìxiē zhòng de dōngxi fàng zài shǒutǐbāo lǐ.

Xiàng cídài shénme, wǒ yǐjīng fēn gěi péngyou le.

Bèlduōfēn, Mòzhātè děng gǔdiǎn yīnyuè cídài jiù sòng gěi nǐmen ba.

- Lǐ Hǎo jíle! Xièxie nǐ. (Zhuǎn xiàng Wáng Yǒngshòu.) Yǒngshòu, nǐ jiāo shū jiāo le yì nián le, yǒu shénmē gǎnxiǎng ne? Tīngshuō yǒu yìdiǎnr xiǎng liú zài Zhōngguó shì ma?
- Wáng Zhè jiàozuò 'líulián wàng fǎn', dànshi zuijìn fùmǔ shèntǐ bù zěnmeyàng, xiǎng huí qu kānyikàn zài shuō. Ā—yì nián guò de zhēn kuài, 'guāngyīn sì jiàn, rìyuè rú suō'.
- Lǐ Nǐ zhēn shì dìldàodào de Zhōngguótōng, gēn Zhōngguórén dāchéng yípiàn. Nánguài nǐ de xuéshèng nàme xǐhuan nǐ, yòu rènzhēn yòu nénggàn, yǒu fùyú yōumògǎn. Àilǐ, nǐ yě shèbude zǒu, shì bu shì?
- Shǐ Shì de. Jīnnián shōuhuò hěn dà, kěxī bù néng duō liú.
- Lǐ Nǐ kě suàn shì 'mǎn zài ér guī' le!
- Shǐ Yě kěyǐ zhèmē shuō.
- Lǐ (t) Lái chī fàn ba. Jiǎozi bāo hǎo le, zhèngzài zhǔ. Xiān hē jiǔ ba. Zhèr yǒu lèngpán. Wénhuá, bǎ jiǔ dǎkāi ba.
- Lǐ Zhè píng jiǔ búcuò, shì bái pútáojiǔ, hézì qǐyè de chǎnpǐn. Zhōngguó jiǔ yibān shì tián de, dànshi wǒmèn zhīdao nǐmèn bù tài xǐhuan hē tián de. Hǎo, gān bēil Zhù nǐmèn yǐlù píng'ān, zǎorì huí lai!
- Shǐ Zhù nǐmèn shéntǐ jiànkāng, wànshì rú yì!
- Lǐ Zánmen lái zhào jǐ zhāng xiàng ba. Búguò děng jiǎozi lái le zài zhào, gèng yǒu Zhōngguó wèidao. Ā, jiǎozi lái le!
- Wáng Nǐ yǒu shǎnguāngdēng ma?
- Lǐ Yǒu. Zhǔnbèi hǎo le ma? Qǐng xiàoyixiào! Ô, wǒ wàng le bǎ jǐngtougài dǎkāi le.
- Lǐ (t) Nǐ zhè ge rén tài hútu, làngfèi rén de biǎoqíng, kuài yìdiǎnr ba!
- Wáng Wǒ yě lái zhào jǐ zhāng. Xǐ hǎo le jiù gěi nǐmèn jì lai. Yǒu méi yǒu wǒmèn zài Yīngguó de dízhǐ?
- Lǐ Méi yǒu.
- Wáng Wǒ gěi nǐmèn xiě xiàilai. Àilǐ, yǒu běi ma? Wǒ de yuánzhūběi huài le.
- Shǐ Yǒu, gěi nǐ. Lǐ tàitai, nǐ de jiǎozi zhēn hǎo chī, xià yí cì yídìng yào jiāo wǒ zěnmē bāo.
- Lǐ (t) Hǎo ba, huānyíng nǐ jǐnzǎo huí lai . . . jiàngyóu hé cù dōu zài zhèr.
- Shǐ Xièxie nǐ. Wǒ fàng yìdiǎn jiàngyóu. Wǒ zhè ge rén shì juéduì bù huì chī cù de, hāhā!
- Lǐ (t) Yǒngshòu, nǐ kàn, nǐ yào duō liú yì nián, yìdiǎn wèntí dōu méi yǒu!
- Wáng Wǒ běi Àilǐ ānjǐng, wěnding. Tā péngyou mǎn tiānxià, yào yǒu yí ge rén chī cù de huà, kěndìng shì wǒ!
- Shǐ Húshuō my dear! Nǐ de duōshao nǚshèng gēn wǒ shuō nǐ zhè ge rén zhēn shuài!

- Lí Lái, zài hē yì bēi. Zhù zánmen zhī jiān de yōuyì wàngǔ chángcún! Gān bēi!
- Wáng Lǐ lǎoshī, xià ge xīngqīwǔ shì nǐ de shēngrì, kěxī nà ge shíhou wǒmen yǐjīng lìkāi Zhōngguó le, suǒyǐ wǒmen xiànzài yào zài jǐng nǐ yì bēi, tíqíán zhù nǐ 'Shòu bǐ Nánshān, fú rú Dōnghǎi'! Wǒmen hái gěi nǐ zhǔnbèi le yídiǎn xiǎo dōngxi.
- Lí Nà zěnme xíng? Lái de shíhou yǐjīng sòng dōngxi le, zěnme yòu sòng le?
- Shǐ Nà shì gěi nǐmen liǎng ge rén de, zhè shì shēngrì liwù. Xīwàng nǐ néng wèi hǔnián tiān diǎn hǔqì!
- Lí Nǐmen shízài tài kèqì le.
- Lí (t) Ài! nǐ zěnme le? Bié kū le, 'hòu huì yǒu qǐ', bìyè yǐhòu zài lái ba.
- Shǐ Bié guǎn wǒ. Méishír. Wǒ shì yí ge shānggǎnzhǔyìzhě! Gēn péngyou gǎobié de shíhou, zǒng huì xiǎng qǐ 'Xiāng jiàn shí nán, bié yì nán' zhè jù huà lai.
- Lí (t) Nà dàoshi. Nǐmen 'bù yuǎn wàn lǐ ér lái', quèshí bù róngyi. Dànshi nǐmen lái Zhōngguó de jīhuì háishi huì hěn duō de.
- Lí Děng nǐmen zài lái, wǒmen kāi yí ge liánhuānhui, zěnmeyàng? Wèile míng、hòunián wǒmen zài xiānghuì, lái, zài gān yì bēi!
- Lí (t) Zhè cì bù néng bù huí qu, Ài! nǐ hái yào dù yì nián shū. Dànshi yǐhòu jīhuì duō dehěn.
- Lí Fēijī jǐ diǎn zhōng qǐfēi?
- Wáng Xiàwǔ sì diǎn shíshí... Yǐnggāi sān diǎn zhōng dào.
- Lí Wǒmen qù sòngsong nǐmen ba.
- Shǐ Bú yòng le, jīchǎng tài yuǎn le, tài bù fāngbiàn le. Jīntiān wǎnshàng jiù suàn gǎobié le ba. Yàoobù wǒ shòu bù liǎo, hái yào gào yí cì bié!
- Lí Kàn qíngkuàng ba. Rúguǒ néng zǎo yìdiǎnr xià kè, wǒmen yídìng qù. Hǎo, bù tán zhè ge le. Zài gān zuihòu yì bēi ba.
- Lí (t) Wǒ bù xíng le, zài hē, wǒ jiù yào zuì le! Nǐmen kàn, liǎn dōu hóng le!
- Lí Méi guānxì, nǐ bú shi kāi chē de! Lái, wèile dàjiā xìngfú, kuàilè, gān bēi!
- Lí (t) Shǐ Wáng } Gān bēi!

打算	dǎsuàn (v)	to intend, plan
前者	qiánzhě (n)	the former
后者	hòuzhě (n)	the latter
必修课 (程)	bìxiükè(chéng) (n)	obligatory or required course

夫人为行风顶骑	fūrén (n) wèi (prep.) jiàn xíng (n) fēng (n) dǐng (v) qí (v)	Mrs; Madame (formal) for, for the sake of give a farewell dinner wind to go against to ride (as of horse, bicycle)
费劲 (儿)	fèi jìn(r) (adj.)	strenuous, energy consuming
心意水果让破费	xīnyì (n) shuǐguǒ (n) ràng (v) pòfèi (v-o)	kindly feelings, regard fruit to let, allow to go to some expense
小意思之间老站	xiǎoyìsī (n) zhī jiān lǎo (adj.) zhàn (v)	small token, mere trifle between, amongst always to stand; station, stop (bus etc)
屋里暖和算最后晚餐多遗憾	wūlǐ (PW) nuǎnhuo (adj.) suàn (v) zuìhòu (adj., adv.) wǎncān (n) duō yíhàn (v; n)	in the room warm to regard as, count as the last, finally supper, dinner how to regret, be a pity; regret
哪这么滋味收拾	na zhème zīwèi (n) shōushi (v)	particle showing mood so, this way, like this (good) taste, flavour to pack, tidy up, put in order
差不多需要不过邮费行李超重手提包磁带分	chàbuduō (adv.) xūyào (v; n) búguò (conj.) yóufèi (n) xínglǐ (n) chāozhòng (v-o) shǒutíbāo (n) cí dài (n) fēn (v)	almost, nearly to need, require; needs but, however, only postage luggage, baggage overweight bag, handbag tape to divide, distribute, distinguish
贝多芬莫扎特古典音乐	Bēiduōfēn (N) Mòzhātè (N) gǔdiǎn (adj.) yīnyuè (n)	Beethoven Mozart classical music

送	sòng (v)	<i>to give as a present; see somebody off</i>
转向	zhuǎn (v)	<i>to turn, transfer</i>
感想	xiǎng (prep.; v)	<i>towards; to face</i>
叫做	gǎnxiǎng (n)	<i>reflections, thoughts</i>
流连忘返	jìàozuò (v)	<i>be called, be known as</i>
	liúlán wàng fǎn	<i>enjoy oneself so much as to forget to go home</i>
最近	zuìjìn (adv.; adj.)	<i>recently, nearest, latest</i>
再说	zài shuō (v; conj.)	<i>not tackle a problem until some other time; what's more</i>
光阴似箭，	guāngyīn sì jiàn,	<i>time flies (see 22.5)</i>
日月如梭	rìyuè rú suō	
地道	dìdào (adj.)	<i>genuine</i>
中国通	Zhōngguótōng (n)	<i>an old China hand, expert on China</i>
打成一片	dǎchéng yípiàn (v-o)	<i>to become one with, identify with</i>
认真	rènzhēn (adj.)	<i>conscientious</i>
能干	nénggàn (adj.)	<i>capable, competent</i>
富于	fùyú (adj.)	<i>full of</i>
幽默感	yōumògǎn (n)	<i>sense of humour</i>
舍不得	shěbude (v)	<i>be unwilling to part with, grudge</i>
收获	shōuhuò (n)	<i>gains, results, harvest</i>
满载而归	mǎn zài ér guī	<i>return with fruitful results</i>
饺子	jiǎozi (n)	<i>a kind of ravioli, dumpling</i>
包	bāo (v)	<i>to make (jiǎozi); to wrap; to include</i>
煮	zhǔ (v)	<i>to boil, cook</i>
冷盘	lěngpán (n)	<i>cold dish; hors d'oeuvres</i>
打开	dǎkāi (v)	<i>to open (up); switch on</i>
瓶	píng (MW)	<i>for bottles</i>
白	bái (adj.)	<i>white; blank</i>
葡萄	pútáojlǔ (n)	<i>wine</i>
酒	hézǐ qǐyè (n)	<i>joint venture</i>
合资企业	chǎnpǐn (n)	<i>product</i>
产品	tián (adj.)	<i>sweet</i>
甜	gān bēi (v-o)	<i>drink a toast</i>
干杯	yílù píng'an	<i>Bon voyage, have a pleasant journey</i>
一路平安	zǎorì (TW)	<i>at an early date; soon</i>
早日	jiànkāng (adj.)	<i>healthy, sound</i>
健康		



万事如意	wànshì rúyì	your heart's desire
味道	wèidào (n)	flavour, taste
闪光灯	shǎngguāngdēng (n)	flash (light)
笑	xiào (v)	to smile, laugh
哦	ò (inter.)	oh!
镜头盖	jǐngtóugài (n)	lens cap
糊涂	hútu (adj.)	muddle-headed
浪费	làngfèi (v)	to waste, squander
表情	biǎoqíng (n; v)	expression; to express one's feelings
(冲) 洗	(chōng)xǐ (v)	to develop (as of film); to wash
圆珠笔	yuánzhūbì (n)	ballpoint pen
尽早	jīnzhǎo (adv.)	as soon as possible, at the earliest possible date
醋	cù (n)	vinegar; jealousy (as in love affairs)
绝对	juéduì (adj.; adv.)	absolute(lly)
吃醋	chī cù (v-o)	to feel jealous
哈哈	hāhā (onom.)	haha
稳定	wěndìng (adj.; v)	stable, steady; to stabilize
满	mǎn (adj.; v)	full; to reach the limit, expire
天下	tiānxià (n)	land under heaven – the world or China
胡说	húshuō (n; v)	nonsense; to talk nonsense
女生	nǚshēng (n)	female student(s)
帅	shuài (adj. coll; adv.)	handsome; beautifully
友谊	yǒuyì (n)	friendship
万古长存	wàngǔ chángcún	last forever, be everlasting
生日	shēngrì (n)	birthday
离开	líkāi (v)	to leave
敬	jìng (v)	to propose (a toast), toast
提前	tíqián (v)	bring forward a date
寿比南山,	shòu bì Nánshān,	May you live as long as the Southern
福如东海	fú rú Dōnghǎi	Mountain and be as blessed as the Eastern Sea
礼物	lǐwù (n)	present, gift
虎年	hǔnián (n)	the year of the Tiger

虎气	<b>hǔqì</b> (n)	vigour (Lit. tiger energy)
实在	<b>shízài</b> (adv.; adj.)	really, honestly; true, real
怎么了	<b>zěnmé le?</b>	what's the matter?
哭了	<b>kū</b> (v)	to weep, cry
后会有期	<b>hòu huì yǒu qī</b>	we'll meet again some day
毕业	<b>bìyè</b> (v)	to graduate
管	<b>guǎn</b> (v)	bother about; be in charge of
沒事儿	<b>méishìr</b>	it's OK, it's nothing; have nothing planned
伤感主义者	<b>shānggǎn</b>	sentimentalist
告别	<b>zhüyìzhě</b> (n)	
想起来	<b>gàobié</b> (v-o)	to take leave of
	<b>xiāng qílai</b> (v)	to remember, call to mind
相见时难， 别亦难	<b>xiāng jiàn shí nán,</b> <b>bié yì nán</b>	meeting and parting are both difficult (see Chapter 22, p.255)
不远万里而来	<b>bù yuǎn wàn lǐ ér lái</b>	not considering 10 000 li too far to come
确实	<b>quèshí</b> (adv.; adj.)	really, indeed; true, certain
机会	<b>jīhuì</b> (n)	opportunity, chance
联欢会	<b>liánhuānhuì</b> (n)	get-together, party
明年	<b>míngnián</b> (TW)	next year
后年	<b>hòunián</b> (TW)	the year after next
相会	<b>xiānghuì</b> (v)	meet one another
多得很	<b>duō dehěn</b> (adj.)	very many
飞机 [架]	<b>fēijī</b> (n) [jià]	aeroplane
起飞	<b>qǐfēi</b> (v)	to take off (of aircraft)
不用	<b>bú yòng</b> (v)	need not
飞机场	<b>fēijīchǎng</b> (n)	airport
受不了	<b>shòu bù liǎo</b> (v)	be unable to bear or endure
醉	<b>zuì</b> (adj.)	drunk
脸	<b>liǎn</b> (n)	face
红	<b>hóng</b> (adj.)	red
开车的	<b>kāi chē de</b> (n)	a person who drives, driver
为了	<b>wèile</b> (prep.)	for the sake of, in order to
幸福	<b>xìngfú</b> (adj.; n)	enjoy good fortune, happy; well-being
快乐	<b>kuàilè</b> (adj.)	happy, joyful

# Grammar

## 1 Exclamations!

The Chinese language has an infinite variety of its own particular version of ahs, oohs and ohs but it is perhaps the modal particles which occur at the end of the sentence which are of particular interest. Some of these have been scattered throughout the various texts in this book. In this chapter, we have 哪 *na*, 呢 *ne* and the all-time favourite 吧 *ba*. Apart from the few guidelines you have been given, for instance that 呢 *ne* tends to appear with the question words *shénme*, *zénme*, *wèi shénme*, etc. and set-phrases such as *Nǐ zénme le?* you should rely on your ‘feel’ of the language as to whether a *ya*, a *na*, or a *ne*, etc. is needed. Chinese has a lot to do with feeling rather than specific rules so start with your exclamations and expressions of surprise. If you have the opportunity, listen to Chinese speakers and imitate them as far as possible. Failing that, just remember that such things are the icing on the cake rather than the cake itself.

## 2 Eating bitterness?

I have always teased Chinese friends about the emphasis that Chinese culture puts on food. Chinese people can talk for hours (and I mean hours) about the merits of various dishes, how to make them and how difficult (or expensive) it is to find such and such an ingredient. We can speculate endlessly on the reasons for this, which could vary from peasant poverty to magnificent Imperial banquets. Whatever the reason, it has left the Chinese language with a rich heritage based on eating. Note the following phrases which are just some of the ones in common usage:

吃醋	<i>chī cù</i> ‘be jealous’ (Lit. eat vinegar)
吃惊	<i>chī jīng</i> ‘be shocked, amazed’ (Lit. eat alarm)
吃苦	<i>chī kǔ</i> ‘bear hardship’ (Lit. eat bitterness)
吃亏	<i>chī kuī</i> ‘stand to lose’, ‘come to grief’, ‘get the worst of it’ (Lit. eat loss)
吃力	<i>chī lì</i> ‘strenuous, difficult’ (Lit. eat strength)
吃软不吃硬	<i>chī ruǎn bù chī yìng</i> ‘be open to persuasion but not to coercion’ (Lit. eat soft not eat hard)
吃闲饭	<i>chī xiánfàn</i> ‘lead an idle life, be a sponger’ (Lit. eat idle rice)
吃香	<i>chī xiāng</i> ‘be popular’ (coll.) (Lit. eat spice)
吃药	<i>chī yào</i> ‘take medicine’ (Lit. eat medicine).

## i The Chinese zodiac

The existence of the **Ten Heavenly Stems** was mentioned in the vocabulary of Chapter 17, but not elaborated upon further. They are 甲 jiǎ, 乙 yǐ, 丙 bǐng, 丁 dīng, 戊 wù, 己 jǐ, 庚 gēng, 辛 xīn, 壬 rén and 癸 guǐ in that order, 甲 jiǎ being the first. The Ten Heavenly Stems also combine in pairs, each pair corresponding to each of the five elements used in traditional Chinese medicine, viz. wood, fire, earth, metal and water. Thus jiǎ and yǐ are associated with 木 mù 'wood', bǐng and dīng with 火 huǒ 'fire' and so on.

In addition to the Ten Heavenly Stems, there are also the **Twelve Earthly Branches**, each of which is associated with a different animal which occurs in 12 year cycles. Each of us is born in the lunar year of a particular animal. 1950 was the Year of the Tiger, therefore everyone born in 1950, 1962, 1974 and 1986 is a tiger. 1951 was the Year of the Rabbit so all those born in 1951, 1963, 1975 and 1987 are rabbits. Of course each Animal Year is said to possess certain characteristics and in the old days this played a role in deciding whether or not you were a suitable bride or bridegroom for somebody. Tiger women were thought of as being particularly difficult to handle! The order is as follows:

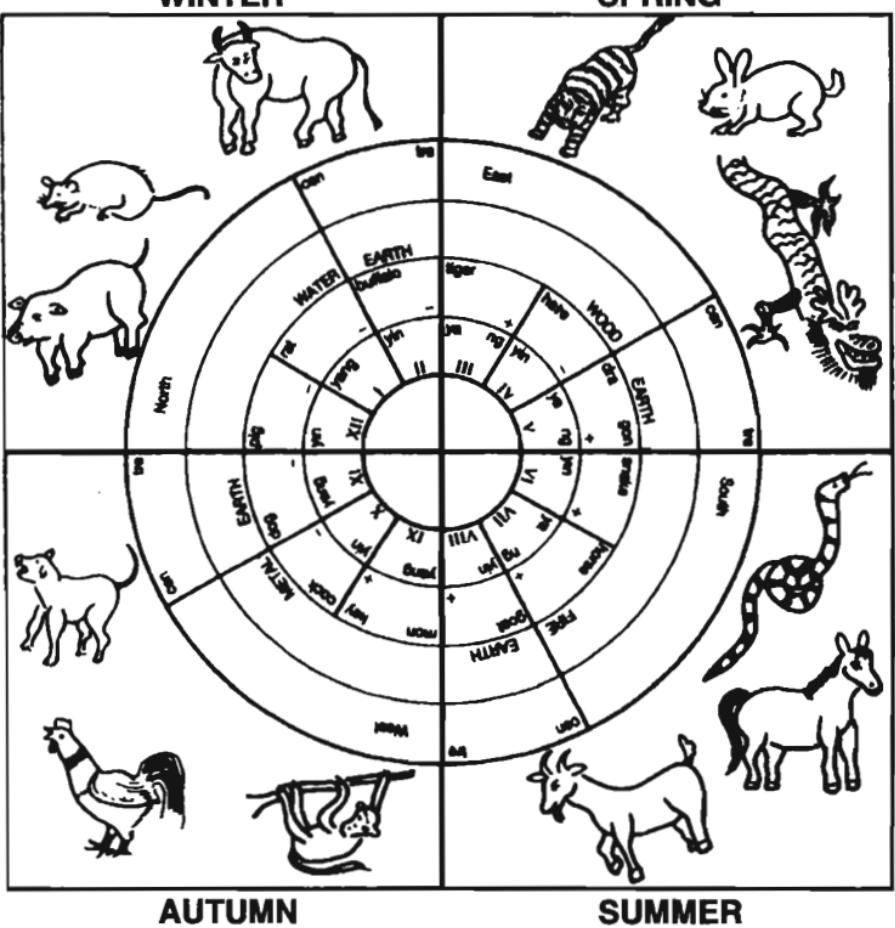
### Earthly branches

1 子	zǐ
2 丑	chǒu
3 寅	yín
4 卯	mǎo
5 辰	chén
6 巳	sì
7 午	wǔ
8 未	wèi
9 申	shēn
10 酉	yǒu
11 戌	xū
12 亥	hài

### Symbolical animals

鼠	shǔ	rat
牛	niú	ox
虎	hǔ	tiger
兔	tù	rabbit/hare
龙	lóng	dragon
蛇	shé	snake
马	mǎ	horse
羊	yáng	ram
猴	hóu	monkey
鸡	jī	cockerel
犬	quǎn	dog
猪	zhū	pig

Astrology books are now being produced combining the Chinese zodiac with our own Western one. A Tiger who is also a Scorpio probably presents quite a challenge wouldn't you say? What are you? (NB The Chinese have traditionally used the Ten Heavenly Stems and the Twelve Earthly Branches in a sequential order of two-character combinations to denote different years, months and days.)



the Chinese zodiac

### 3 Zhě as nominalizer

*Zhě* 者 used after an adjective or verb (or adjectival or verbal phrase) serves to nominalize it or make it into a noun phrase. This is considerably more stylish than merely adding *de rén* 的人 ('the person who . . .') or *de shì* 的事 ('the thing/matter which . . .') after the character(s) involved and is in keeping with the fact that modern Chinese has managed to retain elements of its classical past. Certain collocations have become virtually set phrases and a few are listed below:

<i>ruòzhě</i>	弱者	'the weak'
<i>qiángzhě</i>	强者	'the strong'
<i>qiánzhě</i>	前者	'the former'
<i>hòuzhě</i>	后者	'the latter'

dúzhě 读者 ‘reader’ (there is a popular newspaper column in some newspapers entitled *Dúzhě lái xìn* ‘Readers’ Letters’)

xuézhě 学者 ‘scholar’.

Note the much more formal register of the introduction to this chapter which uses terms such as *qiánzhě* and *hòuzhě*. *Zhě* is commonly used after 工作 *gōngzuò* ‘work’ to indicate a person engaged in the profession under discussion. It is also used to change an -ism (-zhǔyì 立主义) into an -ist. Hence *shèhuì* ‘society’, *shèhuìzhǔyì* ‘socialism’ and *shèhuìzhǔyìzhě* ‘socialist’: *Măkèsī* ‘Marx’, *Măkèsīzhǔyì* ‘Marxism’ and *Măkèsīzhǔyìzhě* ‘Marxist’; ‘*gòngchānzhǔyìzhě* ‘communist’ (*Lit.* together property-ism person); *făxisīzhǔyìzhě* ‘fascist’. We have the word for ‘sentimentalist’ *shānggānzhǔyìzhě* in the text and it is also used when referring to gays and lesbians *tóngxìngliànzhe* (*Lit.* same sex love person).

## 4 Adjective + *dehěn*

This is a simple construction meaning ‘very much’ of the adjective:

<i>duō dehěn</i>	‘very many’
<i>hǎo dehěn</i>	‘very good’
<i>yǒu yìsi dehěn</i>	‘very interesting’.

It is different from *hěn duō* and *hěn hǎo* insofar as the *hěn* in the latter phrases does not really carry the force of ‘very’ (see 4.8.4) or is put there merely for balance.

## 5 More on proverbs (II)

To put proverbs in their historical context we are going to trace the origins of two of the proverbs that occur in this text.

- i *Guāngyīn sì jiàn, rìyuè rú suō*. A similar phrase *guāng liú sì jiàn* (time flows like (an) arrow) first appeared in a Tang poem by Wei Zhuang but it was the famous Song Dynasty (960–1279) poet Su Shi (also known as Su Dongpo) who used *guāngyīn sì jiàn* in one of his poems. The complete proverb *guāngyīn sì jiàn, rìyuè rú suō* occurred in Chapter 9 of the Ming dynasty novel *Xiyouji* 西游记 translated variously as *Journey to the West* or *Monkey*, written by one Wu Cheng'en.

ii *Bù yuǎn wàn lǐ ér lái.* An alternative version *bù yuǎn qiān lǐ ér lái* may sometimes be found but *wàn* (10 000) makes it sound more of a big thing than *qiān* (1000) so I have used the former rather than the latter. (NB *lǐ* 'half a kilometre'.) This phrase first appeared in one of the books of Mencius, the famous Chinese Confucian philosopher of the fourth century BC who believed in the intrinsic goodness of human nature.

To end on a really positive note, particularly appropriate for aspiring students of Chinese, there is *Yǒu zhìzhě shì jìng chéng* 'Where there's a will there's a way' (*Lit. have aspiration person, matter finally achieve*). This occurred in a chapter of the *Hànshū* 'A History of the Han Dynasty' (in 120 volumes) written by 班固 Ban Gu who died in AD 92. As you can see, Chinese history is still alive and well today if we know where to go and look for it.

## i On Chinese poetry

To understand the Chinese, you also have to understand their poetry. People who regularly use poetry in their language also have poetry in their hearts.

*Xiāng jiàn shí nán, bié yì nán* quoted in the text comes from an untitled poem by Li Shangyin (812?–868). This line has come to symbolize in seven brief characters, the difficulties often involved in meeting someone and the pain involved in parting. (*Nán* means *kùnnan* 'difficult' in the first case, *nánkān* 'unbearable' in the second.)

Perhaps if I quote a poem written by Li Yu (937–978), the last emperor of the Southern Tang, you will get a taste of the beauty I am referring to. Li Yu was captured by the Song army and taken north to Kaifeng. This poem was written during his captivity, shortly before his death and laments his grievous loss and heavy heart.

无言独上西楼，  
月如钩。  
寂寞梧桐深院锁清秋。  
剪不断，  
理还乱，  
是离愁，  
别是一般滋味在心头。

*Wú yán dú shàng Xīlóu*  
No word(s) alone climb West Tower

*Yuè rú gōu.*

moon like sickle

*Jímò wútóng shēn yuàn suǒ qīng qiū.*

Lonely wútóng dark (deep?) courtyard lock clear autumn

*Jiǎn bù duàn,*

cut not sever

*Lǐ hái luàn,*

reason still disorderly

*Shí lí chóu*

Is separation melancholy

*Bié shì yibān zīwèi zài xīntóu.*

Parting is just like (bitter) taste in heart.

Even after more than 1000 years, the lines still rhyme, an incredible comment on the nature of the Chinese language. The visual impact of the characters is very important in poetry. Chóu, the character for 'sorrow' or 'melancholy' is made up of an autumn over a heart (愁), with all the symbolism which that conjures up.

The fact that classical Chinese poetry does not have a grammatical subject makes it seem so much more universal and heightens its effect. Let us look at the content of the poem more closely. Whoever it is, climbs the Western Tower, (the west – the setting sun, the end of one's life?) alone and in silence, the moon like a sickle overhead. (A new moon to heighten his grief, or the last sliver of a waning one?) The wútóng (it has a straight trunk of a beautiful shade of green and is said to be the only tree on which the phoenix will rest) is 'lonely' and the clear autumn is as though locked into the dark, deep courtyard. There is a great deal to be got from this line if you only think about it carefully.

The next four lines are truly famous and speak of the pain of parting and separation. Had you ever thought of this pain as being like a skein of wool which refuses to be disentangled and cannot be cut off cleanly? Or of the word 'parting' as leaving 'a taste in the heart'? These four lines are known to millions of Chinese and written as they were, by an emperor, prisoner in a foreign land, who had lost everything and was soon to die (forced to take poison by his captors), they take on a particular poignancy. May they say something to you as they have done to me over a period of many years.

Chinese language and culture are rich treasure-troves for us to explore. My hope is that, through this book, as well as learning some useful Chinese, you have been able to catch glimpses of them and are eager for more.

**Exercise 22.1**

Answer the following questions based on the text.

- 1 王先生和史小姐来的时候刮不刮风?
- 2 王先生给李太太什么小礼物?
- 3 史爱理觉得把书寄到英国贵不贵?
- 4 如果行李超重史爱理打算怎么办?
- 5 王先生觉得他在中国的一年过得快不快? 他用什么成语来描写这点?
- 6 李先生用什么话来说明王永寿很了解中国人?
- 7 史爱理在中国学得怎么样? 你怎么知道呢?
- 8 他们喝的酒是国产的吗?
- 9 李先生为什么开始照不了相呢?
- 10 王先生为什么向史爱理要笔?

- 1 王先生和史小姐来的时候刮不刮风?
- 2 王先生给李太太什么小礼物?
- 3 史爱理觉得把书寄到英国贵不贵?
- 4 如果行李超重史爱理打算怎么办?
- 5 王先生觉得他在中国的一年过得快不快? 他用什么成语来描写这点?
- 6 李先生用什么话来说明王永寿很了解中国人?
- 7 史爱理在中国学得怎么样? 你怎么知道呢?
- 8 他们喝的酒是国产的吗?
- 9 李先生为什么开始照不了相呢?
- 10 王先生为什么向史爱理要笔?

- 11 吃饺子的时候可以放什么?
- 12 王先生怎么会吃醋呢?
- 13 李先生什么时候过生日? 那个时候王永寿和史爱理大概在哪儿?
- 14 李老师属什么?
- 15 史爱理为什么哭起来呢?
- 16 李先生打算什么时候开一个联欢会?
- 17 他们飞机什么时候起飞? 他们应该几点钟到机场?
- 18 史爱理为什么不让李先生和李太太去送他们呢?
- 19 李太太怎么证明她快要醉了?
- 20 李先生为什么说李太太多喝一点酒没有关系?

### Exercise 22.2

Translate the text into colloquial English.

### Exercise 22.3

Correct the following *bìngjù* ('sick sentences'). Give the correct version (This exercise is based on the grammar of Chapters 16-22.)

*Běijīng cóng Tiānjīn hěn jìn* → *Běijīng lí Tiānjīn hěn jìn*.

- 1 *Zhǔnbèi hǎo le ma? Wǒ liǎng diǎn zhōng kuài yào zǒu le.*
- 2 *Yúnnán zài Zhōngguó de nánxī bù.*
- 3 *Bǎ zhàoxiàngjī bù kěyǐ jiè* ('lend; borrow') *gěi tā.*
- 4 *Wǒ yǒu sīshí zhī bǎi fēn de bǎwò* (把握 'certainty').
- 5 *Yīngguó de shēnghuófèi bǐ Zhōngguó hěn guì.*
- 6 *Gǔdiǎn yīnyuè gēn xiàndài* (现代 'modern') *yīnyuè hǎo tīng yíyàng.*
- 7 *Fánshì lǎoshī cái xǐhuan jiāo shū.*
- 8 *Chúfēi nǐ yuánliàng* (原谅 'forgive') *wǒ, wǒ jiù bù kū le.*
- 9 *Zài guówài shíjiān hěn cháng, kǒngpà* (恐怕 'be afraid') *huàn qián fēi bùkě.*
- 10 *Shàngjí* (上级 'superiors') *xiàng bù xǐhuan tā, bù zhīdao shénme yuányīn* (原因 'reason, cause').
- 11 *Nǐ chuān shang tàiyángjìng qù cānjiā* (参加 'take part in') *liánhuānhuì tài bù héshì* (合适 'suitable') *ne.*
- 12 *Tā jiào dǎ le yì tā hútu* (一塌糊涂 'a terrible mess').
- 13 *Shèihuìzhǔyìyuán yīnggāi tóngqíng qióng rén* (穷人 'poor person').
- 14 *Wǒ gēn nǐ bú tóngyì – tā bìng bú shi ge huài rén.*
- 15 *Qǐng nǐ bǎ èrshí'ér kè de kèwén fānyì Yīngwén.*

# key to the exercises

## **Exercise 1.1**

- 1 Wǒ bù zuò.
- 2 Nǐ bù hǎo.
- 3 Wǒ bù hē chá.
- 4 Nǐ bù xǐhuan Zhōngguó.
- 5 Lǐ xiānsheng bù xièxie wǒ.
- 6 Wáng xiānsheng bù qǐng nǐ hē Zhōngguó chá.

## **Exercise 1.2**

- 1 Wǒ xǐhuan bu xǐhuan hē kāfēi? Wǒ xǐhuan hē kāfēi. Wǒ bù xǐhuan hē kāfēi.
- 2 Nǐ xièxie bu xièxie wǒ? Nǐ xièxie wǒ. Nǐ bù xièxie wǒ.
- 3 Wáng xiāngsheng qǐng bu qǐng wǒ zuò? Wáng xiānsheng qǐng wǒ zuò. Wáng xiānsheng bù qǐng wǒ zuò.
- 4 Lǐ xiānsheng xǐhuan bu xǐhuan hē shuǐ? Lǐ xiānsheng xǐhuan hē shuǐ. Lǐ xiānsheng bu xǐhuan hē shuǐ.

## **Exercise 1.3**

- 1 Mr King invites me to drink Chinese tea.
- 2 Mr Li greatly dislikes Mr King. (Mr Li can't stand Mr King.)
- 3 Mr King doesn't like Mr Li much either.
- 4 You don't thank me so I don't thank you either.

## **Exercise 1.4**

- 1 Wáng xiānsheng, nǐ hǎo. Qǐng zuò.
- 2 Wǒ bù hē chá.
- 3 Nàme, kāfēi xíng ma? (Nàme, kāfēi xíng bu xíng?)
- 4 Xièxie, kāfēi hěn hǎo.
- 5 Wǒ hěn xǐhuan nǐ.
- 6 Qǐng hē Zhōngguó chá.
- 7 Tā yě bù xǐhuan wǒ.

## **Exercise 2.1**

- 1 F 2 T 3 T 4 F 5 F.

**Exercise 2.2**

- 1 Lǐ tàitai, rènshì nín wǒ zhēn gāoxìng.
- 2 Nàme, júzizhī hǎo ba?
- 3 Wǒ hěn xǐhuān hé jiǔ.
- 4 Nín bù huì hé sì bēi pútáojiǔ.
- 5 Wǒ gěi Lǐ xiānsheng jièshào wǒ àiren.

**Exercise 2.3**

Mr King invites Mr Li for a drink. Mr Li is very pleased. He's a great drinker. What about his wife Zhou Dejin? His wife doesn't drink. She drinks orange juice. She is also very much against Mr Li drinking.

**Exercise 2.4**

- 1 Nǐ hé jiǔ ma?
- 2 Wǒ bù huì hé jiǔ. Nín ne?
- 3 Zhōu xiānsheng, wǒ gěi nǐ jièshào wǒ àiren.
- 4 Tā rènshì tā ma? (Tā rènshì bu rènshì tā?)
- 5 Wǒ àiren xī yān, wǒ hěn bù gāoxìng.
- 6 Kāfei hǎo ba?
- 7 Zhāng xiānsheng bù huì Yīngyǔ.
- 8 Nǐ bù huì hé qī bēi jiǔ.

**Exercise 3.1**

- 1 Wǒmen hé shénme?
- 2 Lǐ xiānsheng hé Lǐ tàitai yǒu jǐ ge xiǎoháir?
- 3 Pútáojiǔ zěnmeyàng?
- 4 Wáng xiānsheng de nǚ péngyou zài nǎr?
- 5 Tāmen míngtiān wǎnshàng jǐ diǎn zhōng qù chī fàn?
- 6 Wáng xiānsheng qǐng shéi chī fàn?

**Exercise 3.2**

- 1 Jiǔ diǎn (zhōng)
- 2 Shíyī diǎn bàn
- 3 Liǎng diǎn èrshíwǔ fēn
- 4 Sān diǎn wǔshí fēn or Chà shí fēn sì diǎn
- 5 Yì diǎn yí kè or yì diǎn shíwǔ fēn
- 6 Bā diǎn (líng) wǔ fēn
- 7 Wǔ diǎn sìshíwǔ fēn or wǔ diǎn sān kè or chà yí kè liù diǎn
- 8 Shí'èr diǎn shí fēn.

**Exercise 3.3**

- 1 Wǒ yǒu liǎng ge xiǎoháir.
- 2 Tā méi yǒu nǚháir.
- 3 Nǐmen yǒu liù ge péngyou.
- 4 Zhōngguó zài nǎr?
- 5 Tāmen jǐ suí?
- 6 Wǒmen shí diǎn zhōng qù.
- 7 Hē lùchá zěnmeyàng?
- 8 Zhōu Déjin méi yǒu jié hūn.

9 Wáng tàitai wǎnshang bù chī fàn.

10 Zhāng xiānsheng xiǎng qǐng wǒmen, wǒmen jiù bù qǐng tā.

### Exercise 3.4

We have four children, three girls and a boy. I have many friends. I have invited two friends to come to our house tomorrow evening for a meal. My wife is very put out because she doesn't know them.

### Exercise 3.5

1 Nǚháir sān suì, nánháir liǎng suì.

2 Tā jié hūn le ma? / Tā jié hūn le méi you? / Tā jié hūn méi jié hūn / Méi yōu.

3 Nǐmen míngtiān wǎnshang qù tā jiā chī fàn ma?

4 Tā xiànzài zài nǎr? Tā zài Lúndūn.

5 Nǐ yǒu duixiàng ma? / Nǐ yǒu mei yǒu duixiàng? Méi yǒu, wǒ cái shíwǔ suì.

6 Wǒmen liǎ hěn xǐhuan hé kāfēi.

7 Nǐ jǐ diǎn zhōng zài jiā? / Qī diǎn zěnmeyàng? / Hǎo, jiù qī diǎn ba.

8 Wǒ àiren hěn hǎo dànsi tā bù tài xǐhuan shuō huà.

9 Nǐ de péngyou zài nǎr? Wǒ xiǎng qǐng tā chī fàn.

### Exercise 4.1

1 Zhè wèi xiǎojie zài Běijīng Dàxué xuéxí Hànyǔ.

2 Nǎ wei xiānsheng shì nǐ àiren?

3 Wáng tàitai yǒu jǐ ge xiǎoháir?

4 Nà wǔ ge rén dōu shì nǐ péngyou ma?

5 Tāmen jǐ diǎn zhōng lái wǒmen jiā chī fàn?

### Exercise 4.2

1 Wǒmen xuéxí de hěn shǎo.

2 Nǐmen shuō Hànyǔ, shuō de búcùo. Nǐmen Hànyǔ shuō de búcùo. Hànyǔ nǐmen shuō de búcùo.

3 Tā shēnghuó de bù zěnmeyàng.

4 Nà ge rén zuò Zhōngguó cài zuò de hěn hǎo. Nà ge rén Zhōngguó cài zuò de hěn hǎo. Zhōngguó cài nà ge rén zuò de hěn hǎo.

5 Zhè ge péngyou shuō huà shuō de bù duō. Zhè ge péngyou huà shuō de bù duō. Huà zhè ge péngyou shuō de bù duō.

### Exercise 4.3

1 Tā shuō Hànyǔ shuō de hǎo ma? Tā shuō Hànyǔ shuō de hǎo bu hǎo? Tā shuō Hànyǔ shuō de zěnmeyàng? Tā shuō Hànyǔ shuō de bù hǎo.

- 2 Wǒ yí ge péngyou hé jiǔ hé de duō ma? Wǒ yí ge péngyou hé jiǔ hé de duō bu duō? Wǒ yí ge péngyou hé jiǔ hé de zěnmeyàng? Wǒ yí ge péngyou hé jiǔ hé de bù duō.
- 3 Shǐ xiāojie xuéxí de mǎn ma? Shǐ xiāojie xuéxí de mǎn bu mǎn? Shǐ xiāojie xuéxí de zěnmeyàng? Shǐ xiāojie xuéxí de bù mǎn.
- 4 Gōngrén jīntiān lái de shǎo ma? Gōngrén jīntiān lái de shǎo bu shǎo? Gōngrén jīntiān lái de zěnmeyàng? Gōngrén jīntiān lái de bù shǎo.
- 5 Yīngguórén zuò Yīngguó cài, zuò de hǎo ma? Yīngguórén zuò Yīngguó cài, zuò de hǎo bu hǎo? Yīngguórén zuò Yīngguó cài, zuò de zěnmeyàng? Yīngguórén zuò Yīngguó cài, zuò de bù hǎo.

#### Exercise 4.4

- 1 Wáng xiāngsheng de nǚ péngyou shì Shǐ xiāojie.
- 2 Shǐ xiāojie shì Yīngguórén.
- 3 Shǐ xiāojie zài Zhōngguó xuéxí Hànyǔ.
- 4 Zài Bēijīng Dàxué shēnghuó hěn būcuò (hěn hǎo).
- 5 Tāmen jīntiān wǎnshàng chī Zhōngguó cài.
- 6 Wáng xiānsheng hé Shǐ xiāojie kuàizi yòng de būcuò (hǎo).
- 7 Lǐ tàitai zuò cài zuò de hěn hǎo.
- 8 Shǐ xiāojie huì zuò Yīngguó cài.

#### Exercise 4.5

- 1 I can cook but not very well. My girlfriend says I'm a very plain cook. We have many Chinese friends, they cook Chinese food very well. They use chopsticks very well too. What about you?
- 2 A friend of mine went to France to work. French food is delicious – he ate a lot of it. Now he's very fat. His wife says 'How about your eating less and working more?' My friend says 'Eating less is OK but not working more!'.

#### Exercise 4.6

- 1 Wǒ zìjǐ bù huì zuò cài dànshí wǒ àiren zuò cài zuò de fēicháng hǎo.
- 2 Nǐ shì Fǎguórén ma? Wǒmen liǎ yě (dōu) shì Fǎguórén.
- 3 Nà wèi xiānsheng shì liǎng diǎn bàn lái de ma? Bù, tā shì sān diǎn lái de.
- 4 Nǐ zài nǎr xuéxí Hànyǔ? Xuéxí de zěnmeyàng?
- 5 Tā shì cóng Měiguó lái de. Tā zài zhèr gōngzuò.
- 6 Xiànzài jǐ diǎn? Nǐ(men) yídìng hěn è le!
- 7 Wǒ jīntiān méi yǒu kòng dànshí (wǒ) míngtiān bù gōngzuò. Shí diǎn (zhōng) xíng ma?

- 8 Tā yòng kuàizì yòng de bú tài hǎo dànshí (tā) zuò Zhōngguó cài zuò de hǎo jíle (hěn hǎo/fēicháng hǎo).

### Exercise 5.1

- 1 Dèng xiǎojie yào huí Zhōngguó qu.
- 2 Érzi jìn kètīng lai le.
- 3 Tā jìn wòshì qu le.
- 4 Nǐmen yīnggāi huí jiā lai.
- 5 Wǒ xiǎng huí Yīngguó qu.

### Exercise 5.2

- 1 Tāmen xǐhuan chī fàn háishi xǐhuan shuō huà?
- 2 Dèng tàitai yào mǎi bīngxiāng háishi yào mǎi xīyījī?
- 3 Zhōu xiānsheng qù Fǎguó háishi Zhāng xiānsheng qù (Fǎguó)?
- 4 Shíjiān guò de kuài háishi guò de mǎn?
- 5 Wǒ péngyou de fángzì méi yǒu chúfáng háishi méi yǒu yùshì?
- 6 Nǐ xuéxí Hànyǔ háishi xuéxí dìlì?

### Exercise 5.3

- 1 Dìfang xiǎo, bīngxiāng, xīyījī dōu fàng zài zhèr.
- 2 Xiāoháir xiànzài zài chúfáng hé niúnǎi.
- 3 Tā yuànnyì zǎozāor qù.
- 4 Wǒ gěi nǐmen tiān le bù shǎo máfan.
- 5 Lǐ lǎoshī gāogāoxìngxìng de huí dàxué qu le.
- 6 Wàimiàn de rén dōu shì nánnde.

### Exercise 5.4

The kids are going to my mum's place this evening. She's got a lot of space and has both a washing machine and a fridge. The children like to enjoy themselves, my mum also likes to take them to the cinema but she has neither the time nor the money so she has to let them play in the big garden. When they stop playing they can sit in the kitchen and chat and have something to eat. After the meal they can watch the (colour) TV.

### Exercise 5.5

- 1 Wǒ hé wǒ péngyou xiǎng qù Měiguó.
- 2 Tā zài nǎr kàn diànshì? Zài wòshì háishi zài kètīng?
- 3 Fùqīn shuō tā bù rènshì nǐ le.
- 4 Lǎo le, tā jiù bù hé jiǔ le.
- 5 Tā yòu xǐhuan jiāo shū yòu xǐhuan dù shū.
- 6 Tā zhǐ hǎo zhàn zài nàr.
- 7 Wǒ bùzhì wán kètīng, jiù ānānjìngjìng de kàn shū.
- 8 Xièxie nǐ de rèqíng zhāodài, wǒ yídìng zài lái.

**Exercise 7.1**

- 1 Érzi bì nǚ'ér dà wǔ suì.
- 2 Jiějie bì mèimei dà liù suì.
- 3 Shí Àilǐ bì Wáng Yǒngshòu xiǎo liǎng suì.
- 4 Lì tàitai bì Lǐ xiānsheng xiǎo sān suì.
- 5 Zhōngguó chá bì Zhōngguó jiǔ hǎo hé.
- 6 Zhōngguó cài bì Yīngguó cài hǎo chī.
- 7 Tā de shèntǐ bì nǐ (de shèntǐ) hǎo.
- 8 Wǒ nán péngyou bì wǒ gāoxìng.

**Exercise 7.2**

- 1 Shǐ xiǎojie yǒu liǎng ge gēge hé yí ge mèimei.
- 2 Wǒ dìdì èrsímíng suì.
- 3 Lǎo jiàoyuán bāshí suì, shèntǐ hěn hǎo.
- 4 Zhè ge gōngrén bì nà ge gōngrén xiǎo wǔ suì.
- 5 Tā àiren bì tā māma dà sì suì.
- 6 Jiǔshíjiǔ ge fúwùyuán zài Běijīng Fàndiàn gōngzuò.
- 7 Nà ge yīshēng hé liù bēi jiǔ hé liǎng bēi kāfei.

**Exercise 7.3**

- 1 Zhāng Zhànyī de jiā zài Běijīng.
- 2 Tā jiā yǒu wǔ kǒu rén.
- 3 Tā méi yǒu dìdì, (yě méi yǒu) mèimei.
- 4 Tā jiějie méi yǒu jié hūn.
- 5 Tā gēge èrshíbā suì.
- 6 Zhāng Zhànyī èrshíliù suì bàn.
- 7 Tā bàba zài Běijīng Yǔyán Xuéyuàn jiāo Hányǔ.
- 8 Tā jiāo wàiguó liúxuéshēng Hányǔ.
- 9 Bù, tā māma bì bàba xiǎo. Māma wǔshíbā suì le. Bù gōngzuò, yǐjīng tuixiū le.
- 10 Tāmen lìa shèntǐ fēicháng hǎo.
- 11 Zhāng Zhànyī bù dāng gōngrén.
- 12 Tā de gōngzuò hái guò de qù.
- 13 Tāmen yì jiā rén gǎnqíng (dōu) hěn hǎo.

**Exercise 7.4**

- 1 My elder sister is 29 years old and is still not married. She is a doctor in Shanghai. She really likes her job. My mum says she ought to get married – that it's not OK for a girl not to. My sister says it doesn't matter if she gets married a bit later on (in life) but my mum doesn't agree.
- 2 Zhou Gengxin is from Tianjin. He is a worker. There are four people in his family – his dad, mum, his younger brother and himself. His (younger) brother is 21, one and a half years younger than him. His brother is studying English at Beijing

University. Zhou Gengxin is also studying English but he has very little time to study so his English is very bad.

### Exercise 7.5

- 1 Nǐ jiào shénme míngzì? Wǒ jiào Shī Àili.
- 2 Tā méi yǒu xiōngdì, yě méi yǒu jiěmèi.
- 3 Wǒ qǐng liǎng ge Zhōngguó péngyou míngtiān wǎnshàng lái wǒ jiā chī wǎnfàn.
- 4 Zài Běijīng Yǔyán Dàxué xuéxí Hànyǔ de nà ge rén hái méi yǒu lái ne.
- 5 Wǒ péngyou èrshíbā suì hái méi yǒu jié hūn ne.
- 6 Zài Shànghǎi de nà ge Měiguó yīshēng yǐjīng tuìxiū le ma?
- 7 Zài Běijīng Dàxué xuéxí Hànyǔ de nà ge Yīngguó nǚ háizi zuò cài zuò de hǎo jíle (fēicháng hǎo).
- 8 Wǒ àiren hé tā liǎng ge mèimeimei gǎnqíng (dōu) hěn hǎo.
- 9 Hěn duō Zhōngguórén shuō Yīngyǔ shuō de fēicháng hǎo.
- 10 Wǒ nǚ péngyou bì wǒ dà yí suì dànshi bì wǒ gēge xiǎo liǎng suí.
- 11 Nà ge rén bù tài hǎo suōyǐ wǒ méi qǐng tā hé yì bēi.
- 12 Xǐyǐjí hé cǎisè diànshì (cǎidiàn) dōu méi yǒu dànshi wǒmen hái guò de búcuò (rìzi guò de hái kěyǐ).

### Exercise 8.1

- 1 Fùmǔ zǒu jìn kètīng lai.
- 2 Tāmen bān chū shūzhuō qu.
- 3 Xiōngdì bān jìn shuāngréncchuáng qu.
- 4 Xiǎoháir pǎo chū cèsuǒ lai.
- 5 Jiàoyuán ná xià liǎng běn shū lai. Jiàoyuán ná xiàlai liǎng běn shū.

### Exercise 8.2

- 1 Zhāng Zhānyī de jiā yǒu sān jiān fáng.
- 2 Zhè bù bāokuò cháfáng hé cèsuǒ.
- 3 Tā fùmǔ shuì zài kètīng (lǐ).
- 4 Tā hé tā gēge shuì yí ge fángjiān.
- 5 Tāmen xiōngdì de fángjiān dà.
- 6 Jiejie de fángjiān fàng de xià yì zhāng chuáng, yì zhāng xiǎo zhuōzi hé yì bǎ yǐzi.
- 7 Tāmen xiōngdì, zǐmèi bù cháng(cháng) zài jiā.
- 8 Shuāngréncchuáng zài kètīng lǐ.
- 9 Bú shì, shì Rìběn huò.
- 10 Dà yuánzhuō hé yǐzi (dōu) bù zài kètīng lǐ.
- 11 Zhōngguó fángzū, shuǐdiànfei piányi.
- 12 Ān Zhōngguó xiānzài de biāozhǔn Zhāng Zhānyī hé tā yì jiā rén guò de hái búcuò.

**Exercise 8.3**

- 1 *Měi ge fādá guójia fángzū dōu hěn guì.*
- 2 *Zhōngguórén hǎo, Yīngguórén yě dōu hěn hǎo.*
- 3 *Féngrènji méi yǒu zúhéyīnxǐang nàme guì.*
- 4 *Shuì jiào yǐqián yīnggāi shuā yá.*
- 5 *Tā nà tiān xiǔxi le.*
- 6 *Yóude yīfu wǒ bù yuànnyì xǐ.*
- 7 *Fúwùyuán pǎo jìn fāndiàn lai.*
- 8 *Yìxiē Riběnrén gōngzī hěn gāo.*
- 9 *Sūgélán bǐ Měiguó ānjìng de duō.*
- 10 *Tiāngqì hǎo de shíhou, yào hǎohǎor wán(r).*

**Exercise 8.4**

What's your own room like? Do you have much furniture? What is there besides a bed? Do you have a hi-fi, a washing machine and a TV? What about a fridge? Do you live more comfortably than you used to? Do you have high wages? Are (your) rent, water and electricity dear? Who turns on your central heating for you? I bet it's not your boss? Is life OK for you? I hope things are going well for you!

**Exercise 8.5**

- 1 *Fàntīng lǐ yǒu yì zhāng zhuōzi hé liù bā yǐzi.*
- 2 *Suīrán shūfáng lǐ yìbān hěn ānjìng, dànshí hěn duō rén dōu méi yǒu.*
- 3 *Tiānqì lěng de shíhou, dàjiā (dōu) xǐhuan shāo nuǎnqì.*
- 4 *Gōngzī gāo de shíhou, shuǐdiànfei guì yě méi (yǒu) guānxi.*
- 5 *Àn xiànzài de biāozhǔn, Yīngguó suàn shì (yí) ge fādá guójia.*
- 6 *Bú shi měi ge shāfā dōu hǎo zuò.*
- 7 *Zúhéyīnxǐang méi yǒu yǐqián nàme guì.*
- 8 *Fùmǔ zuótian méi qu, wǒ hé jiějie jīntiān yě bù qù.*
- 9 *Dānrēnchuáng bǐ shuāngrénchuáng hái (gèng) piányi.*
- 10 *Shēnghuó chúle chī fàn yǐwài, hái yǒu shénme?*
- 11 *Xiǔxǐ yǐqián, qǐng bāngzhù wǒ bān chū yīguì qu.*
- 12 *Suīrán chuāngshù, mén dēng dōu hěn gānjìng, dànshí zhuōzi, yǐzi dōu hěn zāng.*

**Exercise 9.1**

1 F 2 F 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 F 7 F 8 T 9 F 10 T.

**Exercise 9.2**

- a *háishi; shuǐguōzhī; shuì jiào; huòzhě kěkě; cóngqián; zěnme; jiù; bù.*
- b *jiù; nǎr; tǐng; suīrán; mǒu; zěnme; dōu.*

**Exercise 9.3**

- 1 Rúguō méi yǒu càidān, wǒ jiù bù kěyǐ dìng cài.
- 2 Nímen cóngqíán méi zhùguo lǚguǎn.
- 3 Fādá guójia shēnghuó yué lái yuè nán.
- 4 Yǒu shíhou suàn zhàng yòng jìsuànjī hěn fāngbiàn or Suàn zhàng yòng jìsuànjī yǒu shíhou hěn fāngbiàn.
- 5 Chéng qiān shàng wàn de yóukè měi nián qù yóulǎn Chángchéng or Méi nián chéng qiān shàng wàn de yóukè qù yóulǎn Chángchéng.
- 6 Jǐntiān bú è le. Wǒ shénme yě bù xiǎng chī.
- 7 Tā nà ge rén hǎo jíle, tā shuō tiānqì zěnme lèng, dōu méi guānxi.

**Exercise 9.4**

- 1 The Chinese like using Thermos flasks a lot because they're generally very keen on drinking tea. Most Chinese prefer drinking green tea (China tea) but Indian tea is OK too on occasions. When they drink Indian tea the vast majority of Chinese drink it with milk and sugar (add milk and sugar).
- 2 There are many types of cups – teacups, coffee cups, glass cups and cups for wine. It's the same for bottles. There are bottles for flowers, milk and for hot water.

**Exercise 9.5**

- 1 Suān niúnǎi méi yǒu le. Nǐ kěyǐ hē rè niúnǎi huòzhě liáng niúnǎi.
- 2 Nǐ qùguo Chángchéng ma? Chéng qiān shàng wàn de yóukè měi nián qù yóulǎn.
- 3 Yàoshi méi yǒu wèishéngzhī, shàng cèsuō jiù hěn nán (bù fāngbiàn).
- 4 Dàjiā yīnggāi xiāngshòu yíyàng de quánlì.
- 5 Wǒmen bùdé bù chéngrèn Ruishì qiǎokèli fēicháng hǎo chī.
- 6 Rúguō nǐ yuànyì yòng jìsuànjī suàn zhàng, jiù qǐng ba.
- 7 Jǐntiān wǎnshàng nǐ qǐng shéi chī fàn? Wǒ shéi dōu bù qǐng.
- 8 Kèwén yuè lái yuè nán (le).
- 9 Qíshí tā de zuòfǎ zuì hǎo.
- 10 Zhù shuāngrénfángjiān de nà ge rén shì Dōngjīng shāngrén or shì cóng Dōngjīng lái de shāngrén.
- 11 Suírán xià yǔ, tā shuō tā (hái) huì lái.
- 12 Guòqù wàiguó gōngsī zhù Zhōngguó de dàiibiǎo hěn shǎo, (dànshi) xiànzài yuè lái yuè duō le.

**Exercise 10.1**

- 1 Tā xī shí fēn zhōng de yān.
- 2 Lǎoshī jiāo yí ge xiǎoshí de shū.

- 3 Gēge lù bàn ge zhōngtóu de yīn.
- 4 Wǒ àiren huà sān kè zhōng de huàr.
- 5 Chǎngzhǎng kāi sān ge bàn xiǎoshí de chē.
- 6 Dìdi kàn shū, kàn bàn ge xiǎoshí.
- 7 Lǎorén shuì jiào, shuì yí ge bàn xiǎoshí.
- 8 Wǒ yí ge péngyou zǒu lù, zǒu qī ge zhōngtóu.
- 9 Nà wèi xiānsheng shuō huà, shuō hěn cháng shíjiān le.
- 10 Nǎ wèi xiǎojie néng dǎ zì, néng dǎ jiǔ ge xiǎoshí?

### Exercise 10.2

- 1 Xīngqīsì      2 xīngqījǐ? xīngqīyī      3 qīyuè  
 4 shī'èr ge yuè      5 qī tiān      6 sānshí tiān  
 7 èrshíbā tiān; èrshíjiǔ tiān  
 8 sānbǎiliùshíwǔ tiān; sānbǎiliùshíliù tiān.

### Exercise 10.3

- 1 (-) 2 (-) 3 (+) 4 (-) 5 (+) 6 (+) 7 (-) 8 (-)  
 9 (-) 10 (+)

### Exercise 10.4

Some people think (that) British weather is pretty awful but conversely there are also some people who feel that British weather is pretty good – neither hot nor cold, nor does it always snow in winter but there's no getting away from one thing and that's no matter where you are, it often rains (in Britain). In China there are normally many sunny days and few cloudy ones but Britain is just the opposite with lots of cloudy days and few sunny ones. Some say this ties in with British people's peculiar temperament but others say it is related to their lovable character. Which view is right? Over to you!

### Exercise 10.5

- 1 Xīngqītiān wǒ péngyou lái de shíhou, wǒ zhèngzài kàn diànshi ne.
- 2 Wǒ xiǎng gēn nǐ yiqǐ qù Yínhéyuán sàan (san) bù.
- 3 Tā yī kāishǐ dǎ hūlu wǒ jiù zǒu!
- 4 Chuānghu kāizhe dànshi mén guānzhe.
- 5 Gōngyuán lǐ rènào jíle, dǎ tàijíquán de dǎ tàijíquán, zhào xiàng de zhào xiàng, shài tàiyáng de shài tàiyáng.
- 6 Tiānqì hǎo de shíhou, wǒ zài wàimian zuòzhe kàn shū.
- 7 Wǒmen měi tiān wǎnshàng chàng bàn ge xiǎoshí de gēr jiù shàng chuáng. Wǒmen měi tiān wǎnshàng chàng gēr chàng bànge xiǎoshí jiù qù shuì jiào.
- 8 Yīnwèi tā xīngqī'èr bìng méi yǒu dǎ diànhuà, suǒyǐ wǒ bù zhīdao wǒ qù bu qù.

- 9 Yàoshi zài fùmǔ jiā, wǒ chángcháng dào fùjìn de gōngyuán qù dǎ wǎngqiú.  
 10 Tā xiàozhe shuō tā yǐjīng jié hūn le.  
 11 Nimen zài tīng shōuyīnji ma? Méi yǒu, wǒmen tīngzhe lù yīn.  
 12 Nǐ míngtiān qù kàn xì shì bu shi? Kěxī wǒ bù néng gēn nǐ yìqǐ qù.

### Exercise 11.1

- 1 Tā de fāyīn qīngchu shi qīngchu dànshì . . .  
 2 Wáng xiānsheng de Hànyǔ shuǐpíng gāo shi gāo kěshì . . .  
 3 Zhè běn xiǎoshuō yǒu yìsi shi yǒu yìsi kěshì . . .  
 4 Duì wàiguórén lái shuō, Zhōngwén de sīshēng nán shi nán dànshì . . .  
 5 Qīngdǎo píjiǔ hǎo hē shi hǎo hē kěshì . . .

### Exercise 11.2

1 cái 2 jiù 3 jiù 4 cái 5 cái 6 cái 7 jiù 8 cái.

### Exercise 11.3

- |             |                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 dōng      | 2 chūqu/chūlai or jìnqu/jìnmai |
| 3 chūlai    | 4 wán                          |
| 5 bǎo       | 6 shàng                        |
| 7 jiàn      | 8 qǐlai                        |
| 9 xià       | 10 qīngchu; dōng               |
| 11 dào/zháo | 12 xiàqu.                      |

### Exercise 11.5

Zhang Zhanyi is an attendant. He likes his job a lot because he has the chance to meet lots of different people. They may be American or British or then again Chinese or Japanese. Some foreigners can speak very fluent Chinese (*putonghua*) but with a strong foreign accent, their pronunciation and grammar are not very accurate but you can still understand them. It's very funny when some foreigners start speaking Chinese because they don't use tones. There are also some foreigners, with a very high level of Chinese who have been living in China for ages and can read (and understand) Chinese newspapers and novels and can also write Chinese more or less. It's not at all easy for adults to learn Chinese (start learning Chinese), you have to take your hat off to them. Some people can't even speak their own language properly let alone a foreign one!

### Exercise 11.6

- 1 Wǒ cāi bú shi Měiguórén jiù shi Yīngguórén.  
 2 Tā de shēngdiào fēicháng hǎo dànshì tā de fāyīn bù xíng.

- 3 Wǒ yǐjīng qù le liù cì Zhōngguó kěshì wǒ háishi tīng bu dǎng Zhōngguórén shuō shénme.
- 4 Dui wǒ zuì hǎo de péngyou lái shuō, xiě zì bǐ kàn shū gèng (hái) yǒu yìsi.
- 5 Tā (de) tóufa zhēn cháng. Tā zěnme hái méi jiǎn ne?
- 6 Tā zhī yòng le liǎng nián (de shíjiān) jiù xué hǎo (xǐangwò) le pǔtōnghuà.
- 7 Tā xué Zhōngwén xué le sān nián le suōyǐ tā de shuǐpíng xiāngdāng gāo.
- 8 Wǒ (shì) zuótiān cái zhīdao tā bù huì chá Zhōngwén cídiǎn/zìdiǎn (de).
- 9 Dàjiā dōu xǐhuan gēn yǒu yìsi de rén jiǎng huà dànshi zhè yàng de rén bù duō.
- 10 Chúfēi yǒu zhònggyào (de) shìqing wǒ cái dǎrǎo nǐ.
- 11 Wǒ cái gēn tā shuō le yì, liǎng cì huà, jiù hěn xǐhuan tā le.  
(This one is difficult!)
- 12 Tā tèbié lǎn. Tā jīntiān cái kàn wán yí yè.

**Exercise 14.1**

- 1 zhāng 张.    2 jiàn 件.    3 jiàn 件.  
4 bāo 包.    5 kuài 块.    6 jiàn 件, mǐ 米.

**Exercise 14.2**

- 1 二十块.    2 四块八.    3 三块九.  
4 六块九.    5 一毛二.    6 八毛四.

**Exercise 14.4**

- 1 píng ‘grass’.    2 chèn ‘clothing’.  
3 méi ‘water’.    4 xiè ‘speech’.  
5 kuà ‘earth’.    6 bēn ‘tree’.  
7 shì ‘sun’.    8 yān ‘fire’.  
9 zhì ‘heart’.    10 mǎi ‘big’.

**Exercise 14.5**

- 1 4 (一).    2 4 (丁).    3 5 (口).    4 3 (女).    5 3 (戈).  
6 4 (才).    7 5 (匕).    8 7 (大).    9 7 (心).    10 4 (才).

**Exercise 14.6**

- 1 售货员是中国人。The shop assistant is Chinese.  
2 地图三毛二一张。Maps are 0.32 yuan each.  
3 那本杂志八毛九。That magazine costs 0.89 yuan.  
4 您没买东西。You haven't bought anything. You haven't been shopping.  
5 苹果一块四一斤。Apples are 1.4 yuan a catty.

**Exercise 14.7**

- 1 我要买三本杂志和一份报。(张 is used as the MW for newspaper if there are only 4 pages!)
- 2 我昨天买了两件衬衫。
- 3 他要买东西。
- 4 你(您)要几米丝绸?
- 5 谢谢。再见。

**Exercise 15.2**

- 1 *yì, zhì, zěn* (心).
- 2 *bào, tǐng, pái* (才).
- 3 *hào, yuán, wèn* (口).
- 4 *dōu, bù, yóu* (又).
- 5 *lái, qī, xià* (一).

**Exercise 15.3**

- 1 地、块、去。
- 2 要、好。
- 3 中、出。
- 4 杂、本、果、乐、样。
- 5 服、有、期。
- 6 图、四、国。
- 7 影。
- 8 会、个。
- 9 件、份、什、你。
- 10 这、还。

**Exercise 15.4**

- 1 看电影怎么样? How about seeing a film?
- 2 楼下有人吗? Is anybody downstairs? Are there people downstairs?
- 3 《日出》这部电影有没有意思? Is the film *Sunrise* any good? (interesting).
- 4 上个星期你没来。You didn't come last week.
- 5 音乐会几月几号? When is the concert? (What day of what month).

**Exercise 15.5**

- 1 今天十一月三号(日)。
- 2 请问, 今天几月几号?
- 3 楼上没有人。
- 4 大家说买东西很有意思。
- 5 你还有钱吗? 你要多少?
- 6 我一九六八年在中国。

**Exercise 16.2**

- |                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| 1 <i>yǎn</i> 'water'.  | 2 <i>xíng</i> 'to step with left foot'. |
| 3 <i>jì</i> 'speech'.  | 4 <i>dǎ</i> 'hand'.                     |
| 5 <i>qǔ</i> 'ear'.     | 6 <i>guò</i> 'walking'.                 |
| 7 <i>yīng</i> 'grass'. | 8 <i>jiē</i> 'hand'.                    |
| 9 <i>mài</i> 'ten'.    | 10 <i>tiān</i> 'horizontal line'.       |

**Exercise 16.3**

- 1 6 (𠵼).
- 2 8 (𠄎).
- 3 3 (一).
- 4 2 (口).
- 5 2 (𠂇).
- 6 10 (𠂊).
- 7 5 (日).
- 8 5 (贝).
- 9 6 (𠂔).
- 10 5 (女).

**Exercise 16.4**

- 1 心 → 意、您、思、怎。 2 接 → 报、接、拔、打。  
 3 口 → 喂、叫、哪、名。 4 定 → 客、定、字、家。  
 5 演 → 没、演、满。

**Exercise 16.5**

- 今天没有人给我打电话。 Nobody phoned me today.
- 首都剧场在哪儿? Where is the Capital Theatre?
- 他明天下午就要去北京了。 He's going to Beijing tomorrow afternoon.
- 你后天能不能来接我? Can you come and meet me the day after tomorrow?
- 星期五行不行? 不行, 就星期六吧。 Is Friday OK? If not, then how about Saturday?

**Exercise 16.6**

- 我今天去首都剧场了。
- 您贵姓? 我姓史, 名字叫史爱理。
- 他说他给我们留两张票。
- 他们要今天下午看那部电影, 可是客满了。
- 我下个星期五来取票行吧?

**Exercise 17.1**

- Jǐngshān Gōngyuán zài Gùgōng běibianr.
- Qiánmén zài Máo Zhǔxí Jìniàntáng nánbianr.
- Rénmín Dàhuítáng zài Rénmín Yīngxióng Jìniànbei xībianr.
- Zhōngguó Lishi Báwùguǎn zài Rénmín Yīngxióng Jìniànbei dōngbianr.
- Máo Zhǔxí Jìniàntáng zài Rénmín Dàhuítáng dōngnánbianr.

**Exercise 17.2**

- Jǐngshān Gōngyuán lí Qiánmén bìjiào yuǎn.
- Rénmín Dàhuítáng lí Rénmín Yīngxióng Jìniànbei hěn jìn.  
Wàng dōng zǒu jiù dào le.
- Máo Zhǔxí Jìniàntáng lí Tiān'ānmén bú tài yuǎn wàng bēi zǒu jiù dào le.
- Shì, jiù zài Zhōngguó Lishi Báwùguǎn duìmiàn. (jiù zài Zhōngguó Lishi Báwùguǎn hé Rénmín Dàhuítáng zhōngjiān)
- Niújīn lí Lúndūn yǒu jiǔshíyī gōnglǐ.
- Sānshí hào lí èrshíqī hào yǒu sān tiān.
- Yuándàn lí Shèngdànjié yǒu yí ge xīngqī.

## Exercise 17.4

(Exercise 17.1)

- 1 景山公园在故宫北边儿。
- 2 前门在毛主席纪念堂南边儿。
- 3 人民大会堂在人民英雄纪念碑西边儿。
- 4 中国历史博物馆在人民英雄纪念碑东边儿。
- 5 毛主席纪念堂在人民大会堂东南边儿。

(Exercise 17.2)

- 1 景山公园离前门比较远。
- 2 人民大会堂离人民英雄纪念碑很近，往东走就到了。
- 3 毛主席纪念堂离天安门不太远，往北走就到了。
- 4 是，就在中国历史博物馆对面。（就在中国历史博物馆和人民大会堂中间。）

## Exercise 17.5

- 1 请问，天坛在哪儿？怎么走？
- 2 人民大会堂离这儿远吗？不远，就在对面。
- 3 人民英雄纪念碑在人民大会堂东边儿，中国历史博物馆西边儿。

## Exercise 18.1

- 1 *Qǐng nǐ bǎ shōujù shōu hǎo.*
- 2 *Bāoguǒdān shàng yào bǎ jījiàn rén de dìzhǐ hé xìngmíng xiě qīngchu.*
- 3 *Bǎ guàhàofei jiā shàng yígòng yào duōshao qián?*
- 4 *Tā méi bǎ bāoguǒdān tián hǎo.*
- 5 *Yóukè méi bǎ Gùgōng hǎohāo or kānyikàn.*
- 6 *Shòupiàoyuán liú gěi le Wáng xiānsheng liǎng zhāng hǎo piào.*
- 7 *Wāiguó zhuānjiā yīnggāi jì xiàlai jùchǎng de diànhuà haòmǎ.*
- 8 *Shòuhuòyuán bú yuàn yì mài gěi tā sīchóu chènshān.*
- 9 *Dàifu yào sòng bìngrén dào yīyuàn.*
- 10 *Wǒ yí ge Zhōngguó péngyou yì tiān néng xī wán liǎng bāo yān.*

## Exercise 18.2

- 1 *xiāng, nín, zěn, yì, sī, zhì* (心).
- 2 *qǐng, shuō, xiè, huà* (ì).
- 3 *wèi, shòu, yuán, ma, wèn, hào* (口).
- 4 *jìn, hái, guò, zhè, yuǎn, biān* (i\_).
- 5 *bù, nà, yóu, dōu* (þ ).

**Exercise 18.3**

- |             |            |
|-------------|------------|
| 1 东西、东边。    | 2 外国、中国。   |
| 3 售货员、售票员。  | 4 毛衣、衣服。   |
| 5 电影、电话、电报。 | 6 星期二、星期四。 |
| 7 地图、地方、地址。 | 8 收件人、寄件人。 |

**Exercise 18.4**

Mr King is a very nice person but he has one small defect, he really likes spending money. If he goes to buy a shirt, he ends up with three, if you want him to buy a magazine he buys you ten. He says they were all very interesting so he bought them all. How can you feel relaxed if you let him go and do the shopping? 王先生人很好，但是他有一个小毛病，他很喜欢花钱。去买一件衬衫，他就买三件；你要他买一本杂志，就给你买十本。他说都很有意思，所以都买了。让他去买东西，你怎么能放心呢？

**Exercise 18.5**

- 1 (Zài) Zhōngguó yóudiàn jú kěyǐ dǎ chángtú diànhuà.
  - 2 Zhè shì shōujù, qǐng shōu hǎo.
  - 3 Qǐng tián zhè zhāng bāoguǒ dān. Bǎ shōujìanrén hé jijiānrén de dìzhǐ hé xìngmíng (tián) xiě qīngchu.
  - 4 Yóupiào tiē hǎo le ma? Hái méi yǒu ne.
  - 5 Jì shū hěn máfan, dànshi (hěn) zhídé.
- 1 (在)中国邮电局可以打长途电话。
  - 2 这是收据，请收好。
  - 3 请填这张包裹单，把收件人和寄件人的地址和姓名(填)写清楚。
  - 4 邮票贴好了吗？还没有呢。
  - 5 寄书很麻烦，但是(很)值得。

**Exercise 19.1**

- 1 硬卧跟软卧一样吗？不一样，软卧比硬卧贵多了。
  - 2 硬卧跟硬座有什么不一样？硬座比硬卧便宜得多。
  - 3 你跟他一样不喜欢听音乐吗？不，我很喜欢听古典音乐。
  - 4 我跟我的未婚妻一样浪漫，都喜欢写诗。
  - 5 在欧洲日本电视机跟在中国一样难买吗？
- 1 Is a hard sleeper the same as a soft sleeper? No, a soft sleeper is much more expensive than a hard sleeper.
  - 2 What's the difference between a hard seat and a hard sleeper? A hard seat is much cheaper than a hard sleeper.
  - 3 Are you and she alike in not enjoying listening to music? No, I like listening to classical music very much.

- 4 I am as romantic as my fiancée, we both like writing poetry.  
 5 Are Japanese TVs as hard to buy in Europe as they are in China?

### Exercise 19.2

- 1 国际饭店比北京饭店贵百分之五十。
- 2 水电费比去年贵百分之十。
- 3 下铺比上铺贵百分之二十。
- 4 打长途电话比打电报贵百分之多少？贵百分之二百。
- 5 日本衣服比中国衣服贵百分之三百。
- 6 苹果不好吃，我只吃了四分之一。
- 7 外国烟好抽，这包已经抽了三分之二。
- 8 音乐会的票昨天卖了八分之七。
- 9 国产电视比外国电视便宜一倍。
- 10 在中国美国专家比英国专家多十倍。

### Exercise 19.3

- 1 坐火车比坐公共汽车快多了。
- 2 开飞机的人工资很高。
- 3 在中国骑自行车的人非常多。
- 4 有的人喜欢骑摩托车，因为很自由。
- 5 英国人十七岁才可以开车。

### Exercise 19.4

- |               |                  |
|---------------|------------------|
| 1 Hot dog.    | 2 Hamburger.     |
| 3 Coca Cola.  | 4 Yamaha.        |
| 5 Canada.     | 6 Cuba.          |
| 7 Cambridge.  | 8 Warsaw.        |
| 9 Washington. | 10 Mrs Thatcher. |

### Exercise 19.5

- 1 The Chinese mid-Autumn Festival falls on the 15th day of the 8th lunar month. On that evening everybody will look at the moon and eat mooncakes(!).
- 2 Tang poems are very famous and also very interesting. Students of Chinese will find them all worth looking at.
- 3 It's certainly fun to go shopping with friends.
- 4 What is your surname? And what is your Christian/given name? I'll make a note of them both if that's OK with you.
- 5 If you have a student card and a preferential card (yellow card), you pay the same price as the Chinese on the train, plus you can pay in RMB.

### Exercise 20.1

- 1 niàn. 2 biàn. 3 fānyì. 4 xiě. 5 huàn.

**Exercise 20.2**

1 F 2 F 3 T 4 T 5 F 6 T 7 F 8 F 9 T 10 T 11 F

**Exercise 20.3**

- 1 凡是中国人都喜欢吃中国菜。
- 2 凡是在中国银行换钱，牌价都一样。
- 3 活期存款和定期存款利息率不同。
- 4 我今天非把旅行支票换成美元不可。
- 5 去国外，非带护照不可，否则不能出境。
- 6 历史上亚洲和非洲很不一样。
- 7 他(她)的电话号码还记得吗？千万别忘了明天给他(她)打电话。
- 8 欧洲国家政治上大同小异。
- 9 不管你签了字没有，我都要看护照。
- 10 不管营业员点了几次钱，他也要点一次。
- 11 你的意思是除非碰到他才认识认识，对不对？
- 12 除非有规定，我才这么办。

- 1 All Chinese like eating Chinese food.
- 2 Any branch of the Bank of China has the same exchange rate for changing money.
- 3 Current accounts and deposit accounts have different rates of interest.
- 4 I have to change my traveller's cheques into US dollars today.
- 5 When you go abroad you have to take your passport (with you) otherwise you can't leave the country.
- 6 Asia and Africa are very different from a historical point of view.
- 7 Do you still remember his (her) telephone number? Don't forget to give him (her) a call tomorrow whatever you do.
- 8 Politically speaking European countries are pretty much the same with a few minor differences.
- 9 Regardless of whether you've signed (your name) or not, I want to look at your passport.
- 10 No matter whether the bank clerk had counted the money several times or not, he wanted to (had to) count it (once).
- 11 What you're saying is that you'll only get to know him if you happen to bump into him, is that it?
- 12 I won't do it like this unless there are regulations (to that effect).

**Exercise 20.4**

- 1 Wǒ jīntiān gěi nǐ tiān le bù shǎo máfan. Yíngyèyuán: Méi shénme, huānyíng nǐ míngtiān zài lái.

- 2 Tā jīntiān běnlái yào qù yínháng huàn qián dànshi tā wàng le  
bǎ lǚxíng zhīpiào dài lai.
- 3 Nǐ huáiyí tā shénme? Wǒ bù zhīdao, kěshì wǒ bù xǐhuan tā  
nà ge yàngzì.
- 4 Dìngqī cúnkuǎn de lì(xī)lù bǐ huóqī cúnkuǎn (yào) gāo de  
duō.
- 5 Kāi chē de bù yīnggāi hē jiǔ.
- 1 我今天给你添了不少麻烦。营业员：没什么，欢迎你明天再来。
- 2 她今天本来要去银行换钱，但是她忘了把旅行支票带来。
- 3 你怀疑他什么？我不知道，可是我不喜欢他那个样子。
- 4 定期存款的利(息)率比活期存款(要)高得多。
- 5 开车的不应该喝酒。

### Exercise 21.1

- 1 hǎoxiàng. 2 xiàng, xiàng. 3 xiàng, xiàng.  
4 hǎoxiàng. 5 xiàng, hǎoxiàng.

### Exercise 21.2

- 1 bèi, jiào, ràng. 2 shòu. 3 bèi, ràng, jiào.  
4 shòu. 5 bèi, ràng, jiào.

### Exercise 21.3

- 1 dài. 2 dài. 3 chuān. 4 dài. 5 chuān.

### Exercise 21.4

- 1 Kěyǐ liǎojiě Zhōngguórén shēnghuó de gègè fāngmiàn.  
2 Tāmen zài Hángzhōu.  
3 Tāmen yǐbiān chīzhe sānmíngzhì, yǐbiān liáo tiān(r).  
4 Zhōngguórén xǐhuan zhào xiàng. Tāmen de zhàoxiàngjī  
yǒu láoshi de, yě yǒu xīnshì de.  
5 Rìběn zhàoxiàngjī tèbié shòu huānyíng.  
6 Zhíyè zhàoxiàng de hěn duō.  
7 Zhōngguórén bù xǐhuan yí ge rén chū qu wán(r).  
8 Zhāng Xiqún shì Sūzhōurén. Tā lái Hángzhōu bàn shì(!).  
9 Tā xīnlǐ bù tài gāoxìng.  
10 Wǒmen shòuguo jiàoyù de rén yě yǒu yìdiǎn zhōngzú piānjiàn.  
11 Tā wánquán tóngyì tā de shuōfǎ.  
12 Yīnwèi chéngrèn cuòwù děngyú gǎi le yíbàn(r) le.

- 1 可以了解中国人生活的各个方面。  
2 他们在杭州。  
3 他们一边吃着三明治一边聊天(儿)。  
4 中国人喜欢照相。他们的照相机有老式的，也有新式的。

- 5 日本照相机特别受欢迎。
- 6 职业照相的很多。
- 7 中国人不喜欢一个人出去玩(儿)。
- 8 张锡群是苏州人。他来杭州办事。
- 9 她心里不太高兴。
- 10 我们受过教育的人也有一点种族偏见。
- 11 他完全同意他的说法。
- 12 因为承认错误等于改了一半(儿)了。

### Exercise 21.5

- 1 In some ways Chinese and foreigners are pretty similar – they both like to go out and enjoy themselves and seek paradise on earth! Who doesn't want to live comfortably, wear nice clothes and eat well? The Chinese are no exception. In the past there were very few Chinese tourists but now they are getting more and more numerous every year.
- 2 It is very difficult to understand another nationality (ethnic group), it's not even easy to understand your own! The Chinese people are a very ancient people. Their history and culture are very different from our own, let alone their script! Learning Chinese is not only very interesting but also of use to us as individuals.

### Exercise 21.6

- 1 Zánmēn yìbiān tán jiàoyu yìbiān kàn rìluò ba.
  - 2 'Zì qī qī rén' shì yí jù hěn zhíde zhùyì de chéngyǔ.
  - 3 Yīnwei Xiānggǎng wèntí, Zhōng、Yīng guānxì biàn de hěn fùzá.
  - 4 Tā shì wǒ de tóngshì suǒyǐ wǒ de yìjiàn dāngrán (huì) shòu yǐngxiǎng.
  - 5 Nǐ jīnnián lián yì tiān jià dōu méi yǒu (fàng), nánguài nǐ nàme (or zhème) lèi.
  - 6 Tā jīntiān lián yí ge sānmíngzhì dōu méi chī, tā zěnme bù è ne?
- 1 咱们一边谈教育，一边看日落吧。
  - 2 “自欺欺人”是一句很值得注意的成语。
  - 3 因为香港问题，中、英关系变得很复杂。
  - 4 他是我的同事，所以我的意见当然(会)受影响。
  - 5 你今年连一天假都没有(放)，难怪你那么(or 这么)累。
  - 6 她今天连一个三明治都没吃，怎么不饿呢？

### Exercise 22.1

- 1 Tāmen lái de shíhou guā dà fēng.
- 2 Tā gěi tā jǐ ge guàntóu hé yìxiē shuǐguǒ.
- 3 Tā juéde bǎ shū jì dào Yīngguó hěn guì.
- 4 Tā dǎsuàn bǎ yìxiē zhòng de dōngxi fàng zài shǒutíbāo lǐ.

- 5 Tā juéde tā zài Zhōngguó de yì nián guò de hěn kuài. Tā yòng 'guāngyīn sì jiàn, rìyuè rú suō' zhè jù chéngyǔ lái miáoxiě zhè diǎn.
- 6 Tā shuō Wáng Yǒngshòu shì dìdìdàodào de Zhōngguótōng, gēn Zhōngguórén dǎchéng yípiàn.
- 7 Tā xué dào le hěn duō dōngxi (tā xué de hěn hǎo) yīnwei tā shuō 'jīnnián shōuhuò hěn dà'.
- 8 Shì guóchǎn de.
- 9 Yīnwei tā wàng le bǎ jìngtóugài dǎkāi (le).
- 10 Yīnwei tā de yuánzhūbì huài le.
- 11 Hái kěyǐ fàng jiàngyóu hé cù.
- 12 Yīnwei tā juéde Shǐ Àili de péngyou tài duō le.
- 13 Lǐ xiānsheng xià ge xīngqīwǔ guò shēngrì. Nà ge shíhou tāmen dàgài zài Yīngguó.
- 14 Tā shǔ hǔ.
- 15 Yīnwei tā bù xǐhuān gēn péngyou gàobié.
- 16 Tā dǎsuàn děng Shǐ Àili hé Wáng Yǒngshòu zài lái Zhōngguó kāi yí ge liánhuānhuì.
- 17 Tāmen (de) fēijī xiàwǔ sì diǎn sìshí qifēi. Tāmen yīnggāi sān diǎn (zhōng) dào.
- 18 Yīnwei tā bù xiǎng zài gào yí cì bié. (NB bù xiǎng not bù yào)
- 19 Tā ràng tāmen kàn tā de liǎn, dōu hóng le.
- 20 Yīnwei Lǐ tàitai bú (shi) kāi chē (de).

- 1 他们来的时候刮大风。
- 2 他给她几个罐头和一些水果。
- 3 她觉得把书寄到英国很贵。
- 4 她打算把一些重的东西放在手提包里。
- 5 他觉得他在中国的一年过得很快。他用“光阴似箭”，“日月如梭”这句成语来描写这点。
- 6 他说王永寿是地地道道的中国通，跟中国人打成一片。
- 7 她学到了很多东西(她学得很好)因为她说“今年收获很大”。
- 8 是国产的。
- 9 因为他忘了把镜头盖打开(了)。
- 10 因为他的圆珠笔坏了。
- 11 还可以放酱油和醋。
- 12 因为他觉得史爱理的朋友太多了。
- 13 李先生下个星期五过生日，那个时候他们大概在英国。
- 14 他属虎。
- 15 因为她不喜欢跟朋友告别。
- 16 他打算等史爱理和王永寿再来中国开一个联欢会。
- 17 他们(的)飞机下午四点四十起飞。他们应该三点(钟)到。

- 18 因为她不想再告一次别。  
 19 她让他们看她的脸，都红了。  
 20 因为李太太不(是)开车(的)。

### Exercise 22.2

- L** There you are (welcome, welcome). Come in.
- Mrs Li** Is it cold outside?
- S** A bit. It's very windy, we were cycling against the wind, it was really strenuous.
- K** This is a little token of our regard. (*He gives Mrs Li several tins and some fruit.*)
- Li** You're too kind, you've gone to too much expense again.
- S** It's nothing, it's just a small token.
- Li** Well thank you both, but good friends shouldn't stand on ceremony.
- Mrs Li** Stop hanging about (don't keep standing) in the hall, come inside and sit down and warm up.
- Li** Would you like tea or coffee?
- K** Tea I think.
- Mrs Li** Ah, Aili, you're going back soon, so today is really your 'last supper', what a (great) shame.
- S** Don't say that. When I hear that I feel really uncomfortable.
- Mrs Li** Have you finished packing?
- S** Almost.
- Mrs Li** If you need any help don't hesitate to say so, for goodness sake don't stand on ceremony.
- S** I wouldn't, but really there isn't anything. I've posted (mailed) off most of the books, (gosh) the postage cost a fortune but there was no way round it.
- Li** Will you (your luggage) be overweight?
- S** Normally it doesn't matter if you're two or three kilos over. I'm planning to put some of the heavy things in my hand luggage. I've already shared out tapes and things amongst friends. I'll give you the classical tapes of Beethoven, Mozart and so on.
- Li** Great! Thanks. (*Turning to King*) Yongshou, you've been teaching for a year now, what thoughts do you have on it all? I've heard that in a way you'd like to stay on in China, is that true?
- K** This is called 'enjoying yourself so much that you forget to go home', but recently my parents haven't been too well so I want to go back and take stock before deciding anything. Ah – a year has passed really quickly, how time flies.

- Li** You're a real old China hand, as Chinese as the Chinese. No wonder your students like you so much, hard-working (conscientious), capable plus a great sense of humour. Aili, you don't want to leave either do you?
- S** No, I've really got a lot out of this year. What a pity I can't stay any longer.
- Li** You really are returning with a sack full of goodies!
- S** I suppose you could put it like that.
- Mrs Li** Come and eat. I've made the dumplings and they're cooking. Let's have some wine first. Here's a plate of hors d'oeuvres. Wenhua, how about opening the wine?
- Li** This is a pretty good bottle. It's white wine from (made by) a joint venture. Most Chinese wine is sweet but we know that you're not too keen on sweet wines. Right, bottoms up! Bon voyage (safe journey) and come back soon!
- S** Here's to your good health and your heart's desire!
- Li** Let's take a few photos. Hang on (wait though) let's take them after the dumplings have come, there'll be more of a Chinese atmosphere (flavour!) then. Ah, here they are.
- K** Have you got a flash?
- Li** Yes. Is everybody ready? Smile please! Oh, I've forgotten to take the lens cap off.
- Mrs Li** You're so muddleheaded (you're such a twit!), wasting (other) people's expressions, now hurry up!
- K** I'll take a few snaps too. When I've had them developed, I'll post (mail) them to you. Have you got our address in England?
- Li** No.
- K** I'll write it down for you. Aili, have you got a pen? My ballpoint doesn't work (is broken).
- S** Yes, here you are. Zhou Dejin, your dumplings are really delicious, next time you'll definitely have to teach me how to make them.
- Mrs Li** No problem (fine), I hope you'll come back as soon as possible . . . the soya sauce and vinegar are both here.
- S** Thanks. I'll have a little soya sauce. There's no way that a person like me can take vinegar (be jealous), ha ha!
- Mrs Li** You see, Yongshou, if you were to stay for another year there'd be absolutely no problem!
- K** I'm quieter and more stable than Aili. She has friends all over the world. If anybody's going to be jealous it would certainly be me!
- S** What rubbish my dear! How many female students of yours have told me how handsome (attractive) you are!

- L** Come on, let's have another drink. May our friendship last for ever! Bottoms up!
- K** Next Friday is your birthday, (Mr/teacher) Li, what a shame that we'll have already left China by then so we're going to propose a toast to you now and wish you 'a life as long as the Southern Mountain and as blessed as the Eastern Sea' in advance. We've also got you a little something.
- Li** You can't do that! You've already given (us) some things when you came, how come you're giving some more?
- S** They were for you both, this is a birthday present. We hope you can add a little tiger energy to the Year of the Tiger!
- L** You really shouldn't have.
- Mrs Li** What's the matter Aili? Don't cry, we'll meet again some day(!) Come back (again) after you've graduated.
- S** Don't take any notice of me. It's OK (it's nothing), I'm just being sentimental! Whenever I part from friends, I always think of the phrase 'meeting and parting are both difficult'.
- Mrs Li** That is true. Your coming from so many thousands of miles away was really quite something but you'll still have plenty of opportunities to come to China in the future.
- L** How about our having a get-together when you come back? Come on, another toast, to our meeting again next year or the year after.
- Mrs Li** You have to (can't not) go back, this time Aili, you've still got one year of studying to do but later on there'll be masses of opportunities.
- L** When's the plane leaving?
- K** 4.40 pm. We should get there by 3.
- L** We'll come and see you off eh?
- S** There's no need. The airport's miles away, it's much too inconvenient. Let's count this evening as our goodbye otherwise I won't be able to stand it if we have to say yet another one.
- L** We'll see. If I can get off class a bit earlier we'll definitely go. All right, that's enough of that (the subject's closed). Let's drink a last toast.
- Mrs Li** No more for me (I've had it!), I'll be drunk if I drink any more. Look, my face is all red.
- L** Never mind, you're not driving! Come on, joy and happiness to us all! Bottoms up!
- Mrs Li,  
K and S** } Bottoms up!

**Exercise 22.3**

- 1 Zhǔnbèi hǎo le ma? Wǒ liǎng diǎn zhōng jiù yào zǒu le.
- 2 Yúnnán zài Zhōngguó de xīnán bù.
- 3 Bù kěyǐ bǎ zhàoxiāngjī jiè gěi tā.
- 4 Wǒ yǒu bǎifēn zhī sīshí de bāwò.
- 5 Yīngguó de shēnghuófèi bì Zhōngguó guì duō le (or guì de duō).
- 6 Gǔdiǎn yīnyuè gēn xiàndài yīnyuè yīyàng hǎo tīng.
- 7 Fánshì lǎoshī dōu xǐhuan jiāo shū.
- 8 Chúfēi nǐ yuánliàng wǒ, wǒ cái bù kū.
- 9 Zài guówài shíjiān hěn cháng, kǒngpà fēi huàn qián bùkě.
- 10 Shàngjí hǎoxiàng bù xǐhuan tā, bù zhīdao shénme yuányīn.
- 11 Nǐ dài shàng tàiyángjìng qù cānjiā liánhuānhuì tài bù héshì ne!
- 12 Tā bèi dǎ le yì tā hútu.
- 13 Shèhuìzhǔyìzhě yīnggāi tóngqíng qióng rén.
- 14 Wǒ bù tóngyì nǐ – tā bìng bú shi ge huài rén.
- 15 Qǐng nǐ bǎ èrshí'èr kè de kèwén fānyì chéng Yīngwén.

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
à	啊	4	ah, oh (expressing sudden realization)
àiren	爱人	2	husband, wife
āiyā	哎呀	20	oh dear (expressing surprise)
àn (zhào)	按(照)	8	according to, on the basis of
ānjìng	安静	5	quiet
ba	吧	2	particle indicating suggestion
bā	八	14	eight
bǎ	把	18	preposition showing disposal; also MW for things with handles
bàba	爸爸	7	daddy, dad
bái	白	22	white; blank
bǎi	百	19	hundred
bǎifēn zhī -	百分之 -	19	per cent
bān	搬	8	remove, move
bàn	半	7	half
bàn	办		handle, attend to, do
bàn dào	办到	10	get something done, accomplish
bàn shì	办事	21	arrange for something to be done

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
bàn fǎ	办法		method
bàng	棒	11	excellent (coll.)
bāngmáng	帮忙	19	help, do a favour
bāngzhù	帮助		help
bàn lǐ	办理	20	conduct, handle, transact
bāo	包	14	packet (of), package
bāo	包	22	make ( <i>jiǎozi</i> ); to wrap; include
bào (zhǐ) MW zhāng or fèn(r)	报(纸)张、份儿	11	newspaper
bǎocún	保存	20	keep, preserve
bāoguǒ	包裹	18	parcel, package
bāoguǒdān	包裹单	18	parcel form
bāokuò	包括	9	include
bāo shàng	包上		wrap up
bàoxiāo	报销		reimbursement of expenses
bǎwò	把握		certainty
bēi	杯	2	cup (ful)
běi	北	17	north
Bēiduōfēn	贝多芬	22	Beethoven
Běihǎi Gōngyuán	北海公园	10	Beihai Park
Běijīng Dàxué	北京大学	4	Beijing University
Běijīng Fàndiàn	北京饭店	7	Beijing Hotel
Běijīng Yǔyán Xuéyuàn	北京语言学院	7	Beijing Languages Institute (Now known as the Beijing Language [and Culture] University)
bēizi	杯子	6	cup
bèizi	被子	6	duvet, quilt
MW chuáng	床		
běn	本	14	MW for books, magazines
bèn	笨		stupid
běndì	本地	21	this locality
béng	甭	20	needn't
běnlái	本来		originally

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
běnrén	本人	20	in person; oneself
bǐ	比	7	compared with
biàn	变	10	change
biǎoqíng	表情	22	expression; to express one's feelings
biāozhǔn	标准	8	criterion; standard
bié	别	4	don't
bǐfang shuō	比方说	11	for example
bǐjiào	比较	7	relatively
bīng	兵	7	soldier
bìng	并	10	negative emphasizer
bīngguì	冰柜	6	freezer
bīngxiāng	冰箱	5	refrigerator
bingrén	病人		patient, sick person
bǐrú	比如	10	for example, such as
bìxiūkè(chéng)	必修课(程)	22	obligatory or required course
bìyè	毕业	22	graduate
bō	拨	16	dial
bōlibēi	玻璃杯	6	glass (tumbler)
bǔ	捕		arrest
bù	布		cloth
bù	部	15	MW for films
bù	不	1	not
bù shǎo	不少	19	quite a bit, quite a few
bú shi ... ér shi	不是...而是	11	not ... but
bú shi ... jiù shi	不是...就是	11	if it's not ... then it's ...
bù tóng	不同	20	different
bù yuǎn wàn lǐ	不远万里	22	not considering 10 000 li too far to come
ér lái	而来		
bù zěnmeyàng	不怎么样	4	not up to much
bù ... le	不...了	5	not ... any more
búbì	不必		not have to
búcuò	不错		pretty good
búdàn ... érqiě	不但...而且	4	not only ... but also

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
bùdé bù	不得不	9	cannot but, have to
bùduì	部队	7	army
bùfen	部分	9	part, section
bùguǎn	不管		no matter
búguò	不过	22	but, however, only
búyòng	不用	22	need not
bùzhì	布置	5	decorate
cāi	猜	11	guess
cái	才	11	not . . . until . . . ; only
cài	菜	4	dish, vegetable
cǎidān	菜单	9	menu
cǎisè	彩色	5	colour; multicoloured
cānjiā	参加	8	join; attend
cāo xīn	操心	20	worry about
cèsuǒ	厕所	6	toilet
chá	茶	1	tea
chá	查	11	check; investigate
chà	差		lack, short of
chá zìdiǎn	查字典	11	consult a dictionary
chábēi	茶杯	9	teacup
chàbuduō	差不多	22	almost, nearly
cháguǎn	茶馆	10	teahouse
chájī	茶几	6	coffee table
cháng (cháng)	常(常)	7	often
cháng	长	11	long
Chángchéng	长城		Great Wall
chángshòu	长寿	16	long life
chángróng diànhuà	长途电话	18	long-distance telephone call
chǎnpǐn	产品	22	product
chǎojīdàn	炒鸡蛋	9	scrambled eggs
chāozhòng	超重	22	overweight
chātóu	插头	6	plug (electric)
cháyè	茶叶	9	tea (leaves)
chāzi	叉子	6	fork
chāzuò	插座	6	socket
chēkù	车库		garage
chéng	成		become

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
chéng qiān	成千上万	9	thousands and thousands
shàng wàn			
chēnghū	称呼	21	form of address; to address
chéngniánrén	成年人	11	adult
chéngrèn	承认	9	admit (e.g. mistake)
chéngshì	城市	20	city, town
chènshān	衬衫	14	shirt, blouse
MW jiàn	件		
chī bǎo	吃饱	5	eat one's fill
chī cù	吃醋	22	feel jealous
chī fàn	吃饭	3	eat (meal)
chízi	池子	6	sink
(chōng)xi	(冲)洗	22	develop (as of film); to wash
chōu yān	抽烟		smoke (v-o)
chū	出	10	come or go out
chū chāi	出差	21	be on a business trip
chuān	穿		wear (clothes)
chuán	船		boat (n)
chuáng	床		bed
chuángdān	床单	8	
chuángdiàn	床垫	6	sheet
chuānghu	窗户	6	mattress
chuānglián	窗帘	6	window
chúfáng	厨房	5	curtain
chúfei	除非	20	kitchen
chūjìng	出境	20	unless
chúle . . . (yǐwài)	除了... (以外)	8	leave the country
			except, apart from
chūntiān	春天	10	spring (season)
chūshì	出示	20	show, produce
cì	次	11	time, occasion
		19	MW with number of train
cídài	磁带	22	tape
cóng	从	4	from (movement involved)
cóngqián	从前	9	previously, in the past

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
cù	醋	6	vinegar; jealousy (as in love affair)
cún qián	存钱	20	deposit money
cuòwù	错误	21	mistake, error
dà	大	7	grown up; big
dǎ diànbào	打电报		send a telegram
dǎ diànhuà	打电话	16	telephone (v-o)
dǎ gē(r)	打嗝(儿)		belch, burp, hiccup (v-o)
dǎ gǔ	打鼓		beat a drum
dǎ hān	打鼾		snore (v-o)
dǎ hāqian	打哈欠		yawn (v-o)
dǎ hū(lu)	打呼噜		snore (colloq.) (v-o)
dà móojīn	大毛巾	6	bath towel
dǎ pái	打牌	10	play cards or mahjong
dǎ pìgu	打屁股		spank (v-o)
dǎ qì	打气		pump, inflate (v-o)
dǎ qiú	打球		play ball
dǎ tàijíquán	打太极拳	10	do taijiquan
dǎ zhēn	打针		give/have an injection
dǎ zì	打字		type (v-o)
dǎchéng yípiàn	打成一片	22	become one with, identify with
dàgài	大概		probably
dàhòutiān	大后天	16	day after the day after tomorrow
dāi	呆	10	stay (v)
dài	带	20	bring; take
dài	戴	21	wear (hats, gloves, glasses etc.)
dàibiǎo	代表	9	representative
dàifu	大夫		doctor
dàjiā	大家	15	everybody
dǎkāi	打开	22	open (up); switch on
dāndiào	单调	7	monotonous, dull
dāng	当	5	serve as; be

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
dāngrán	当然	9	of course, naturally
dānréncihuáng	单人床	6	single bed
MW zhāng	张		
dānrénfángjiān	单人房间	9	single room
dànshi	但是	4	but
dānwèi	单位	8	unit
-dào	到	7	manage to do action of verb up to; to
dào	到	17	arrive, go to
dào ... qù/lái	到...去/ (来)	10	go/come to ...; to arrive at ...
dàochù	到处	10	everywhere
dàoqī	到期	20	become due, expire
dàoshì	倒是	11	indeed, as it happens
dāozi	刀子	6	knife
dǎrǎo	打扰	11	disturb
dàren	大人		adult
dàshēng (de)	大声(地)	21	loudly
dǎsuàn	打算	22	intend, to plan
dǎtīng	打听	20	enquire
dàtóng-xiǎoyì	大同小异	20	similar in major area but different on minor points
dàyī	大衣		overcoat
MW jiàn	件		
de	的	3	marker
de shíhou	的时候	8	when
Déguó	德国		Germany
děi	得	5	must, need
děng	等	8	etc.
děng	等	19	wait
děngyú	等于	19	be equal to; be equivalent to
dì	地	10	locality, land; the earth
dì	第	11	ordinal prefix
diǎn	点	11	point, aspect
diǎn	点	20	count, check (e.g. money to see if correct)

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
diǎn zhōng	点钟	3	o'clock
diànbào	电报	18	telegram
MW fēn	份		
diàndēng	电灯	6	electric light
diànhuà (jī)	电话(机)	6	telephone
diànhuà hào mǎ	电话号码		telephone number
diànnǎo	电脑	8	computer
diǎnr (coll.)	点儿	20	spot, small branch
diànshān	电扇	6	electric fan
diànshì (jī)	电视(机)	5	television
MW tái	台		
diànxuàn	电线	6	electric cable
diànyǐng	电影	15	film
MW bù	部		
dìdào	地道	22	genuine
dìdi	弟弟	7	younger brother
dìfang	地方	5	place
dílǐ	地理		geography
dǐng	顶	19	top, peak; MW for hats
dǐng	顶	22	go against
dìng	订	9	order (in advance)
dìng	订	19	book, reserve; subscribe to
dìnghūn	订婚	19	be or get engaged
dìngqī cúnkuǎn	定期存款	20	deposit account
díréń	敌人		enemy
ditǎn	地毯	6	carpet
ditú	地图	14	map
MW zhāng	张		
diū	丢	20	lose
dìxiōng	弟兄		brothers
dìzhǐ	地址	18	address
dōng (bianr)	东(边儿)	17	east (side)
dǒng	懂	11	understand
Dōngjīng	东京		Tokyo
dōngtiān	冬天	8	winter
dōngxi	东西	14	thing(s)
dōu	都	4	both, all
dòu	逗	19	funny
dú shū	读书	5	study
duǎn	短	10	short (in length)

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
duì	对	3	correct
duì... lái shuō	对...来说	11	as far as... /is concerned
duìbuqǐ	对不起	19	sorry; excuse me
duihuàn	兑换	20	exchange (money)
duimian	对面	17	opposite
duixiāng	对象	3	steady boy- or girlfriend
duizhào	对照	20	compare
duō	多	4	many; more
duō	多	11	more than, odd
duō(me)	多(么)	22	how
duō dehěn	多得很	22	very many
duōshao	多少	14	how many, how much
duōshù	多数	9	majority
è	饿	4	hungry
èi	欸	20	yes (verbal response to enquiry)
ér	而	19	but; and
èr	二	14	two (number)
èrlóu	二楼	6	first floor
érqiè	而且	9	moreover
érzi	儿子	5	son
fādá	发达	8	developed, advanced
Fǎguó	法国		France
Fǎguórén	法国人		French (person)
fān'ér	反而	10	on the contrary
fàng(zài)	放(在)	5	put (in or on)
fàngjià	放假	21	have a holiday or vacation
fàngxīn	放心	16	set one's mind at rest
fāngbiàn	方便	20	convenient
fángfei	房费	9	room charge
fǎnguólái	反过来		conversely
fángjiān	房间	5	room

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
fāngmiàn	方面	9	aspect, respect
fángzǐ	房子	5	house
MW suǒ/ge	所/个		
fángzū	房租	8	rent (for house)
fānqiézhī	蕃茄汁	9	tomato juice
fánshì	凡是	20	every, any, all
fàntīng	饭厅	6	dining room
fānyì	翻译		translate, interpret
fǎnzhèng	反正	10	anyway, in any case
fāxiàn	发现		discover
fāyīn	发音	11	pronunciation
fāzhǎn	发展	21	develop
fēicháng	非常	4	extremely
fēiji	飞机	22	aeroplane
MW jià	架		
(fēi) jīchǎng	(飞)机场	22	airport
feijin(r)	费劲(儿)	22	strenuous, energy consuming
fēizào	肥皂	9	soap
MW kuài	块		
Fēizhōu	非洲		Africa
fēn	分	14	portion; MW for money
fēn	分	22	divide; distribute; distinguish
fēn(r)	份(儿)		copy
fēng	封	17	MW for letter
fēng	风	22	wind
féng shàng	缝上		sew up
féngrènji	缝纫机	8	sewing-machine
MW tái	台		
fēnháng	分行	20	branch (bank)
fǒuzé	否则	20	otherwise, or else
fù	付	9	pay
fùjìn	附近	10	nearby
fùmǔ	父母	8	parents
fùnǚ	妇女		woman
fùqīn	父亲		father
fùrén	夫人	22	Mrs; Madame (formal)

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
fúwù	服务	9	service; to serve
fúwùyuán	服务员	7	attendant
fùyú	富于	22	rich in, full of
fùzá	复杂		complex, complicated
gǎi	改	21	alter, change, correct
gān bēi	干杯	22	drink a toast
gǎn xìngqù	感兴趣		be interested in something
gànbiù	干部	10	cadre
gāng	刚	19	just
gāngcái	刚才	11	just now
gānjìng	干净		clean
gǎnjué	感觉	21	feeling, sense
gǎnkuài	赶快		hastily
gǎnqíng	感情	7	feeling, emotion
gǎnxiǎng	感想	22	reflections, thoughts
gāo	高	4	tall, high
gāo bízi	高鼻子	21	big nose
gàobié	告别	22	take leave of
gàosu	告诉		tell, let know
gāoxìng	高兴	2	happy
gébì	隔壁	18	next door
gēge	哥哥	7	elder brother
gègè	各个	21	each, every
gěi	给	2	to, for; give
gēn	跟	10	with; and
gēn ... yíyàng	跟...一样	19	the same as ...
gèng	更	11	even more, still more
gēnshàng	跟上	9	keep pace with
gèrén	个人		individual (person)
gōngchǎng	工厂	10	factory
gōnggòng	公共	9	public
gōnggòngqìchē	公共汽车		bus
MW liàng	辆		
gōngjīn	公斤	18	kilogram
gōnglǐ	公里		kilometre

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
gōngrén	工人	7	worker
gōngsī	公司	9	company
gōngyuán	公园	10	park
gōngzī	工资	8	wages
gōngzuò	工作	7	work; to work
gōngzuòzhèng	工作证	9	ID card (employee's)
gòu	够	19	rather, quite; enough
gòuwùzhīfúzhèng	购物 支付证		preferential card (new type)
guàhào	挂号	18	register
guàhàofèi	挂号费	18	registration charge
guài	怪		strange, odd
guǎn	管	22	bother about; be in charge of
guàng dà jiē	逛大街	10	go window- shopping
guāngpán bōfàngjī	光盘 播放机	6	CD player (Note: the Chinese also use the English abbreviation 'CD'.)
Guǎngdōng	广东	10	Canton
guāngyīn sì jiàn, riyuè rú suō	光阴似箭, 日月如梭	22	time flies
guàntóu	罐头	6	tin, can
guānxi	关系	7	relation(ship)
gǔdiǎn	古典	22	classical
Gùgōng	故宫	17	Forbidden City (Imperial Palace)
guì	贵	9	expensive
guīdìng	规定	20	rule, regulation
guítái	柜台	18	counter
guìxìng	贵姓	16	may I ask your name?
gǔlǎo	古老		ancient
guò	过	5	pass, cross
-guo	过	9	verbal suffix
guóchǎn	国产	8	made in one's country
Guójì Fàndiàn	国际饭店	19	International Hotel

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
guójiā	国家	8	country
guǒjiàng	果酱	9	jam
guòjiǎng	过奖	11	you flatter me
guòqù	过去		(the) past
guówài	国外	20	overseas, abroad
hāhā	哈哈	22	ha ha
hái	还	7	still, in addition
háishi	还是	5	or (used in questions)
háishi	还是	11	after all; still (emphatic)
hǎishuǐ	海水		sea-water
háizi	孩子	5	child
hǎn	喊	21	shout, cry out
hángkōng	航空	18	airmail
Hángzhōu	杭州	21	Hangzhou
Hànyǔ	汉语	4	Chinese language
Hànzì	汉字	11	Chinese character(s)
hǎo	好	1	good
-hǎo	好	11	do the action of the verb satisfactorily
hào	号	15	number, date
hǎo chī	好吃	5	tasty, delicious
hǎo ji	好几	19	a good many
hàomǎ	号码	20	number (e.g. telephone)
hǎowán(r)	好玩(儿)	19	entertaining, enjoyable
hǎoxiàng	好象	21	seem
hǎoxiào	好笑		funny
hē	喝	1	drink
hé	和	5	and
héhuǒ	合伙	21	form a company or partnership
hēi-bái	黑白	5	black and white
hěn	很	1	very
héng	横	16	horizontal
héshì	合适		suitable
hézī qìyè	合资企业	22	joint venture

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
hóng	红	22	red
hóngchá	红茶	6	black tea (Indian)
hòu	厚		thick
hòubianr	后边儿	17	back, behind
hòuhuì yǒu qī	后会有期	22	we'll meet again some day
hòunián	后年	22	year after next
hòutiān	后天	16	day after tomorrow
hòuzhě	后者	22	the latter
huā	花	6	flowers; to spend
huà	话	21	remark, words(s)
MW jù	句		
huá bīng	滑冰	10	skate ( <i>Lit. slide ice</i> )
huà huà	画画儿		draw, paint (v-o)
huá xuě	滑雪		ski (v-o) ( <i>Lit. slide snow</i> )
huāchá	花茶	6	jasmine tea
huài	坏	21	bad; broken
huáiyí	怀疑	20	suspect
huán	还		give or pay back, return
huàn qián	换钱	20	change money
huángyóu	黄油	9	butter
huānyíng	欢迎	5	welcome
huāpíng	花瓶	6	vase
huàr	画儿	6	painting
MW zhāng	张		
huāyuán	花园	6	garden
huí	回	5	return
huì	会	2	know how to, can; will
hui	会	9	will (showing possibility)
huí guó	回国	19	return to your own country
hújiāo	胡椒	6	pepper
hǔnián	虎年	22	year of the Tiger
huò (zhě)	或(者)	9	or, perhaps
huò	货	8	goods
huōchē	火车	19	train
huōchēzhàn	火车站	19	railway station

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
huópo	活泼		lively
huóqī cúnkuǎn	活期存款	20	current account
huòtǐ	火腿	9	ham
hǔqi	虎气	22	vigour
húshuō	胡说	22	nonsense; talk nonsense
hútū	糊涂	22	muddle-headed
hùzhào	护照	20	passport
jí	即	9	that is, <i>viz</i>
jǐ	几	3	how many (less than ten)?; several
jǐ	挤	8	crowded; squeeze
jì	寄	18	post, mail (v)
jì (xiàilai)	记下来	16	note down, record
jiā	家	3	home; family
jiā (shàng)	加(上)	8	add (on)
jiǎ	甲	17	A (as in A says . . . )
jiājù	家具	8	furniture
jiān	间	5	MW for room
jiǎn	剪		cut (as of hair)
jiàn	见	9	see; meet
jiàn	件	14	MW for piece, article, item e.g. clothing
jiǎndān	简单	8	simple
Jiānéng	佳能	21	Canon
jiǎng	讲	19	speak; to explain
jiàngyóu	酱油	6	soya sauce
jiānjídàn	煎鸡蛋	9	fried egg(s)
jiànkāng	健康	22	healthy, sound
jiànwén	见闻	21	what one sees and hears
jiànxíng	饯行	22	give a farewell dinner
jiāo	教	7	teach
jiào	叫	7	call, be called
jiàotáng	教堂		church
jiàoyù	教育	21	education; to educate

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
jiaoyuan	教员	7	teacher
jiaozi	饺子	22	kind of ravioli, dumpling
jiaozuo	叫做	22	be called, be known as
jiaqi	假期		holidays, vacation
jiaqian	价钱	9	price
jiben (shang)	基本(上)	20	basic(ally)
jidan	鸡蛋	9	egg
jide	记得	20	remember
jie	接	16	take hold of, receive; to meet street
jiē	街		borrow; lend
jiè	借		freeze, ice over
jié bīng	结冰	10	marry, get married
jié hūn	结婚	3	come into contact with
jiéchù	接触	9	receive; admit
jiēdài	接待	20	elder sister
jiějie	姐姐	7	sisters
jiěmèi	姐妹		mustard
jièmo	芥末	6	introduce
jièshào	介绍	2	carry on; to follow
jiēzhe	接着	19	offices, organization
jīguān	机关	10	opportunity, chance
jīhuì	机会	22	sender
jijiànrén	寄件人	18	season (of year)
jijié	季节	10	extremely
-jíle	极了	4	catty
jin	斤	14	(1/2 kilogram)
jìn	进	9	enter
jìn	近	17	near
jìng	敬	22	propose (a toast), toast
jǐngchá	警察		police, policeman
jǐngcháng	经常	10	regularly, frequently
jīngguò	经过	19	go through, pass
jǐnguǎn	尽管	20	feel free to; even though, despite

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
jǐngtóugài	镜头盖	22	lens cap
jìngzi	镜子	6	mirror
-jìnlai	进来	8	verb + in
jīnnián	今年	7	this year
jīntiān	今天	4	today
jǐnzǎo	尽早	22	as soon as possible, at the earliest possible date
jíshí	即使	9	even if, even though
jìshù	技术	4	technique
jìsuàn	计算	20	count, to calculate
jìsuànjī	计算机	9	calculating machine, computer
jiǔ	酒	2	alcohol
jiǔ	九	14	nine
jiù	就	3	then; just, only, merely
jiù	旧		old
jiǔpíng	酒瓶	6	wine bottle
jiùshì	就是	11	precisely
juéde	觉得	21	feel
juéduì	绝对	22	absolute(ly)
jūlèbù	俱乐部		social club
júzizhī	桔子汁	2	orange juice
kāfēi	咖啡	1	coffee
kāi	开	19	start; to open; to drive
kāi chē de	开车的	22	person who drives, driver
kāiguān	开关	6	switch (n)
kāilǎng	开朗		open (personality)
kāishǐ	开始	11	begin
kāishuǐ	开水	9	boiled water
kàn	看	5	look, see, watch, read
kàn xi	看戏		see; watch a play
kǎomiànrbāo	烤面包		toast
MW piān	片	9	

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
kě	可	21	emphasizes tone of speaker
kè	刻		quarter; carve
kě' ài	可爱		lovable
kěbùshì	可不是	21	exactly; that's just the way it is
kěkào	可靠		reliable
kěkě	可可	9	cocoa
kělián	可怜		pitiable; pitiful
kèmǎn	客满	16	sold out, full house
kědìng	肯定	21	definite(ly); affirm
kěpà	可怕		frightening, frightening
kèqi	客气	4	polite
kěshì	可是	8	but
kètīng	客厅	5	living-room, lounge
kèwén	课文	9	text
MW kè			
kěxī	可惜	10	it's a pity that
kěxiào	可笑		laughable, ridiculous
kěyǐ	可以	5	can, may
kǒngpà	恐怕		be afraid that . . .
kǒu	口	7	MW for family members
kū	哭	22	weep, cry
kuài	快	5	quick, fast
kuài	块	14	MW for money
kuàilè	快乐	22	happy, joyful
kuàizi	筷子	4	chopsticks
MW shuāng			
kùnnan	双		
kùnnan	困难	11	difficult; difficulty
lā	拉	21	pull; to play (of stringed instrument)
là(de)	辣(的)		hot or spicy food
lái	来	4	come
lǎn	懒		lazy
làngfèi	浪费	22	waste, squander
làngmàn	浪漫	19	romantic

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>lǎngsòng</i>	朗诵	19	recite, read aloud with expression
<i>lǎo</i>	老	5	old
<i>lǎo</i>	老	22	always
<i>lǎobǎn</i>	老板		boss
<i>láojià</i>	劳驾	17	excuse me
<i>lǎorén</i>	老人	10	old people
<i>lǎoshī</i>	老师		teacher
<i>lǎoshì</i>	老式	21	old-fashioned
<i>lǎowài</i>	老外	21	'old foreigner'
<i>le</i>	了	3/4	particle <i>le</i>
<i>lěng</i>	冷	8	cold
<i>lěngpán</i>	冷盘	22	cold dish; hors d'oeuvres
<i>lí</i>	离	17	from (static)
<i>lǐ</i>	里		$\frac{1}{3}$ mile or $\frac{1}{2}$ kilometre
- <i>lǐ</i>	里	4	inside
<i>liǎ</i>	俩	3	two
<i>lián</i>	连		even (conj.)
<i>liǎn</i>	脸	22	face
<i>liáng</i>	凉	4	cool
<i>liǎng</i>	两	3	two (of a kind)
<i>liánhuānhuì</i>	联欢会	22	get together, party
<i>liànxí</i>	练习		exercise, practise (n and v)
<i>liáo tiān(r)</i>	聊天(儿)	10	chat
<i>liǎo jiě</i>	了解	21	find out, understand, know
<i>líkāi</i>	离开	22	leave (place or person)
<i>lǐmào</i>	礼貌	21	courteous; manners
<i>líng</i>	零	14	zero
<i>lǐngdài</i>	领带		tie
<i>lǐngdǎo</i>	领导		leader(ship)
<i>líng (wài)</i>	另(外)	20	another; separately
<i>(lín yù) pēntóu</i>	(淋浴)喷头	6	shower
<i>liú</i>	留	16	keep, remain; let grow; leave (behind or for somebody)
<i>liù</i>	六	14	six

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
liúlì	流利		fluent
liúlián wàngfǎn	流连忘返	22	enjoy oneself so much as to forget to go home
liúxuéshēng	留学生	7	student studying abroad
liànwài	例外		exception
lǐwù	礼物	22	present, gift
MW jiàn/ge	件/个		
lìxī	利息	20	interest (e.g. bank)
lì(xī)lǜ	利(息)率	20	rate of interest
lóngtou	龙头	6	tap
lóushàng	楼上		upstairs
lóutī	楼梯	6	stairs, staircase
lóuxià	楼下	15	downstairs
lù	路		road
lù yīn	录音		record (v-o); recording (tape)
lǜchá	绿茶	6	green tea (Chinese)
lǚguǎn	旅馆	9	hotel
Lúnđūn	伦敦		London
lúnliú	轮流	10	take turns; in turn
lùrén	路人	17	passerby, stranger
lǚtú	旅途	21	journey, trip
lùxiàngjī	录像机	8	video recorder
lǚxíng	旅行	10	travel
lǚxíng zhīpiào	旅行支票	20	traveller's cheque
lùyīnji	录音机	6	tape recorder
lǚyóu	旅游	21	tourism; to tour
ma	吗	2	question particle
mǎ	马		horse
mà	骂		swear at, curse
máfān	麻烦	5	trouble; troublesome
mǎi	买	14	buy
mài	卖	16	sell
mǎi dōngxi	买东西	14	go shopping
māma	妈妈	7	mummy, mum
mǎn	满	22	full; to reach the limit, expire
màn	慢	5	slow

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
mǎn zài ér guī	满载而归	22	return with fruitful results
máo	毛	14	MW for money
Máo Zhǔxí Jìniàntáng	毛主席 纪念堂	17	Mao Zedong (Chairman Mao) Mausoleum
máobìng	毛病		defect
máojīn	毛巾	9	towel
máojīnjia	毛巾架	6	towel rail
máoyī	毛衣	14	sweater, woolly
MW jiàn	件		
màozi	帽子		hat
mǎshàng	马上		immediately
méi	没	3	not (used with <i>yǒu</i> )
měi	每	8	each, every
méi shénme	没什么	5	it's nothing
méi ( <i>yǒu</i> ) guānxi	没(有)关系	4	it doesn't matter
Měiguó	美国	18	USA, American
Měiguórén	美国人	11	American
mèimei	妹妹	7	younger sister
měirén	美人	21	beautiful woman
méishír	沒事儿	22	it's OK, it's nothing; have nothing planned
Měiyuán	美元	20	US dollar
mén	门	6	door, gate
mǐ	米	14	metre, rice
miànfen	面粉	6	flour
miànjin	面巾	6	face flannel
MW tiáo	条		
miáoxiě	描写	19	describe
mìmì	秘密		secret
míngbai	明白	20	understand; clear
míngtiān	明天	3	tomorrow
míngzì	名字	16	name (given)
mínzu	民族		nation
Mòsikē	莫斯科	19	Moscow
mótúōchē	摩托车		motorbike
MW liàng	辆		
mǒu	某	9	(a) certain
Mòzhātè	莫扎特	22	Mozart

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
mùbiāo	目标		objective
mǔyǔ	母语	11	mother tongue
na	哪	22	particle showing mood
nǎ (or něi)	哪	4	which?
nà (or nèi)	那	3	that
ná chū	拿出	19	take out
nǎipíng	奶瓶		milk bottle
nàme	那么	1	so, in that case
nán	男	3	male
nán	难	10	difficult
nán	南	17	south
nánnu lǎoshào	男女老少	10	men and women, old and young
nánguài	难怪	19	no wonder
nàozhōng	闹钟	6	alarm clock
när	哪儿	3	where?
när (nàli)	那儿(那里)	8	there
ne	呢	2	question particle
néng	能	16	be able to, can
nénggàn	能干	22	capable, competent
ńg	嗯	4	hm, uh-huh
nǐ	你	1	you
nián	年		year
niàn	念	17	read aloud
niánjì	年纪	7	age
niánqīng	年轻	19	young
Níkāng	尼康		Nikon
nímen	你们		you (plural)
nín	您		you (polite form)
Niújīn	牛津		Oxford
niúnǎi	牛奶		milk
nǚ	女		female
nǚ'ér	女儿		daughter
nuǎnhuo	暖和	22	warm
nuǎnqì	暖气	6	central heating
nuǎnqìpiàn	暖气片		radiator
nǚshēng	女生	22	female student(s)
ò	哦	22	oh
Ōuzhōu	欧洲	10	Europe

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
pá	爬	19	climb
pà	怕	21	fear, be afraid of
pái	排	15	row, line
pái	牌	20	plate; brand; card
páijià	牌价	20	market quotation (exchange rate)
<i>MW zhāng</i>			
pàojià	票价	19	ticket price
pàolian	漂亮	5	beautiful, pretty
píjiǔ	啤酒	11	beer
píng	凭	9	rely on, depend on
píng	瓶	22	MW for bottles
píngcháng	平常	9	usually, ordinary, commonplace
<i>MW zhāng</i>			
píngguǒ	苹果	14	apple
píngzi	瓶子	6	bottle
píqi	脾气		temperament
pòfei	破费	22	go to some expense
pútáo	葡萄		grape
pútáojiǔ	葡萄酒	22	wine
pǔtōnghuà	普通话	11	common spoken language (modern standard Chinese)
<i>MW qī</i>			
qī	七	14	seven
qí	骑	22	ride (as of horse, bicycle)
<i>MW qiān</i>			
qiān	千		thousand
qián	钱	14	money
qiān zì	签字	20	sign; signature
qiánbianr	前边儿	17	front, in front of
Qiánmén	前门	17	Qianmen

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
qiānwàn	千万	20	whatever you do
qiánzhě	前者	22	the former
qiǎokèlì	巧克力		chocolate
MW kuài	块		
qìchē	汽车	19	car
MW liàng	辆		
qǐfēi	起飞	22	take off (of aircraft)
qíguài	奇怪	10	strange
qīhòu	气候	10	climate
qíng	晴	10	fine, clear, bright (of weather)
qǐng	请	1	invite
qǐng kè	请客		invite somebody for a meal
qīngchu	清楚	11	clear; clearly
Qīngdǎo	青岛	11	Qingdao
qíngkuàng	情况	7	situation
qīnmì	亲密	21	close, intimate
qióng (rén)	穷(人)		poor (person)
qíshí	其实	9	actually, as a matter of fact
qiūtiān	秋天	10	autumn
qǔ	取	16	get, fetch
qù	去	3	go
qǔ qián	取钱	20	withdraw money
quánlì	权利		right(s)
què	却	9	however
quèshí	确实	22	really, indeed; true, certain
qún	群	10	MW for group, flock
qǔqiánbiǎo	取钱表	20	cash withdrawal form
ràng	让	22	let, to allow
rè niúniǎi	热牛奶	9	hot milk
rén	人	16	person
rènào	热闹	10	bustling, exciting
rénjiān lèyuán	人间乐园	21	paradise on earth
Rénmín Dàihuítáng	人民大会堂	17	Great Hall of the People

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
Rénmín Yīngxióng Jinìanbēi rénmínbì	人民英雄 纪念碑 人民币	17 19	Monument to the People's Heroes RMB (Chinese currency)
rènshí rènwéi rènzhēn rèqíng	认识 认为 认真 热情	2 21 22 5	know, recognize think, consider conscientious warm-hearted, enthusiastic
rèshuǐpíng Riběn rìchū rìluò Rìyuán rìzì róngyì ruǎnwò ruǎnzuò rúguǒ rúguǒ . . . (de huà), jiù . . .	热水瓶 日本 日出 日落 日元 日子 容易 软卧 软座 如果 如果... (的话), 就...,	6 8 15 19 19 7 11 19 19 19 9	Thermos flask Japan sunrise sunset yen day; date easy soft sleeper soft seat (train) if if . . . then
Ruìshí	瑞士		Switzerland
sāizi sān sàn bù	塞子 三 散步	6 14 10	plug (for sink, etc.) three to take a stroll, walk
sānmíngzhì MW kuài shāfā MW tào	三明治 块 沙发 套	21 6	sandwich sofa suite (settee and two easy chairs)
shài tàiyáng shàng shàng cèsuō Shàngdì de Chǒng'ér shāngdiàn shānggǎnzhǔyìzhě shàngjí	晒太阳 上 上厕所 《上帝的 宠儿》 商店 伤感主义者 上级	10 9 16 10 22	sunbathe last; up go to the toilet 'Amadeus' shop sentimentalist superior(s)

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
shàngpù	上铺	19	upper berth
shāngrén	商人	9	business person
shǎngguāngdēng	闪光灯	22	flash (light)
shàngwǔ	上午	19	morning
shāo	烧	8	burn
shǎo	少	4	less, few
sháozi	勺子	6	spoon
shèbèi	设备	9	equipment, facilities
shēbude	舍不得	22	be unwilling to part with, grudge
shéi (or shuí)	谁	9	who?
shèng (xiàilai)	剩(下来)	19	be left (over); remain
shēngchǎn	生产	10	produce, manufacture
Shèngdànjié	圣诞节		Christmas
shēngdiào	声调	11	tone
shēnghuó	生活	4	life; to live
shénme shíhou	什么时候		when?
shēngrì	生日	22	birthday
shēngyì	生意	9	business
shénme	什么	3	what?
shénmede	什么的	9	and so on
shēntǐ	身体	7	health, body
shī	诗	19	poem
MW shǒu	首		
shì	是	2	be
shì (qing)	事情	11	matter, thing
MW jiàn	件		
shífēn	十分	21	extremely, very
shīgē	诗歌		poetry
shíjiān	时间	5	time
shìjiè	世界	10	world
shíkèbiǎo	时刻表	19	timetable, schedule
shíwǔ	十五	14	fifteen
shiyè	事业	21	undertaking, cause
shízài	实在	22	really, honestly; true, real
shōu (hǎo)	收(好)	18	put away; receive
shǒu	手	21	hand

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>shòu</i>	受	21	receive, be subjected to
<i>shòu bǐ Nánshān fú rú Dōnghǎi</i>	寿比南山 福如东海	22	may you live as long as the Southern Mountain and be as blessed as the Eastern Sea.
<i>shòu bù liǎo</i>	受不了	22	be unable to bear or endure
<i>shǒudū Shǒudū Jūchǎng shōuhuò</i>	首都 首都剧场 收获	16 22	capital Capital Theatre gains, results; harvest
<i>shòuhuòyuán shōujìnrén shǒujīn shōujù shòupiàoyuàn</i>	售货员 收件人 手巾 收据 售票员	14 18 6 18 15	shop-assistant addressee, recipient hand towel receipt box office clerk; ticket seller
<i>shōushi</i>	收拾	22	pack; tidy up, put in order
<i>shōutào shōutíbāo shōuyīnjī MW tāil/ge</i>	手套 手提包 收音机 台/个	22 6	glove(s) bag, handbag radio
<i>shū shǔ shù shù shuā yá shuài</i>	书 属 树 竖 刷牙 帅	6 6 6 16 22	book belong to tree vertical brush teeth handsome; beautifully (coll.)
<i>shuāngréncái MW zhāng shuāngrénfángjiān shūcài shūfáng shūfu shuǐ shuì (jiào) shuǐdiànfei</i>	双人床 张 双人房间 蔬菜 书房 舒服 水 睡觉 水电费	6 9 6 8 8 8 8	double bed double room vegetables study room (n) comfortable water sleep, go to bed water and electricity charges

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
shuǐguǒ	水果	22	fruit
shuǐguǒzhī	水果汁	9	fruit juice
shuǐpíng	水平	11	level, standard
shuǐtǒng	水桶	6	bucket, pail
shūjià	书架	6	bookcase, bookshelf
shuō	说	15	speak, say
shuō huà	说话	4	speak, talk
shuōfǎ	说法		way of saying things
shuōmíng	说明		show, explain, illustrate
shūzhuō	书桌	8	desk
shūzi	梳子	6	comb, brush
MW bǎ	把		
shùzìshìpán	数字视盘	6	DVD player (Note: the Chinese also use the English abbreviation 'DVD'.)
bōfāngjī	播放机		
sǐ	死		die
sì	四	14	four
sīchóu	丝绸	14	silk
Sīchuān	四川	10	Sichuan
sīshēng	四声	11	the four tones
sòng	送	22	give as a present; see somebody off; send
Sū、Háng	苏、杭	21	Suzhou and Hangzhou
suàn	算	22	regard as, count as
suàn le	算了	20	forget it, let it pass
suàn zhàng	算帐	9	work out bill, make bill
suān(niú)nǎi	酸(牛)奶	9	yoghurt
suànpan	算盘	9	abacus
Sūgélán	苏格兰		Scotland
súhuà	俗话	21	common saying, proverb
MW jù	句		
suì	岁	3	year (of age)
suíbiàn	随便	4	do as one pleases
suīrán...dànshi	虽然...但是	8	although

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
suíshí	随时	9	at any time
Sūlián	苏联		USSR
suǒyǐ	所以	5	therefore
suǒyǒu (de)	所有(的)	20	all
tā	他	2	he, him
tā	她	2	she, her
tā	它	21	it
tài	太	3	too, extremely
táidēng	台灯	6	table lamp
tàitai	太太	2	Mrs, wife
tài yángjìng	太阳镜	21	sunglasses
MW fù	副		
tāmen	他们	2	they
tán huà	谈话	5	chat, conversation
Táng	唐	19	Tang Dynasty (618–907 AD)
táng	糖	6	sugar, sweets, candy
tàngyījià	烫衣架	6	ironing board
tǎnshuài (de)	坦率(地)	21	frank(ly)
tǎnzi	毯子	6	blanket
tào	套	14	set
tèbié	特别	9	especially; special
tèquán	特权	9	privilege
tiān	添	5	add, increase
tiān	天	8	day; sky, heaven
tián	甜	22	sweet
tián (xiě)	填(写)	18	fill in (e.g. form)
Tiān'ānmén	天安门	17	Tiananmen Square
Guǎngchǎng	广场		
tiānpíng	天平	18	scales (for weighing)
tiānqì	天气	8	weather
Tiāntán	天坛	17	Temple of Heaven
tiāntáng	天堂	21	heaven, paradise
tiānxià	天下	22	land under heaven – the world
tiē(shàng)	贴(上)	18	stick (on)
tīng	厅	5	hall
tīng	听		listen

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
tǐng	挺	15	very, rather
tīng qǐlai	听起来	21	sound (verb)
tīngshuō	听说	8	be told, hear of
tíqíán	提前	22	bring forward a date
tōngguò	通过	20	go through
tóngqíng	同情	9	sympathize with
tóngshí	同时	8	at the same time; moreover
tóngshì	同事	7	colleague, fellow worker
tóngxiāng	同乡	21	person who was born in the same place as oneself
tóngxué	同学	21	fellow student
tóngyì	同意	21	agree with
tóngzhì	同志	18	comrade
tóufa	头发		hair (on head)
tuìxiū	退休	7	retire
wàibì	外币	20	foreign currency
wàibīn	外宾	9	foreign guest, visitor
wàiguó	外国	7	foreign (country)
wàihuì (quàn)	外汇(券)	20	foreign exchange (certificate)
wài miàn	外面	5	outside
-wán	完	5	finish (doing)
wán(r)	玩(儿)	3	have fun
wǎn	晚		late
wàn	万		ten thousand
wǎncān	晚餐	22	supper, dinner
wǎnfàn	晚饭		evening meal, dinner
wàng (jì)	忘(记)	20	forget
wàng	往	17	towards, to
wǎngqiú	网球		tennis
wàngǔ chángcún	万古长存	22	last forever, be everlasting
wǎngwǎng	往往	9	more often than not, frequently
wánquán	完全	21	complete(ly)

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
wǎnshàng	晚上	3	evening
wànshì rúyì	万事如意	22	your heart's desire
wèi	位	4	MW for persons (polite)
wèi	喂	16	Hello (on telephone)
wèi	为	22	for, for the sake of
wèi shénme	为什么	19	why?
wēibōlú	微波炉	6	microwave oven
wèidǎo	味道	22	flavour, taste
wèihūnfū	未婚夫	19	fiancé
wèihūnqī	未婚妻		fiancée
wèile	为了	22	for the sake of, in order to
Wēinísi	威尼斯	21	Venice
wèishēngzhǐ	卫生纸	6	toilet paper
MW juǎn	卷		
wèn	问	15	ask
wèn lù	问路	17	ask the way
wěndìng	稳定	22	stable, steady; to stabilize
wénhuà	文化		culture
wénmíng	闻名	21	well-known, famous
wèntí	问题		question, problem
wénzì	文字		script (writing system)
wǒ	我	1	I, me
wòjīdàn	卧鸡蛋	9	poached egg(s)
wǒmen	我们	2	we, us
wòshì	卧室	5	bedroom
wūdìng	屋顶		roof
wǔdōuchú/ wǔdōugui	五斗橱/五斗柜	6	chest of drawers
wūlǐ	屋里	22	in the room
xì	戏		play
xī yān	吸烟		smoke (v-o)
-xià	下	8	have the capacity to (follows verb)
xià	下	15	next

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
xià bān	下班	10	finish work
xià qí	下棋	10	play chess
xià xuě	下雪	10	snow (v-o)
xià yǔ	下雨	10	rain (v-o)
xiàbianr	下边儿	9	under(neath), below
xiān	先	18	first (adv)
xiàndài	现代		modern
xiǎng	想	3	feel like doing something; think
xiàng	象	10	resemble
xiàng	向	22	towards; to face
xiǎng qǐlai	想起来	22	remember, call to mind
xiāngdāng	相当	9	quite (a bit)
xiāngfǎn	相反		opposite, contrary
Xiānggǎng	香港		Hong Kong
xiānghuì	相会	22	meet one another
xiāngjiàn shí nán bié yì nán	相见时难 别亦难	22	meeting and parting are both difficult (quotation from poem by Li Shangyin)
xiāngshòu	享受	9	enjoy rights etc; treat
(xiāng) yān MW zhī, bāo	(香)烟 支、包	14	cigarette
xiāngzào	香皂	6	toilet soap
xiānsheng	先生	1	Mr, gentleman
xiānyú	限于	9	be confined to
xiànzài	现在	7	now, at present
xiǎo	小	5	small
xiào	笑	22	smile, laugh
xiǎoháir	小孩儿	3	child (small)
xiǎohuózi	小伙子	21	young fellow
xiǎojie	小姐	4	Miss, young lady
xiǎoshí	小时		hour
xiǎoshuō MW běn	小说	6	novel
xiǎoyisi	本		
	小意思	22	small token, mere trifle

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
xiàpù	下铺	19	bottom berth
xiàtiān	夏天	10	summer
xiàwǔ	下午	16	afternoon
xiàyìshí	下意识	21	subconsciousness
Xibānyáwén	西班牙文		Spanish (language)
xibianr	西边儿	17	west (side)
Xīcān	西餐	9	Western food
xié	鞋		shoe(s)
xiě (zì)	写(字)	11	write (characters)
xièxie	谢谢	1	thank; thank you
Xīfāng	西方	8	the West
Xīfāngrén	西方人	11	Westerner
Xīhú	西湖	21	West Lake
xǐhuān	喜欢	1	like (v)
xǐliǎnpén	洗脸盆	6	wash basin
xīn	新		new
xìn	信	18	letter
MW fēng	封		
xìnfēng	信封		envelope
xíng	行	1	be all right
xìngfú	幸福	22	enjoy good fortune, happy
xínglì	行李	22	luggage, baggage
xìngmíng	姓名	18	(full) name
xīngqī	星期	10	week
xīngqīwǔ	星期五	16	Friday
xīnlǐ	心里	21	in the heart or mind
xīnshì	新式	21	latest type, new-style
xīnxiān	新鲜	21	fresh
xīnyì	心意	22	kindly feelings, regard
xiōngdì	兄弟	8	brothers
xīshēng	牺牲		sacrifice (v)
xiūxi	休息	8	rest (v and n)
xiǔwǎnchí	洗碗池	6	sink (n)
xiūwàng	希望	19	hope (v and n)
xǐyiji	洗衣机	5	washing machine
xǐzǎojīān	洗澡间	6	bathroom
xǐzǎopén	洗澡盆	6	bath (tub)

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
xuǎn	选	19	choose
xué(xi)	学(习)	4	study (v)
xuéshēng	学生	7	student
xuéshēngzhèng	学生证	9	student card
xuéxiào	学校	4	school
xūyào	需要	22	need, require; needs (n)
ya	呀	21	particle indicating surprise
yágāo MW tǒng	牙膏	6	toothpaste
yān	烟		tobacco (cigarette)
yán	盐	6	salt
yǎn	演	16	perform, act
yàng	样	11	type, kind
yángguǐzi	洋鬼子	21	foreign devil
yàngshì	样式	20	form, pattern
yángwèi(r)	洋味(儿)	11	foreign flavour
yàngzì	样子		appearance, the way somebody looks
yānhuīgāng	烟灰缸	6	ashtray
yāo	么	16	yī in telephone and train numbers)
yào	要	5	want to; must, to want
yào (shi) ... (de huà), jiù	要(是)... (的话), 就	10	if... then
yàoshi	要是	9	if
yàobù(ràn)	要不(然)	4	otherwise
yáshuā MW bǎ	牙刷	6	toothbrush
Yàzhōu	亚洲		Asia
yě	也	3	also, too
yī	一	2	one
yǐ	乙	17	B (as in B says)
yī...jiù	一...就	10	no sooner... than..., as soon as
yì	亿		hundred million

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
yibān	一般	8	generally; general
yibān lái shuō	一般来说	21	generally speaking
yīcǐ lèitūi	依此类推	20	others can be deduced similarly
Yìdàlì	意大利		Italy
Yìdàlìrén	意大利人		Italian (person)
yídiǎn(r)	一点(儿)	4	a little
yíding	一定	4	certainly, definitely
yīfú	衣服	14	clothes
MW jiàn	件		
yígòng	一共	14	altogether
yīguì	衣柜	6	wardrobe
yīhàn	遗憾	22	regret; to regret, be a pity
Yínhéyuán	颐和园	10	Summer Palace
yǐhòu	以后	8	after, afterwards
yǐhuír	一会儿	10	a short while, after a moment
yījiàn	意见		opinion
yǐjīng	已经	7	already
yilóu	一楼	6	ground floor
yílù píng'ān	一路平安	22	<i>bon voyage</i>
yímó yíyàng	一模一样	20	exactly like
yīn	阴	10	cloudy, overcast
Yīngbàng	英镑	20	pound sterling
(yīng)gāi	(应)该	5	ought, should
Yīngguó	英国	4	Britain, England
Yīngguórén	英国人	4	British
yǐngjùyuàn	影剧院	15	cinema and theatre (buildings)
yìngwò	硬卧	19	hard sleeper
yíngyèyuán	营业员	18	clerk, shop employee
Yīngyǔ	英语	11	English language
yìngzuò	硬座	19	hard seat (train)
yīnlì	阴历		lunar calendar
yīnwèi (yīnwei)	因为	11	because
yīnyuè	音乐	22	music
yīnyuèhui	音乐会	15	concert
yìqǐ	一起	10	together

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
yǐqián	以前	7	previously, before
yǐqiè	一切		all, every, everything
yīshēng	医生	7	doctor
yìsi	意思	3	meaning
(yì)xiē	(一)些	8	some
yíyàng	一样	20	alike, the same
yíyuàn	医院	7	hospital
yízhènzi	一阵子	19	period of time, spell
yǐzi	椅子	6	chair
<i>MW bǎ</i>			
yòng	用	4	use
yǒngyuǎn	永远	16	forever
yǒu	有	3	have, there is/are
yǒu (de) shíhou	有(的)时候	9	sometimes
yǒu kòng	有空	3	have free time
yǒu míng	有名		be famous
yǒu yìsi	有意思	11	be interesting
yǒu yòng	有用		useful
yòu . . . yòu	又...又	5	both . . . and
yōudài	优待	9	preferential treatment
yōudàizhèng	优待证	19	preferential card
yóude	有的	8	some
yǒudeshì	有的是	10	have plenty of, there's no lack
yóudiànjú	邮电局	18	post and telecommunications office
<i>MW zhāng</i>			
yóufei	邮费	22	postage
yóu jì	邮寄	18	send by post or mail
yóukè	游客	9	tourist, sightseer
yóulǎn	游览		visit (v), sightsee
yōumògǎn	幽默感	22	sense of humour
yóupiào	邮票	14	postage stamp
yóuyì	友谊	22	friendship
Yóuyì Shāngdiàn	友谊商店	20	Friendship Store
yóuyǒng	游泳		swim (v-o)

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
yuán	圆	8	round
yuǎn	远	17	far
Yuándàn	元旦		New Year's Day
yuánliàng	原谅	4	forgive
Yuánmíngyuán	圆明园	10	Old Summer Palace
yuànyì	愿意	5	be willing, want
yuányin	原因		reason, cause
yuánzhūbì	圆珠笔	22	ballpoint pen
MW zhī	枝/支		
yuè	月	10	month
yuè lái yuè	越来越	9	more and more
yuèbǐng	月饼	19	mooncake
yuèguāng	月光	19	moonlight
yuèliàng	月亮		moon
yǔfǎ	语法	11	grammar
yùjin	浴巾	6	bath towel
MW tiáo	条		
yúkuài	愉快	19	happy, pleased
yündǒu	熨斗	6	iron
yùpén	浴盆	6	bath (tub)
yùshì	浴室	6	bathroom
zài	在	3	be at; at
zài	再	5	again
zài	在	16	in the middle of -ing
zài shuō	再说	22	not tackle a problem until some other time
zàijiàn	再见	5	goodbye
zāng	脏		dirty
zánmen	咱们	21	we (including listener)
zǎo	早	5	early
zǎo...jiù	早...就		long since
zǎocān	早餐	9	breakfast
zǎorì	早日	22	at an early date; soon
zǎoshang	早上	9	morning (early)
zázhì	杂志	14	magazine
MW běn	本		

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
zěnme	怎么	11	how
zěnme bàn	怎么办	20	what's to be done?
zěnme le	怎么了	22	what's the matter?
zěnmeyàng	怎么样	3	what about (it)?; how?
zhàn	站	22	stand; station, stop (bus etc)
zhāng	张	14	MW for flat, rectangular objects
zhànghù	帐户	20	account (bank)
zháo	着		potential resultative verb ending
zhǎo	找	7	look for
zhǎo (qián)	找(钱)	14	give back (as of change)
zhào xiàng	照相	10	take a photo, have one's picture taken
zhào cháng	照常	10	as usual
zhāodài	招待	5	hospitality; entertain
zhàopiàn	照片		photograph
MW zhāng	张		
zhàoxiàngjī	照相机	21	camera
MW tái	台		
-zhe	着	10	verbal suffix
zhè (or zhèi)	这	2	this
zhè yàng	这样	11	this kind of
zhème	这么	22	so, this way, like this
zhēn	真	2	really; true, real
zhèngfǔ	政府		government
zhēnggè	整个	10	whole, entire
zhèngcháng	正常	10	normal, regular
zhènghǎo	正好	20	just right; to happen to
zhèngmíng	证明	20	certificate; to prove
zhèngzài...ne	正在...呢	10	in the middle of -ing
zhèngzhì	政治		political
zhěntào	枕套	6	pillow case
zhěntou	枕头	6	pillow

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
<i>zhèr (zhèlǐ)</i>	这儿(这里)	4	here
<i>zhèyàng</i>	这样	19	like this, in this way, so
<i>zhī</i>	织		knit, weave
<i>zhǐ</i>	只	5	only
<i>zhǐ</i>	指	11	refer to, point at/to; finger
... <i>zhī jiān</i>	之间	22	between, amongst ...
... <i>zhī zhōng</i>	之中		between, amongst ...
<i>zhīdào</i>	知道	11	know (a fact)
<i>zhídé</i>	值得	17	be worth, deserve
<i>zhǐhǎo</i>	只好	5	have to
<i>zhíjíē</i>	直接	20	direct
<i>zhíyè</i>	职业	21	occupation, profession
<i>zhǒng</i>	种	7	sort, kind
<i>zhòng</i>	重	18	heavy
<i>Zhōngguó</i>	中国	1	China
<i>Zhōngguó Gémìng</i> <i>Bówùguǎn</i>	中国革命 博物馆	17	Museum of (the Chinese) Revolution
<i>Zhōngguó Lìshǐ</i> <i>Bówùguǎn</i>	中国历史 博物馆	17	Museum of National History (of China)
<i>Zhōngguó</i> <i>Lǚxíngshè</i>	中国 旅行社	19	China Travel Service
<i>Zhōngguó</i> <i>Yínháng</i>	中国银行	20	Bank of China
<i>Zhōngguóhuà</i>	中国话	19	Chinese language (older term)
<i>Zhōngguótōng</i>	中国通	22	expert on China
<i>zhōngjiān</i>	中间	17	middle, between
<i>zhōngtóu</i>	钟头		hour
<i>Zhōngwén</i>	中文	9	Chinese language (usually written form)
<i>zhòngyào</i>	重要		important
<i>zhǒngzú</i>	种族	21	race (as in racism)
<i>zhōumò</i>	周末		week-end

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
zhǔ	煮	22	boil, cook
zhù	住	8	live in, at
zhù	祝	19	offer good wishes
zhuǎn	转	22	turn; transfer
zhuānjiā	专家	9	expert, specialist
zhuānjiāzhèng	专家证	19	expert card
zhùfáng	住房	8	housing, accommodation
zhǔjīdàn	煮鸡蛋	9	boiled egg(s)
zhǔnbèi	准备	19	prepare
zhuōzi	桌子	6	table
MW zhāng	张		
zhǔyào	主要	21	principal(ly)
zhùyì	注意	21	pay attention to, take note of
zì qī qī rén	自欺欺人	21	deceive yourself as well as others
zìdiǎn	字典	6	dictionary
MW běn	本		
zìjǐ	自己	4	oneself
zǐmèi	姊妹	8	sisters
zīwèi	滋味	22	good taste, flavour
zìxíngchē	自行车	19	bicycle
MW liàng	辆		
zìyóu	自由		free; freedom
zìzài	自在	21	at ease, comfortable
zǒng (shì)	总(是)	8	always
zǒnglǐ	总理		premier
zǒngtǒng	总统		president
zǒu	走	5	leave, walk, go
zū	租	21	rent, hire
zǔhéyīnxiǎng	组合音响	8	hi-fi
MW tào	套		
zuì	最	4	most
zuì	醉	22	drunk
zuihǎo	最好	4	had better; best
zuijìn	最近	22	recently; nearest, latest
zuihòu	最后	22	the last; finally
zuò	坐	1	sit
zuò chē	坐车	17	go by transport

Pinyin (alphabetical order)	Characters	Chap. no.	English
zuò	做/作	4	do, to make
zuòfǎ	作法	9	way of doing something
zuótiān	昨天		yesterday

# English-Chinese Vocabulary

a good many *hǎo jǐ*  
 a little *yìdiǎn(r)*  
 a short while, after a moment  
*yíhuír*  
 abacus *suànpan*  
 able to, can *néng*  
 absolute(ly) *juéduì*  
 accompany *péi*  
 accomplish, get something done *bàn dào*  
 according to, on the basis of *àn(zhào)*  
 account (bank) *zhànghù*  
 actually, as a matter of fact  
*qíshí*  
 add, increase *tiān*  
 add (on) *jiā(shang)*  
 address *dìzhǐ*  
 addressee, recipient  
*shōujiànrén*  
 admire *pèifú*  
 admit (e.g. mistake)  
*chéngrèn*  
 admit, receive *jiēdài*  
 adult *chéngniánrén* or  
*dàren*  
 aeroplane *fēiji*  
 afraid that *kǒngpà*  
 after all, still *háishi*  
 after (conj.), afterwards  
*yǐhòu*

afternoon *xiàwǔ*  
 again *zài*  
 age *niánjì*  
 agree with *tóngyi*  
 airmail *hángkōng*  
 ah, oh *à*  
 airport *fēijīchǎng*  
 alarm clock *nào zhōng*  
 alcohol *jiǔ*  
 alike, the same *yíyàng*  
 all + noun *suǒyǒu (de) + noun*  
 all right *xíng*  
 all, both *dōu*  
 almost, nearly *chàbuduō*  
 already *yǐjīng*  
 also, too *yě*  
 alter, change, correct *gǎi*  
 although *suīrán... dànshi*  
 altogether *yǐgòng*  
 always *zǒng (shi)*  
 always (doing something)  
*lǎo*  
 'Amadeus' 《*Shàngdì de Chōng'er*》  
 America, USA *Měiguó*  
 American (person)  
*Měiguórén*  
 ancient *gǔlǎo*  
 and *hé*  
 and so on *shénmede*

another, separately	<i>líng(wài)</i>	bath towel	<i>dà máojīn</i> or <i>yùjīn</i> (MW <i>tiáo</i> )
anyway, in any case		bathroom	<i>xǐzǎojiān</i> or <i>yùshì</i>
<i>fǎnzhèng</i>		be	<i>shì</i>
appearance	<i>yàngzi</i>	beat a drum	<i>dǎ gǔ</i>
apple	<i>píngguǒ</i>	become	<i>chéng</i>
army	<i>bùdùi</i>	belong to	<i>shǔ</i>
arrange for something to be done	<i>bàn shì</i>	berth (lower)	<i>xiàpù</i>
arrest	<i>bǔ</i>	berth (upper)	<i>shàngpù</i>
arrive, go to	<i>dào</i>	beautiful, pretty	<i>piàoliang</i>
as far as . . . is concerned		beautiful woman	<i>měirén</i>
<i>duì . . . lái shuō</i>		because	<i>yīnwèi</i> ( <i>yīnwei</i> )
as soon as possible, at the earliest possible date		bed	<i>chuáng</i> (MW <i>zhāng</i> )
<i>jīnzhāo</i>		bedroom	<i>wòshì</i>
as usual	<i>zhàocháng</i>	beer	<i>píjiǔ</i>
ash tray	<i>yānhuīgāng</i>	Beethoven	<i>Bèiduōfēn</i>
Asia	<i>Yàzhōu</i>	begin	<i>kāishǐ</i>
ask	<i>wèn</i>	Beihai Park	<i>Běihǎi</i>
ask the way	<i>wèn lù</i>	<i>Gōngyuán</i>	
aspect, respect	<i>fāngmiàn</i>	Beijing Hotel	<i>Běijīng</i>
at, in	<i>zài</i>	<i>Fàndiàn</i>	
at an early date, soon	<i>zǎorì</i>	Beijing Languages Institute	
at any time	<i>suíshí</i>	<i>Běijīng Yǔyán Xuéyuàn</i>	
at ease, comfortable	<i>zìzài</i>	(now called <i>Běijīng Yǔyán Dàxué</i> Běijīng Language [and Culture] University)	
at the same time; moreover		Beijing University	<i>Běijīng Dàxué</i>
<i>tóngshí</i>		belch, burp, hiccup	<i>dǎ gē(r)</i>
attend, take part in, join		best; had better	<i>zuihǎo</i>
<i>cānjiā</i>		between, amongst . . .	<i>zhī jiān</i> or . . . <i>zhī zhōng</i>
attend to, handle, do	<i>bàn</i>	bicycle	<i>zìxíngchē</i>
attendant	<i>fúwùyuán</i>	(MW <i>liàng</i> )	
autumn	<i>qiūtiān</i>	big	<i>dà</i>
await, treat	<i>dài</i>	birthday	<i>shēngrì</i>
back, behind	<i>hòubian</i>	black	<i>hēi</i>
bad, broken	<i>huài</i>	black and white	<i>hēi-bái</i>
bag, handbag	<i>shǒutíbāo</i>	black tea (Indian)	<i>hóngchá</i>
ballpoint pen	<i>yuánzhūbì</i>	blanket	<i>tǎnzi</i>
(MW <i>zhī</i> )		boat (n)	<i>chuán</i>
Bank of China	<i>Zhōngguó Yínháng</i>	boil, cook	<i>zhǔ</i>
basic(ally)	<i>jiběn (shàng)</i>	boiled water	<i>kāishuǐ</i>
bath (tub)	<i>yùpén</i> or <i>xǐzǎopén</i>		

bon voyage, have a pleasant journey *yílù píng'ān*  
 book *shū*  
 book, reserve, subscribe to *dìng*  
 bookcase, bookshelf *shūjià*  
 borrow; lend *jiè*  
 boss *lǎobǎn*  
 both, all *dōu*  
 both... and *yòu... yòu*  
 bother about, be in charge of *guǎn*  
 bottle *píngzi*  
 box office clerk  
*shòupiàoyuán*  
 branch (bank) *fēnháng*  
 breakfast *zǎocān*  
 bring forward a date *tíqián*  
 bring, take *dài*  
 Britain, England *Yīngguó*  
 British (person) *Yīngguórén*  
 brothers *xiōngdì/dìxiōng*  
 brush teeth *shuā yá*  
 bucket, pail *shuǐtǒng*  
 bump (into) *pèng (dào)*  
 burn *shāo*  
 bus *gōnggòngqìchē*  
*(MW liàng)*  
 business *shēngyì*  
 business person *shāngrén*  
 bustling, exciting *rènào*  
 but *dànshi* or *kěshì*  
 but, and *ér*  
 but, however, only *búguò*  
 butter *huángyóu*  
 buy *mǎi*  
 cadre *gànbu*  
 calculating machine,  
 computer *jísuànjī*  
*(MW jià)*  
 call, be called *jiào*  
 calculate, count *jísuàn*  
 camera *zhàoxiàngjī*

can, know how to *huì*  
 can, may *kěyǐ*  
 can (physically able) *néng*  
 cannot but, have to  
*bùde bù*  
 Canon *Jiānég*  
 Canton *Guǎngdōng*  
 capable, competent *nénggàn*  
 capital *shǒudū*  
 Capital Theatre *Shǒudū Jùchǎng*  
 car *qìchē (MW liàng)*  
 carpet *dìtǎn*  
 carry on, follow *jiězhe*  
 cash withdrawal form  
*qǔqiánbiǎo*  
 catty ( $\frac{1}{2}$  kilogram) *jīn*  
 central heating *nuǎnqì*  
 certain (as in 'a certain person') *mǒu*  
 certainly, definitely *yídìng*  
 certainty *bǎwò*  
 certificate, to prove  
*zhèngmíng*  
 chair *yǐzi (MW bā)*  
 change *biàn*  
 change money *huàn qián*  
 chat *liáo tiān(r)*  
 chat, conversation *tán huà*  
 cheap *piányi*  
 check; investigate *chá*  
 check (e.g. money to see if correct) *diǎn*  
 chest of drawers *wǔdōuchú,*  
*wǔdōugui*  
 child *háizi*  
 child (small) *xiǎohái*  
 China *Zhōngguó*  
 China Travel Service  
*Zhōngguó Lǚxíngshè*  
 Chinese language *Hànyǔ*  
 Chinese language (older term) *Zhōngguóhuà*  
 Chinese character(s) *Hànzì*

Chinese language (usually written form) *Zhōngwén*  
 chocolate *qiǎokèlì*  
*(MW kuài)*  
 choose *xuǎn*  
 chopsticks *kuàizi*  
*(MW shuāng)*  
 Christmas *Shèngdànjié*  
 church *jiàotáng*  
 cigarette (*xiāng*)*yān*  
*(MW zhī/bāo)*  
 cinema and theatre  
*yǐngjùyuàn*  
 city, town *chéngshì*  
 classical *guǎdiǎn*  
 clean *gānjìng*  
 clear, clearly *qīngchu*  
 clerk, shop employee  
*yíngyèyuán*  
 climate *qíhòu*  
 climb *pá*  
 close, intimate *qīnmì*  
 cloth *bù*  
 clothes *yīfu* (MW *jiàn*)  
 cloudy, overcast *yīn*  
 club (social) *jūlèbù*  
 cocoa *kēkē*  
 coffee *kāfēi*  
 coffee table *chájī*  
 cold *lěng*  
 colleague, fellow worker  
*tóngshì*  
 colour, multicoloured *cǎisè*  
 comb, brush *shūzi*  
 come *lái*  
 come into contact with  
*jiēchù*  
 come or go out *chū*  
 comfortable *shūfù*  
 common saying,  
 proverb *súhuà*  
 common spoken language  
 (Modern Standard Chinese) *pǔtōnghuà*

company *gōngsī*  
 compare *duizhào*  
 compared with *bǐ*  
 complete(ly) *wánquán*  
 complicated, complex *fùzá*  
 comrade *tóngzhì*  
 concert *yīnyuèhui*  
 conduct, handle, transact  
*bànli*  
 confine to *xiànyú*  
 conscientious *rènzhēn*  
 consult a dictionary  
*chá zidiǎn*  
 convenient *fāngbiàn*  
 conversely *fǎnguólái*  
 cool *liáng*  
 portion; MW for money;  
 minutes *fēn*  
 copy *fēn*  
 correct *duì*  
 count, check (e.g. money to  
 see if correct) *diǎn*  
 counter *guítái*  
 country *guójia*  
 courteous, manners *lǐmào*  
 criterion, standard *biāozhǔn*  
 crowded, squeeze *jǐ*  
 culture *wénhuà*  
 cup *bēizi*  
 cup(ful) *bēi*  
 current account *huóqī*  
*cúnkuǎn*  
 curtain *chuānglián*  
 cut (as of hair) *jiǎn*  
 daddy, dad *bàba*  
 daughter *nǚ'ér*  
 day after the day after  
 tomorrow *dàhòutiān*  
 day after tomorrow *hòutiān*  
 day, date *rìzì*  
 day, sky, heaven *tiān*  
 deceive yourself as well as  
 others *zì qī qī rén*

decorate *bùzì*  
 defect *máobìng*  
 definite(ly), affirm *kěndìng*  
 deposit account *dìngqī*  
     cúnkuǎn  
 deposit money *cún qián*  
 describe *miáoxiě*  
 desk *shūzhōu* (MW *zhāng*)  
 despite; feel free to *jǐnguǎn*  
 develop *fāzhǎn*  
 develop (as of film), to wash  
     (*chōng*)*xǐ*  
 developed, advanced *fādá*  
 dial *bō*  
 dictionary *zìdiǎn* (MW *běn*)  
 die *sǐ*  
 different *bù tóng*  
 difficult *nán*  
 difficulty; difficult *kùnnan*  
 dining room *fàntīng*  
 direct *zhíjíē*  
 dirty *zāng*  
 discover *fāxiàn*  
 dish, vegetable *cài*  
 disturb *dǎrǎo*  
 divide, distinguish *fēn*  
 do as one pleases *suíbiàn*  
 do taijiquan *dǎ tàijíquán*  
 do the action of the verb  
     satisfactorily -*hǎo*  
 do, to make *zuò*  
 doctor *yīshēng*  
 doctor *dàifu*  
 don't *bié*  
 door, gate *mén*  
 double bed  
     *shuāngrénchuáng*  
     (MW *zhāng*)  
 double room  
     *shuāngrénfángjiān*  
 downstairs *lóuxià*  
 draw, paint *huà huàr*  
 draw up, subscribe to,  
     order *dìng*

drink *hē*  
 drink a toast *gān bēi*  
 drive (v-o) *kāi chē*  
 driver *kāi chē de*  
 drunk *zuì*  
 dumpling, kind of ravioli  
     *jiǎozi*  
 duvet, quilt *bèizi*  
  
 each, every *měi*  
 each and every *gègè*  
 east (side) *dōng(bianr)*  
 easy *rónghì*  
 eat one's fill *chī bǎo*  
 eat (meal) *chī fàn*  
 education, to educate  
     *jiào yù*  
 egg(s) *jīdàn*  
 egg(s) (boiled) *zhǔjídàn*  
 egg(s) (fried) *jiānjídàn*  
 egg(s) (poached) *wòjídàn*  
 egg(s) (scrambled) *chāojídàn*  
 eight *bā*  
 elder brother *gēge*  
 elder sister *jiějie*  
 electric cable *diànxìan*  
 electric fan *diànsàn*  
 electric light *diàndēng*  
 enemy *díréng*  
 engaged (of people)  
     *dinghūn*  
 English language *Yīngyǔ*  
 enjoy rights, etc., treat  
     *xiāngshòu*  
 enjoy good fortune, happy,  
     well-being *xìngfú*  
 enjoy oneself so much as  
     to forget to go home  
     *liúlián wàng fǎn*  
 enquire *dàtīng*  
 enter *jìn*  
 entertaining, enjoyable  
     *hǎowán(r)*  
 envelope *xìnfēng*

equal to, be equivalent to	facing, towards xiàng
děngyú	factory gōngchǎng
equipment, facilities	family, home jiā
shèbì	famous yǒu míng
especially, special tèbié	far yuǎn
etc. dēng	fat pàng
Europe Óuzhōu	father fùqīn
even (conj.) lián	fear, be afraid of pà
even if, even though jíshǐ	feel juéde
even more, still more gèng	feeling, sense gǎnjué
evening wǎnshang	feelings gǎnqíng
evening meal wǎnfàn	fellow student tóngxué
everlasting, last forever	female nǚ
wàngǔ chángcún	female student(s) nǚshēng
every, any, all fānshì	few shǎo
everybody dàjiā	fiancé wèihūnfū
everything yíqiè	fiancée wèihūnqī
everywhere dàochù	fifteen shíwǔ
exactly like yìmō yíyàng	fill in (e.g. form) tián(xiě)
exactly, that's just the way	film diànyǐng
it is kěbùshì	find out, understand, know
excellent (coll.) bàng	liǎojiē
except, apart from	finally, the last zuihòu
chúle . . . (yǐwài)	fine, clear, bright (of weather)
exception liuwài	qíng
exchange (money) duìhuàn	finger zhǐ
exchange rate (market	finish work xià bān
quotation) páijià	first (adv) xiān
excuse me láojì	flash (light) shǎnguāngdēng
exercise (n and v) liànxí	flavour, taste wèidao
expensive guì	floor (first) èrlóu
expert, specialist zhuānjiā	floor (ground) yílóu
expert card zhuānjiāzhèng	flour miànfěn
expire, become due dàoqī	flower(s) huā
explain, speak at length	fluent liúlì
jiǎng	for, for the sake of wèi
expression, to express one's	for; give gěi
feelings biǎoqíng	for example bǐfang shuō or
extremely fēicháng or shífēn	bǐrú
extremely (follows adjective)	for the sake of, in order to
-jíle	wèile
face liǎn	Forbidden City (Imperial
face flannel miànjīn	Palace) Gùgōng
	foreign country wàiguó

foreign currency	wàibì	gains, results, harvest
foreign devil	yángguǐ	shōuhuò
foreign exchange (certificate)	wàihuì(quàn)	garage chēkù
foreign flavour	yángwèi(r)	garden huāyuán
foreign guest, visitor	wàibīn	generally speaking yìbān lái shuō
forever	yǒngyuǎn	generally, general yìbān
forget	wàng(jì)	genuine dídào
forget it, let it pass	suàn le	geography dílǐ
forgive	yuánliàng	Germany Déguó
form a company or partnership	héhuǒ	get, fetch qǔ
form of address, to address	chēnghū	get-together, party liánhuānhuì
form, pattern	yàngshì	give; far gěi
former	qiánzhě	give a farewell dinner jiànxitíng
four	sì	give/have an injection dǎ zhēn
France	Fǎguó	give as a present; see somebody off sòng
frank(ly)	tǎnshuài (de)	give back as of change; to look for zhǎo
free, freedom	zìyóu	glad, happy gāoxìng
freeze, ice over	jié bīng	glass (tumbler) bōlibēi
freezer	bīngguì	glove(s) shǒutào
French (person)	Fǎguórén	go qù
frequently, more often than not	wǎngwǎng	go against (e.g. wind) dǐng
fresh	xīnxiān	go by transport zuò chē
Friday	xīngqīwǔ	go shopping mǎi dōngxi
friend	péngyou	go to some expense pòfèi
friendship	yǒuyì	go to the toilet shàng cèsuǒ
Friendship Store	Yǒuyì Shāngdiàn	go through (e.g. solicitor) tōngguò
from (movement involved)	cóng	go window shopping guàng dà jiē
from (static)	lí	go/come to, to arrive dào . . . qù/lái
front, in front of	qiánbian(r)	good hǎo
fruit	shuǐguǒ	good taste, flavour zīwèi
fruit juice	shuǐguǒzhī	goodbye zàijiàn
full, to reach the limit; expire	mǎn	goods huò
funny, laughable	hǎoxiào	government zhèngfǔ
funny (colloq.)	dòu	graduate bìyè
furniture	jiājù	grammar yǔfǎ

grape *pútáo*  
 Great Hall of the People  
*Rénmín Dàihuìtáng*  
 Great Wall *Chángchéng*  
 green tea (Chinese) *lǜchá*  
 group, crowd, flock *qún*  
 grown up, big *dà*  
 grudge doing something  
*shēbude*  
 guess *cāi*

ha ha *hāhā*  
 had better; best *zuìhǎo*  
 hair *tóufa*  
 half *bàn*  
 hall *tīng*  
 ham *huōtuǐ*  
 hand *shǒu*  
 hand towel *shǒujīn*  
*(MW tiáo)*  
 handsome; beautifully  
 (coll.) *shuài*  
 handle, attend to, do *bàn*  
 hat *màozi*  
 happy, joyful, cheerful  
*kuàilè* or *yúkuài*  
 hastily *gǎnkuài*  
 have *yǒu*  
 have a holiday or vacation  
*fàng jià*  
 have an injection *dǎ zhēn*  
 have free time *yǒu kòng*  
 have fun *wán(r)*  
 have plenty of *yōudeshì*  
 have the capacity to *-xià*  
 have to, had better *zhìhǎo*  
 he *tā*  
 health, body *shēntǐ*  
 healthy, sound *jiànkāng*  
 hear of, be told *tīngshuō*  
 heart's desire *wànshì rúyì*  
 heaven, paradise *tiāntáng*  
 heavy *zhòng*  
 hello (on telephone) *wèi*

help, do a favour (colloq.)  
*bāngmáng*  
 help *bāngzhù*  
 her *tā*  
 here *zhèr (zhèli)*  
 hi-fi *zǔhéyīnxiǎng*  
 him *tā*  
 hm *ng*  
 holidays, vacation *jiàqí*  
 home, family *jiā*  
 honestly, really; true, real  
*shízài*  
 Hong Kong *Xiānggǎng*  
 hope *xiwàng*  
 horizontal *héng*  
 hors d'oeuvres *lèngpán*  
 horse *mǎ*  
 hospital *yīyuàn*  
 hospitality, entertain  
*zhāodài*  
 hot *rè*  
 hot milk *rè niúnǎi*  
 hotel *lǚguǎn*  
 hour *xiǎoshí/zhōngtóu*  
 housing, accommodation  
*zhùfáng*  
 how (as in 'how do you  
 know?') *zěnme*  
 how (as in 'how long?' or  
 'how lovely') *duō*  
 how many *duōshao*  
 how many (less than 10)?;  
 several *jǐ*  
 however *què*  
 hundred *(yì)bǎi*  
 hundred million *yì*  
 hungry *è*  
 husband, wife *àiren*

I, me *wǒ*  
 ID card (employees)  
*gōngzuòzhèng*  
 identify with, become one  
 with *dāchéng yípiān*

if *rúguō* or *yàoshi*  
 if it's not . . . , then it's . . .  
*bú shi* . . . *jiù shi*  
 if . . . then *yào(shi)* . . .  
*(de huà), jiù*  
 if . . . then *rúguō* . . .  
*(de huà), jiù*  
 immediately *mǎshàng*  
 important *zhòngyào*  
 in, at *zài*  
 in person, oneself  
*běnrén*  
 in the heart or mind  
*xīnlǐ*  
 in the middle of -ing  
*zhèngzài* . . . *ne*  
 in the room *wūlǐ*  
 include *bāokuò*  
 indeed, really, true, certain  
*quèshí*  
 individual (person) *gèrén*  
 inflate, pump *dǎ qì*  
 inside *lǐ*  
 intend, to plan *dǎsuàn*  
 interest (e.g. bank) *lìxī*  
 interested in something  
*gān xìngqù*  
 interesting *yǒu yìsi*  
 International Hotel  
*Guójì Fàndiàn*  
 interpret *fānyì*  
 introduce *jièshào*  
 invite *qǐng*  
 invite somebody for a meal  
*qǐng kè*  
 iron *yùndǒu*  
 ironing board *tàngyījìà*  
 it *tā*  
 Italy *Yídàilí*  
 Italian (person) *Yídàilírén*  
 it doesn't matter *méi (yǒu)*  
*guānxì*  
 it's a pity that *kěxī*  
 it's nothing *méi shénme*

jam *guǒjiàng*  
 Japan *Rìběn*  
 jasmine tea *huāchá*  
 be jealous *chī cù*  
 join, attend *cānjīā*  
 joint venture *hézī qíyè*  
 journey, trip *lǚtú*  
 just *gāng*  
 just now *gāngcái*  
 just right, to happen to  
*zhènghǎo*  
 keep pace with *gēnshang*  
 keep, preserve *bǎocún*  
 kilogram *gōngjīn*  
 kilometre *gōnglǐ*  
 kitchen *chúfáng*  
 knife *dāozi*  
 knit, weave *zhī*  
 know (a fact) *zhīdao*  
 know how to, can *huì*  
 know, recognize *rènshí*  
 known as *jiàozuò*  
 last, up *shàng*  
 latest type, new-style *xīnshì*  
 latter *hòuzhě*  
 laugh, smile *xiào*  
 laughable, ridiculous *kěxiào*  
 lazy *lǎn*  
 leader, leadership *lǐngdǎo*  
 learn, study *xué(xí)*  
 leave (place or person) *líkāi*  
 leave the country *chūjìng*  
 leave, walk, go *zǒu*  
 leave (behind or for  
 somebody) *liú*  
 left over, remain  
*shèng(xiàilai)*  
 lend; borrow *jiè*  
 lens cap *jǐngtóugài*  
 less, few *shǎo*  
 let, to allow *ràng*  
 letter *xìn*

level, standard *shuǐpíng*  
life, to live *shēnghuó*  
like (v) *xǐhuan*  
like this, in this way  
     $zhèyàng$

listen *tīng*  
live in, at *zhù*  
lively *huópo*  
living room, lounge  
     $kètīng$

locality, land; the earth *dì*  
London *Lúndūn*  
long *cháng*  
long distance telephone call  
     $chángtú diànhuà$   
long life *chángshòu*  
look for *zhǎo*  
look, see, watch, read *kàn*  
lose *diū*  
loudly *dǎshēng(de)*  
lovable *kě'ài*  
luggage, baggage *xínglī*  
lunar calendar *yīnlì*

made locally (here, in  
China) *guójān*  
magazine *zázhì*  
majority *duōshù*  
make *zuò*  
make (*jiaozi*); to wrap;  
    to include *bāo*  
male *nán*  
manage to do action of verb,  
    -up to; -*dào*  
many, more *duō*  
Mao Zedong Mausoleum  
    *Máo Zhǔxí Jīniàntáng*  
map *ditú*  
market quotation (exchange  
    rate) *páijià*  
marry, get married *jié hūn*  
matter, thing *shì (qīng)*  
    (MW *jiàn*)  
mattress *chuángdiàn*

meaning *yìsì*  
meet (by appointment) *jiē*  
meet one another *xiānghuì*  
men and women, old and  
    young *nánnǚ lǎoshào*  
menu *cǎidān*  
merely *jiù*  
method *bànfa*  
metre *mǐ*  
microwave oven *wēibōlú*  
middle, between *zhōngjiān*  
milk *niúnǎi*  
milk bottle *nǎipíng*  
mirror *jìngzì*  
Miss, young lady *xiǎojie*  
mistake, error *cuòwù*  
modern *xiàndài*  
money *qián*  
monotonous, dull *dāndiào*  
month *yuè*  
Monument to the People's  
    Heroes *Rénmín*

*Yīngxióng Jīniànbēi*  
moon *yuèliàng*  
mooncake *yuèbǐng*  
moonlight *yuèguāng*  
more, many *duō*  
more and more *yuè lái yuè*  
more often than not,

    frequently *wāngwāng*  
moreover *érqiè*  
morning (early) *zǎoshang*  
morning *shàngwǔ*  
Moscow *Mòsīkē*  
most *zuì*  
mother tongue *mǔyǔ*  
motorbike *mótúochē*  
    (MW *liàng*)  
Mozart *Mòzhātè*  
Mr, gentleman *xiānsheng*  
Mrs, Madam (formal)  
    *fūrén*  
Mrs, wife *tàitai*  
muddle-headed *hútu*

mummy, mum *māma*

Museum of National

History *Zhōngguó Líshǐ*  
*Bówúguǎn*

Museum of Revolution

*Zhōngguó Gémìng*  
*Bówúguǎn*

music *yīnyuè*

must, need *děi*

mustard *jièmo*

name (full) *xìngmíng*

name (given) *míngzì*

naturally *dāngrán*

near *jìn*

nearby *fùjìn*

need not *bùyòng* or *béng*

need, require, needs (n)

*xūyào*

new *xīn*

New Year's Day *Yuándàn*

newspaper *bào(zhǐ)*

(MW *zhāng*)

next *xià*

next door *gébì*

Nikon *Níkōng*

nine *jiǔ*

no matter *bùguǎn*

no sooner . . . than . . . , as

soon as *yī . . . jiù*

no wonder *nánguài*

nonsense, talk

nonsense *húshuō*

normal, regular *zhèngcháng*

north *běi*

not *bù*

not (used with *yǒu*) *méi*

not have to *bùbì*

not only . . . but

also *bùdàn . . . érqiè*

not up to much

*bù zěnmeyàng*

not . . . any more *bù . . . le*

not . . . but *bú shi . . . ér shi*

not . . . until . . . ; only *cái*

novel *xiǎoshuō* (MW *běn*)

now, at present *xiànzài*

number *hào*

number (telephone) *hàomǎ*

o'clock *diǎn zhōng*

objective, aim *mùbiāo*

obligatory or required

course *bìxiūkè(chéng)*

occupation, profession *zhíyè*

odd, strange *guài*

of course, naturally *dāngrán*

offer good wishes *zhù*

offices, organization *jīguān*

often *cháng(cháng)*

oh! *ò*

oh dear *āiyā*

old *lǎo* (of people)

old *jiù* (of things)

old China hand; expert on

China *Zhōngguótōng*

'old foreigner' *lǎowài*

old person or people *lǎorén*

Old Summer Palace

*Yuánmíngyuán*

old-fashioned *lǎoshì*

on business *chū chāi*

on the contrary *fān'ér*

one *yī*

one (used in speech instead of  
yi in telephone and train  
numbers) *yāo*

oneself; own *zìjǐ*

only *zhǐ*

open; switch on *kāi*

open (personality) *kāilǎng*

open (up); switch on *dǎkāi*

opinion *yìjiàn*

opposite, i.e. facing *duìmiàn*

opposite, contrary *xiāngfǎn*

opportunity, chance *jīhuì*

or (used in questions) *háishi*

or, perhaps *huò(zhě)*

orange juice *júzīzhī*  
 order (in advance) *dìng*  
 originally *běnlái*  
 otherwise *yào bù(rán)*  
 otherwise, or else *fǒuzé*  
 ought, should (*yīng*)*gāi*  
 outside *wàimian*  
 overcoat *dàiyī* (MW *jiàn*)  
 overseas, abroad *guówài*  
 overweight *chāozhòng*  
 Oxford *Niújīn*

pack, tidy up, put in  
 order *shōushi*  
 pail, bucket *shuǐtǒng*  
 painting *huàr*  
 parcel form *bāoguǒdān*  
 parcel, package *bāo(guǒ)*  
 parents *fùmǔ*  
 park *gōngyuán*  
 part, section *bùfen*  
 pass, go via *jīngguò*  
 pass, cross *guò*  
 passerby, stranger *lùrén*  
 passport *hùzhào*  
 past (the) *guòqù*  
 patient, sick person *bìngrén*  
 pay *fù*  
 pay attention to, take note  
 of *zhùyì*  
 pepper *hújiāo*  
 per cent *bàifēn zhī...*  
 perform, act *yǎn*  
 period of time, spell  
*yízhènzi*  
 person *rén*  
 photograph (n) *zhàopiàn*  
 pillow *zhěntou*  
 pillowcase *zhěntào*  
 pitiable, pitiful *kělián*  
 place *difang*  
 plate, brand; card *pái*  
 play (n) *xì*  
 play ball *dǎ qiú*

play cards or mahjong  
*dǎ pái*  
 play (stringed instrument)  
*lā*  
 play chess *xià qí*  
 plenty of *yoǔdeshì*  
 plug *sāizi*  
 plug (electric) *chātóu*  
 poem *shī* (MW *shǒu*)  
 poetry *shīgē*  
 point at *zhī*  
 point, aspect *diǎn*  
 police, policeman *jǐngchá*  
 polite *kèqi*  
 political *zhèngzhì*  
 poor (person) *qióng(rén)*  
 post and telecommunications  
 office *yóudìànjú*  
 post, mail (verb) *jì*  
 postage *yóufei*  
 pound sterling *Yīngbàng*  
 practise *liànxí*  
 precisely *jiùshì*  
 preferential card  
*yōudàizhèng* or  
*gòuwùzhīfùzhèng*  
 (new type)  
 preferential treatment  
*yōudài*  
 prejudice, bias *piānjiàn*  
 prepare *zhǔnbèi*  
 premier *zǒnglǐ*  
 present, gift *liwù*  
 pretty, beautiful *piàoliang*  
 president *zǒngtǒng*  
 pretty good *búcuò*  
 previously; before  
 (conj.) *yǐqián*  
 previously, in the past  
*cóngqián*  
 price *jiàqián*  
 principal(ly) *zhǔyào*  
 privilege *tèquán*  
 probably *dàgài*

- produce, manufacture  
*shēngchǎn*
- product *chǎnpǐn*
- pronunciation *fāyīn*
- propose (a toast), toast *jìng*
- prove *zhèngmíng*
- public *gōnggòng*
- pull, to play (of stringed instrument) *lā*
- pump (v-o), inflate *dǎ qì*
- put (in or on) *fàng(zài)*
- put away, receive *shōu(hǎo)*
- question, problem *wèntí*
- quick, fast *kuài*
- quiet *ānjìng*
- quite (+adj.) *xiāngdāng*
- quite a bit, quite a few  
*bù shǎo*
- RMB (Chinese currency)  
*rénmínbì*
- race (as in racism) *zhǒngzú*
- radiator *nuǎnqìpiàn*
- radio *shōuyīnjī*
- railway station *huǒchēzhàn*
- rain (v-o) *xià yǔ*
- rate of interest *lì(xī)lǚ*
- rather, quite, enough *gòu*
- read *kàn*
- read aloud *nàniān*
- really, true *zhēn*
- reason, cause *yuányīn*
- recall, call to mind *xiāng qǐlai*
- receipt *shōujù*
- receive, accept *shōu*
- recently, nearest, latest *zuijìn*
- recite, read aloud with expression *lǎngsòng*
- record (v); recording (tape)  
*lù yīn*
- red *hóng*
- refer to *zhǐ*
- reflections, thoughts  
*gǎnxiāng*
- refrigerator *bīngxiāng*
- regard, kindly feelings *xīnyì*
- regard as, count as *suàn*
- register *guàhào*
- registration charge  
*guàhàofēi*
- regret; to regret, be a pity  
*yǐhàn*
- regularly, frequently  
*jīngcháng*
- reimbursement of expenses  
*bàoxiāo*
- relation(ship) *guānxi*
- relatively *bìjiào*
- reliable *kěkào*
- rely on, depend on *píng*
- remark, word *huà*
- remember *jìde*
- remove, move *bān*
- rent (n) for house *fángzū*
- rent, hire (v) *zū*
- representative *dàibiǎo*
- resemble *xiàng*
- reserve for someone; remain; let grow; leave *liú*
- rest *xiūxi*
- retire *tuìxiū*
- return (as of money) *huán*
- return *huí*
- return to your own country *huí guó*
- rich in, full of *fùyú*
- ride (as of horse, bicycle) *qí*
- right(s) *quánlì*
- road *lù*
- romantic *làngmàn*
- roof *wūdǐng, fángdǐng*
- room *fángjiān*
- room charge *fángfēi*
- round *yuán*
- row, line *pái*

rule, regulation	guīdīng	shout, cry out	hǎn
run	pǎo	show, produce	chūshì
sacrifice (v)	xīshēng	show, explain, illustrate	shuōmíng
salt	yán	shower	(lín yù)pēntóu
sandwich	sānmíngzhì	sick person	bìngrén
scales (for weighing)	tiānpíng	side	pángbianr
school	xuéxiào	sign, signature	qiān zì
Scotland	Sūgélán	silk	sīchóu
script (writing system)	wénzì	simple	jiǎndān
season (of year)	jījié	single bed	dānrénchuáng
seat (in train) hard	yìngzuò	single room	dānrénfángjiān
seat (in train) soft	ruǎnzuò	sink	chízi or xiǎwānchí
sea-water	hǎishuǐ	sisters	jiěmèi/zǐmèi
secret (adj.; n)	mìmì	sit	zuò
see, meet	jiàn	situation	qíngkuàng
see, watch	kàn	six	liù
seem	hǎoxiàng	skate (v)	huá bīng
sell	mài	ski (v)	huá xuě
send	sòng	sleep, go to bed	shuì (jiào)
send a telegram	dǎ diànbào	sleeper (in train) hard	yingwò
send by post or mail	yóujì	sleeper (in train) soft	ruǎnwò
sender	jìjiàn rén	slow	màn
sense of humour	yōumògǎn	small	xiǎo
sentimentalist	shānggǎn zhǔyì zhě	small token, mere trifle	xiǎoyísi
serve as; be	dāng	smile, laugh	xiào
service, to serve	fúwù	smoke (v-o)	chōu yān or xī yān
set (n)	tào	snore (v-o)	dǎ hān
set one's mind at rest	fàng xīn	snore (colloq.) (v-o)	dǎ hū(lu)
seven	qī	snow (v-o)	xià xuě
several	jǐ	so, in that case	nàme or zhème
sew up	féng shàng	soap	féizào (MW kuài)
sewing-machine	féngrèn jī	soap (toilet)	xiāngzào
she	tā	socket	chāzuò
sheet	chuángdān	sofa, settee	shāfā
shirt, blouse	chènshān	sold out, full house	kèmǎn
shoe(s)	xié	soldier	bīng
shop	shāngdiàn	some	(yì)xiē
shop-assistant	shòuhuò yuán		
short (in length)	duǎn		

some (subject or topic position only)	<i>yōude</i>	stupid	<i>bèn</i>
sometimes	<i>yǒu(de)</i>	subconsciousness	<i>xiàiyíshí</i>
son	<i>érzì</i>	subject to; receive	<i>shòu</i>
soon	<i>zǎorì</i>	sugar, sweets, candy	<i>táng</i>
sorry, excuse me	<i>duìbuqǐ</i>	suitable	<i>héshì</i>
sort, kind	<i>zhǒng</i>	suite, (settee and two easy chairs)	<i>shāfā</i> (MW <i>tào</i> )
sound (v)	<i>tīng qǐlai</i>	summer	<i>xiàtiān</i>
south	<i>nán</i>	Summer Palace	<i>Yínhéyuán</i>
soya sauce	<i>jiàngyóu</i>	sunbathe	<i>shài tàiyáng</i>
Spanish language		sunglasses	<i>tàiyángjìng</i>
Xibānyáwén		sunrise	<i>rìchū</i>
spank (v-o)	<i>dǎ pīgu</i>	sunset	<i>rìluò</i>
speak	<i>shuō</i>	superior(s)	<i>shàngjí</i>
speak, talk (v-o)	<i>shuō huà</i>	supper, dinner	<i>wǎncān</i>
spend	<i>huā</i>	suspect	<i>huáiiyí</i>
spicy or hot (food)	<i>là(de)</i>	swear at, curse	<i>mà</i>
spoon	<i>sháozi</i>	sweater, woolly	<i>máoyī</i>
spot	<i>diǎnr</i> (coll.)	sweet	<i>tián</i>
spring (season)	<i>chūntiān</i>	sweets, sugar	<i>táng</i>
stable, steady, to stabilize		swim (v-o)	<i>yóuyǒng</i>
<i>wěndìng</i>		switch (n)	<i>kāiguān</i>
stairs, staircase	<i>lóutī</i>	Switzerland	<i>Ruìshì</i>
stamp (postage)	<i>yóupiào</i>	sympathize with	<i>tóngqíng</i>
stand	<i>zhàn</i>	table	<i>zhuōzi</i> (MW <i>zhāng</i> )
start, to open; to drive	<i>kāi</i>	table lamp	<i>táidēng</i>
stay	<i>dāi</i>	take a photo	<i>zhào xiàng</i>
steady boy- or girlfriend		take a stroll, walk	<i>sàn bù</i>
<i>duixiàng</i>		take hold of, receive, to	
stick (on)	<i>tiē(shang)</i>	meet	<i>jiē</i>
still, in addition	<i>hái</i>	take leave of	<i>gàobié</i>
stop (bus etc)	<i>zhàn</i>	take off (of aircraft)	<i>qǐfēi</i>
street	<i>jiē</i>	take out	<i>ná chū</i>
strange	<i>qíguài</i>	take turns, in turn	<i>lúnliú</i>
strenuous, energy consuming	<i>fēijìn(r)</i>	tall, high	<i>gāo</i>
student	<i>xuésheng</i>	tap	<i>lóngtou</i>
student card		tape	<i>cídài</i>
<i>xuéshēngzhèng</i>		tape recorder	<i>lùyīnjī</i>
student studying abroad		tasty, delicious	<i>hǎo chī</i>
<i>liúxuéshēng</i>		tea	<i>chá</i>
study (v), learn	<i>dú shū</i> or	tea (Chinese)	<i>lùchá</i>
<i>xuéxí</i>		tea (Indian)	<i>hóngchá</i>
study (n)	<i>shūfáng</i>	tea (jasmine)	<i>huāchá</i>

- tea (leaves) *cháyè*  
 teach *jiāo*  
 teacher *jiàoyuán* or *lǎoshī*  
 teacup *chábēi*  
 teahouse *chágūan*  
 technique *jìshù*  
 telegram (n) *diànbào*  
 telephone (n) *diànhuà(jī)*  
 telephone (v-o) *dǎ diànhuà*  
 telephone number *diànhuà  
hàomǎ*  
 television *diànshì(jī)*  
*(MW tái)*  
 tell, let know *gàosu*  
 temperament *píqi*  
 Temple of Heaven *Tiāntán*  
 ten thousand (*yì*) *wàn*  
 tennis *wǎngquú*  
 terrifying, frightening *kěpà*  
 text *kèwén* (MW *kè*)  
 thank, thank you *xièxie*  
 that *nà* (or *nèi*)  
 that is, viz. *jí*  
 the same as ...  
*gēn . . . yíyàng*  
 theatre and cinema  
*yǐngjùyuàn*  
 then *jiù*  
 there *nàr* or *nàli*  
 there is/there are *yǒu*  
 therefore *suǒyǐ*  
 Thermos flask *rèshuǐpíng*  
 they *tāmen*  
 thick *hòu*  
 thing(s) *dōngxi*  
 think; feel like doing  
     something *xiǎng*  
 think, consider *rènwéi*  
 this *zhè* (or *zhèi*)  
 this kind of *zhè yàng*  
 this locality *běndì*  
 this year *jīnnián*  
 thousand (*yì*) *qiān*  
 three *sān*
- Tiananmen Square  
*Tiān'ānmén Guǎngchǎng*  
 ticket *pào*  
 ticket price *pàojià*  
 ticket seller *shòupiàoyuán*  
 tie *lǐngdài*  
 time (length of) *shíjiān*  
 time, occasion *cì*  
 timetable, schedule  
*shíkèbiǎo*  
 tin, can *guàntóu*  
 to *dào*  
 toast *kǎomiànbaō*  
 tobacco, cigarette *yān*  
 today *jīntiān*  
 together *yìqǐ*  
 toilet *cèsuo*  
 toilet paper *wèishēngzhǐ*  
 toilet soap *xiāngzào*  
 tomato juice *fānqiézhī*  
 tomorrow *míngtiān*  
 tone *shēngdiào*  
 too, extremely *tài*  
 toothbrush *yáshuā*  
*(MW bā)*  
 toothpaste *yágāo*  
*(MW tǒng)*  
 top, peak; MW for hat *dǐng*  
 tourism; to tour *lǚyóu*  
 tourist, sightseer *yóukè*  
 towards, to, in the direction  
     of *wàng*  
 towel *máojīn* (MW *tiáo*)  
 towel rail *máojīnjia*  
 town, city *chéngshì*  
 train *huōchē*  
 translate *fānyì*  
 travel *lǚxíng*  
 traveller's cheque *lǚxíng  
zhīpiào*  
 tree *shù* (MW *kē*)  
 trouble, troublesome *máfan*  
 turn, transfer *zhuǎn*  
 two *liǎ*

two (number) èr	warm-hearted, <i>rèqìng</i>
two (of a kind) liǎng	enthusiastic <i>rèqìng</i>
type (v-o) dǎ zì	washbasin <i>xǐliānpén</i>
type, kind yàng	washing machine <i>xǐyījī</i>
US dollar Měiyuán	waste, squander <i>làngfēi</i>
uh-huh mì	watch, see <i>kàn</i>
unbearable shòu bù liǎo	water <i>shuǐ</i>
uncover, open jiěkāi	water and electricity charges <i>shuǐdiànfei</i>
under(neath), below xiàbianr	way of saying something <i>shuōfǎ</i>
understand dǒng	way of doing something <i>zuòfǎ</i>
understand, clear míngbai	we wǒmen
undertaking, cause shìyè	we (including listener) <i>zánmen</i>
unit dānwèi	we'll meet again some day <i>hòuhuì yǒu qī</i>
unless chúfei	wear (clothes) <i>chuān</i>
up, last shàng	wear (hat, gloves, glasses, etc) <i>dài</i>
upper berth shàngpù	weather <i>tiānqì</i>
upstairs lóushàng	week <i>xīngqī</i>
us wǒmen	weekend <i>zhōumò</i>
use yòng	weep, cry <i>kū</i>
useful yǒu yòng	welcome <i>huānyíng</i>
USSR Sūlián	well-being, happy <i>xìngfú</i>
usually, ordinary píngcháng	well-known, famous <i>wénmíng</i>
vase huāpíng	West, the West <i>Xīfāng</i>
vegetables shūcài	West Lake <i>Xīhú</i>
Venice Wēinī	west (side) <i>xī(bianr)</i>
vertical shù	Western food <i>Xīcān</i>
very hěn	Westerner <i>Xīfāngrén</i>
very many duō dehěn	what/what? <i>shénme</i>
very, rather tǐng	what about (it)?; how? <i>zěnmeyàng</i>
video recorder lùxiàngjī	whatever you do <i>qiānwàn</i>
vigour hǔqì	what one sees and hears <i>jiànwén</i>
vinegar; jealousy (as in love affairs) cù	what's the matter? <i>zěnme le</i>
visit, sightsee yóulǎn	what's to be done? <i>zěnme bàn</i>
wages gōngzī	
wait dēng	
walk zǒu	
want to, must yào	
wardrobe yīguì	
warm nuǎnhuo	

when *de shíhou*  
 when? *shénme shíhou*  
 where? *nǎr*  
 which? *nǎ* (or *něi*)  
 white *bái*  
 who? *shéi* (or *shuí*)  
 whole, entire *zhěnggè*  
 why? *wèi shénme*  
 will (showing possibility)  
*huì*  
 willing *yuànyì*  
 wind *fēng*  
 window *chuānghu*  
 wine *pútáojiǔ*  
 wine bottle *jiǔpíng*  
 winter *dōngtiān*  
 with, and *gēn*  
 withdraw money *qǔ qián*  
 woman *fùnǚ*  
 work out bill, make bill  
*suàn zhàng*  
 work, to work *gōngzuò*  
 worker *gōngrén*

world *shìjìè*  
 worry about *cāo xīn*  
 worth, deserve *zhídé*  
 wrap up *bǎo shàng*  
 write (characters) *xiě (zì)*

yawn (v-o) *dǎ hāqian*  
 year *nián*  
 year (of age) *suì*  
 year after next *hòunián*  
 yen *Rìyuán*  
 yesterday *zuótiān*  
 yoghurt *suān (niú)nǎi*  
 you *nǐ*  
 you (plural) *nǐmen*  
 you (polite form) *nín*  
 you flatter me *guòjiǎng*  
 young *niánqīng*  
 young fellow *xiǎohuǒzi*  
 younger brother *dìdi*  
 younger sister *mèimeimei*  
 zero *líng*

# character texts

## 1 Making friends (i)

### 第一课 交朋友(1)

李 王先生，你好！

王 李先生，你好！

李 请坐。

王 谢谢。

李 请喝咖啡。

王 谢谢，我不喝咖啡。

李 那么，中国茶行不行？

王 行，谢谢你！我很喜欢喝中国茶。

## 2 Making friends (ii)

### 第二课 交朋友(2)

李 王先生，我给你介绍一下，这是我爱人，周德津。

王 李太太，您好！

李太太 王先生，您好！认识您，我真高兴。

王 请坐，请坐。喝一杯酒吧。

李 谢谢，我喝一杯。

王 李太太呢?  
李太太 谢谢，我不会喝酒。  
王 那么，桔子汁好吗?  
李太太 好，谢谢您。

### 3 Making friends (iii)

#### 第三课 交朋友(3)

王 李 先生，你们有小孩儿吗?  
李 有，我们有两个，一个男孩儿，  
一个女孩儿。  
王 李 男孩儿几岁? 女孩儿几岁?  
李 男孩儿十四岁，女孩儿九岁。  
李太太 王先生结婚了吗?  
王 没有。  
李太太 有对象吗?  
王 ‘对象’是什么意思?  
李 ‘对象’是女朋友的意思。你有女朋  
友吗?  
王 有。  
李太太 她在哪儿? 她也在中国吗?  
王 对，她也在中国。  
李 我想请你们去我们家玩儿，  
好吗?  
王 那太好了。  
李太太 你们明天晚上有空吗?  
王 有空。  
李 那么，请你们俩明天晚上去我们  
家吃饭吧。

王 那太谢谢你们了！几点钟去呢？  
 李太太 六点怎么样？  
 王 行，就六点吧。

#### 4 At the Lis' (i)

#### 第四课 在李先生家(1)

- 王 我给你们介绍一下，这位是我的女朋友，史爱理。这位是李先生，这位是李太太。
- 李太太 史小姐，您好！
- 史李太太 李先生、李太太，你们好！  
请随便坐吧。
- 李太太 史小姐，您也是从英国来的吗？  
是，我也是从英国来的。
- 史李太太 啊，你们俩都是英国人。
- 李太太 史小姐，您在这儿作什么？  
我在这儿学习汉语。
- 史李太太 您在哪个学校学习汉语？  
我在北京大学学习汉语。
- 史李太太 学校里生活怎么样？  
很不错。
- 李太太 你们一定很饿了。我们吃饭吧。  
今天晚上吃中国菜行吗？
- 王 好极了！
- 李太太 别客气，自己来吧。你们会用筷子吗？
- 王 会用，但是用得不好。

- 李 没关系……嗯，你们都用得不错啊！
- 李太太 我做菜做得不好，请原谅。
- 史 您做菜做得很好。
- 李太太 史小姐会做菜吗？
- 史王 李会一点儿，但是技术不高。
- 李史 她英国菜做得非常好。
- 中国菜做得怎么样？
- 李太太 我中国菜做得不怎么样。
- 你们最好少说话，多吃饭吧，要不然菜都凉了！

## 5 At the Lis' (ii)

## 第五课 在李先生家(2)

- 李 别客气，再多吃一点儿。
- 王 吃饱了，菜都很好吃。
- 李太太 你们愿意喝咖啡还是喝茶？
- 王 史 我随便。
- 喝茶吧。
- (喝完了茶)
- 李太太 史小姐，看一看我们的小房子吧？
- 史 好，谢谢您。永寿，你陪李先生谈话吧。
- 李太太 这是厨房，地方很小，所以冰箱、洗衣机都放在外面厅里。我们只有三个房间，儿子一间，女儿一间。

- 史 孩子们有自己的房间可以安安静静地读书。
- 李太太 我和老李的房间只好又当卧室又当客厅。
- 史 你们的客厅布置得很漂亮。电视是彩色的还是黑白的?
- 李太太 是彩色的。要不要看一下?
- 史 不用了。时间不早了,我们(应)该回去了。
- 王 时间过得真快。李先生、李太太,我们得走了,谢谢你们的热情招待。我们玩儿得非常高兴,给你们添了不少麻烦。
- 李 没什么,欢迎你们再来玩儿。
- 王/史 一定来,谢谢你们。再见。
- 李 慢走,慢走。

## 7 My family

### 第七课 我的家庭

我叫张占一。我家在北京。我家有五口人——爸爸、妈妈、哥哥、姐姐和我。我没有弟弟,也没有妹妹。

我姐姐三十岁,还没有找到对象呢(还没有结婚呢!),这种情况在中国很少。哥哥比姐姐小两岁,比我大一岁半。

爸爸、妈妈年纪比较大了。爸爸今年六十一岁,是(一)个老教员,在北京语言学院教外国留学生汉语。

妈妈比爸爸小三岁，以前是个工人，现在已经退休了。他们俩身体非常好。

姐姐在医院当医生，哥哥在部队当兵，所以他们不常在家。

我在北京饭店当服务员，工作有一点儿单调，但是我和同事们的关系很好，所以还过得去。

我们一家人感情也都很好，日子过得还不错。

## 8 My home

### 第八课 我的家

我们住得很简单，只有三间房加上厨房和厕所。父母的卧室同时也当客厅。

我和哥哥睡(在)一个房间，我们每(个)人(都)有一张书桌，在那儿读书总(是)比在客厅里安静得多。

姐姐的房间比我们兄弟俩的那间还小，只放得下一张床、一张小小的桌子和一把椅子。

我们兄弟、姊妹参加工作以后，除了休息那天以外，很少在家，所以住得没有以前那么挤，父母也比以前住得舒服一些。

我想在西方一般住房比我们大些。你们除了卧室以外还有客厅，有的有书房，有的还有饭厅，听说有花园的也很多。

我们家家具不多，客厅里有一张双人床、一个沙发、一个衣柜、一台电视(机)。

还有一套组合音响，是日本货。缝纫机是国产货。

吃饭的时候，大圆桌和椅子都搬进来。冬天天气冷的时候，单位给我们烧暖气。虽然你们发达国家工资比我们高得多，但是我们房租、水电费等都比你们便宜多了。

我们家地方不大，可是按中国现在的标准，我们过得还不错。

## 9 Hotels

### 第九课 旅馆

北京的旅馆单人房间特别少。多数是双人房间。

要是你愿意一个人住双人房间，当然也可以，但是往往要付双人房间的房费。

外国专家和留学生凭工作证或（者）学生证，平常可以享受优待。

住外宾的大部分房间都包括浴室和厕所。浴室里有浴盆和淋浴喷头，也都有毛巾、浴巾、肥皂、卫生纸、玻璃杯等。

每个房间里都有电话、电视、热水瓶、茶叶、茶杯、凉开水什么的。（大）多数住我们饭店的外宾早上吃西餐。

有的人想用汉语订菜。您以前见过中文菜单没有？如果没见过的话，就看看课文下边的菜单吧。服务员从前用算盘算帐，但是现在用计算机的越来越多了。

北京的饭店很多。除了成千上万的游客以外，一部分外国公司的代表(即商人)也住饭店，所以饭店的生意总是很不错的。价钱却越来越贵了，而且服务、设备还不一定跟得上。

我在北京饭店工作，接触过的外国人很多。我们中国人不得不承认他们在某些方面享受一定的特权，即使这些特权有(的)时候只限于随时都可以进饭店上厕所！其实谁用过中国公共厕所，谁都会同情他们这种作法的！

## 10 Weather, dates and seasons 第十课 气候、日期和四季

今年北京的天气很不正常。冬天不冷，夏天也不热。应该下雪的时候并没有下，应该下雨的时候也没有下，真奇怪！

是不是整个世界的气候正在变呢？欧洲平常没有北京那么冷，但是今年反而有的时候比北京还冷。

春天、秋天是北京最好的季节，可惜太短了。要是在中国旅行的话，五月和九月天气最好，晴天多，阴天少。天气一好，公园里的人就很多。老人下棋的下棋，打牌的打牌，聊天儿的聊天儿，早上打太极拳的有的是。中国有些地方比如四川、广东等地在茶馆里坐着喝茶的也很多。

中国人一般一个星期工作五天，象大部分欧洲国家星期六也休息。虽然机关干部星期天休息，有的工厂星期天也照常生产，工人轮流休息。

今天是星期天，天气特别好，男女老少一群一群都出去玩儿。公园里散步的散步，照相的照相，有的喜欢逛大街，商店里总是很挤，整个北京热闹极了。

在中国要(是)想找一个安静的地方，一个人呆一会儿，是很难办到的。你要想晒太阳，就得跟成千上万的人一起晒！反正星期天到处都是人！

今年冬天结冰以后，我经常去滑冰，一下班就跑到北海公园去滑。如果在家就到附近的圆明园或颐和园去滑。

## 11 In the restaurant 第十一课 在饭馆里

张 你们菜订好了没有？

史 订好了，谢谢你。啤酒来了。啊！不是北京啤酒而是青岛啤酒。

张 没关系，青岛啤酒更好喝。您普通话说得真好。

史 过奖，过奖，说得不好。

张 说得很好。您是哪国人？

史 你猜猜吧。

张 不是美国人就是英国人。

- 史 我是英国人。你怎么知道呢?  
张 因为刚才您是跟您朋友说英语! 您朋  
 友也会说汉语吗?  
 史 也会说。  
 张 说得没他好。  
 史 啊! 你们俩的汉语真棒, 学了几年  
 张 了?  
 史 学了两年了。  
 张 您呢? (指的是王永寿)  
 王 学了四年了。  
 张 你们在中国待了很长时间了吧?  
 王 不长, 来了三个多月了。  
 张 这是你们第一次来中国吗?  
 王 不, 她是第一次, 我是第二次。  
 张 你们真行, 发音很清楚, 没什么洋味  
 王 儿, 很标准的普通话。学中文不是很难  
 学吗?  
 王 难是难, 可是也有它容易的地方, 比  
 方说中文发音、语法都并不难, 难的是声调。  
 对我们西方人来说, 中文的四声还是相当困难的。  
 张 写汉字呢?  
 史 写汉字很不容易, 因为我们外国人一  
 般是成年人才开始学中文, 不象你们六、七岁就开  
 始了。当然还有一点, 中文就是你们的母语。  
 张 那倒是。象你们这样的水平, 报纸看  
 得懂吗?

史  
张  
史

看得懂。  
小说呢？

也行，但是不认识的字还要查字典。  
啊！菜来了，真漂亮啊！看起来一定很好吃。

张  
王

那么，你们慢慢儿吃吧，不再打扰你们了。有什么事，随时可以叫我。

好的，谢谢你，有什么事一定找你。  
跟你聊天儿很有意思。

The first number in each entry refers to the chapter, the second to the section within the Grammar of the chapter.

- abbreviations, 4.5, 21.3
- adjectives
  - as verbs, 1.2
  - plus *dēhěn*, 22.4
  - reduplication of, 5.8
  - with or without *de*, 5.7
- adverb (adv. phrase of)
  - order of, 8.1
  - place, 4.3
  - plus *de*, 5.6
  - position of, 1.6
  - 'time how long', 10.12
  - 'time when', 3.8
- auxiliary verbs, 5.14, 12
  
- ba*, 2.7
- bǎ*, 18.1
- bèi*, 21.6
- bǐ*, 7.5
- bié*, 4.7
- bìng*, 10.1
- bù*, 1.4
  - tones on, 1.7
  - plus verb plus *le*, 5.13
- bú shi...ér shi*, 11.1
- bú shi...jiù shi*, 11.2
- bú shi...ma?*, 11.7
- bùguǎn...dōu/yě*, 20.6
- búlùn...dōu/yě*, 20.6
  
- cái*, 11.9
- chéngyǔ*, 21.2
  
- Chinese language, 9.3
- chuān*, 21.8
- chúfēi...cái*, 20.7
- comparative
  - with *bǐ*, 7.5, 8.3
  - with *gēn...yíyàng*, 19.1
  - with *yǒu*, 8.3
- compass, points of, 17.1
- complement, of degree, 4.8
- cóngqián*, 9.5
- conjunctions, position of, 10.15, 12
  
- dě*, plus object, 10.9
- dà*, with ages, 7.6
- dài*, 21.8
- dào...qù/lái*, 10.17
- dates, 15.1
- days, of the week, 10.13
- de*
  - linking clauses, 9.7
  - linking two nouns, 3.5
  - nominalizer, 5.12, 20.8
  - de shíhou*, position of, 8.4
  - děng*, plus noun, 10.10
  - dì*, plus number, 11.6
  - directional endings
    - compound, 8.9, 11.13
    - simple, 5.1 (II)
  - duō*
    - plus noun, 5.15
    - plus verb, 4.9
  - dynasties, 15

- E**arthly Branches, **22**  
**ér**, **19.3**  
**èr**, compared with *liǎng*, **3.2**  
**exclamations**, **22.1**  
**expressions**, colloquial, **19.8**
- f**àng, plus *zài*, **5.4**  
**fánshì . . . dōu**, **20.1**  
**fēi . . . bùkě**, **20.3**  
**Festivals**, **19**  
**'foreign devils'**, **21**  
**FEC**, **19.2, 20**  
**fractions**, **19.4**
- g**éi, **2.1**  
**gēn . . . yiqǐ**, **10.16**  
**gòu**, **19.6**  
**guānxi**, **11**  
**guo**, verbal suffix, **9.2**
- h**ái méi yǒu . . . *ne*, **7.4**  
**háishi**, in questions, **5.2**  
**hǎoxiàng**, **21.4**  
**hé**, **5.9**  
**Heavenly Stems**, **22**  
**huí**, **2.9**  
**hui . . . de**, **9.11**  
**huòzhě**, **9.1**
- indirect object**, position of, **7.9**
- j**iǎ, **17.3**  
**jiào**, **21.6**  
**jiù**, **3.11, 11.9**  
**jiùshí**, **11.10**  
**job description**, **7.8**
- k**ěxī, **10.4**  
**kuài**, plus *yào . . . le*, **16.4**
- l**ǎo, **5.10**  
**le**  
  change of state, **4.6**  
  more on, **11.4**  
  sentence final particle, **7.10**  
  verbal suffix, **3.4**  
  with *kuài* plus *yào*, **16.4**  
  with *tài*, **3.7**
- l**i, **17.4**  
**lián yidiǎn . . . yě/dōu bù**, **21.11**  
**liǎng**, compared with *èr*, **3.2**
- ma**, question form with, **2.10**  
**measure words**, **2.6, 3.1, 4.1, 12**  
  reduplication of, **10.14**  
**měi . . . dōu**, **8.2**  
**money**, **14.1**  
**months**, of the year, **10.5**  
**mǒu**, **9.9**
- n**ames, **1.1, 7.1**  
  foreign, **4.2, 19.9**  
**ne**, **2.8**  
**negative**, double, **9.8**  
**nián**, **8.5**  
**n/n**, **2.4**  
**numbers**, **2.11**  
  approximate, **11.5**  
  telephone, **16.1**
- opposites**, balance with, **21.5**
- p**assive, the, **21.6**  
**percentages**, **19.2**  
**place-words**, **17.2**  
  extensions of, **19.5**  
**pluralizer suffix *men***, **5.5**  
**poetry**, **22**  
**progressive aspect**, **10.3**  
**proverbs**, **21.2, 22.5**  
**punctuation**, **5.16**
- q**ǐng, **1.3**  
**question**, answering of, **3.6**  
**question form**, positive and negative, **1.5**  
**question words**  
  their position, **3.3**  
  used in a non-question way, **9.10**
- r**àng, **21.6**  
**receipts**, **18**  
**resultative verbs**, **5.1, 11.12, 12**  
  potential, **7.13**  
**rúguō (de huà), jiù . . .**, **9.4**  
**RMB**, **19, 20**

*shàng*

- adj./noun plus *shàng*, 20.4  
 resultative verb ending, 18.3
- shǎo*  
 plus noun, 5.15  
 plus verb, 4.9
- shi*, 2.3
- shì bu shi*, 10.2
- shì . . . de*, 4.4
- shòu*, used in the passive, 21.6
- suīrán . . . dànshí*, 8.12
- telephone numbers, 16.1
- tiān*, 8.5
- time,  
 telling the, 3.10  
 when, 3.8, 12  
 how long, 10.12, 12
- titles, 15.2
- tóng*, 21.7
- topic construction, 2.5, 7.11
- trains, 19
- verb  
 plus *chéng*, 20.2  
 plus object, 3.9  
 plus object *de*, v-o, 10.8  
 reduplication of, 5.3
- verbal suffix  
*guo*, 9.2  
*zhe*, 10.11
- voice, 8.10
- work unit, 8
- wúlùn . . . dōu*, 20.6

*xiān V<sub>1</sub>, zài V<sub>2</sub>, 18.4*

- xiàng*, 21.4  
*xiǎo*, 5.10  
 with ages, 7.6

- yāo*, one, 19
- yě*, 7.3
- yě . . . yě*, 21.10
- yī* + measure word, 7.7
- yī* + noun, 7.14
- yī . . . jiù*, 10.7
- yǐ*, 17.3
- yǐbiān . . . yǐbiān . . .*, 21.1
- yǐhòu*, position of, 8.4
- yīn* and *yáng*, 21.9
- yǐqián*,  
 comparison with *cóngqián*, 9.5  
 position of, 8.4
- yǐxià*, 2.2
- yǐxiē*, 8.6
- yòu*, 19.4
- yǒu yidiǎn* plus adj., 7.12
- yòu . . . yòu . . .*, 5.11
- yǒude*, 8.7
- yuè lái yuè . . .*, 9.6

- zánmen*, compared with *wǒmen*, 21.12
- zěnme*, 11.3
- zěnmeyàng*, 11.3
- zhě*, verbal suffix, 10.11
- zhě*, as nominalizer, 22.3
- zhè zhǒng*, compared with *zhè yàng de*, 11.11
- zodiac, the Chinese, 22

teach  
yourself

## **beginner's chinese script**

elizabeth scurfield & song lianyi

- Are you interested in the Chinese script?
- Are you planning a business trip or holiday?
- Do you want to understand simple signs and notices in China?

**Beginner's Chinese Script** will help you get to grips with reading and writing simple Chinese, whether you are studying the language or planning a trip for business or pleasure. The step-by-step approach will build your confidence to read and write mainly simplified characters in a variety of real contexts.

teach  
yourself

## **world cultures: china**

kenneth wilkinson

- Are you interested in the story of China and the Chinese?
- Do you want to understand how the country works today?
- Are you planning a visit to China or learning Chinese?

**World Cultures: China** will give you a basic overview of China – the country, its language, its people and its culture – and will enrich any visit or course of study. Vocabulary lists and 'Taking it Further' sections at the end of every unit will equip you to talk and write confidently about all aspects of Chinese life.

teach  
yourself

## **mandarin chinese conversation**

elizabeth scurfield & song lianyi

- Do you want to talk with confidence?
- Are you looking for basic conversation skills?
- Do you want to understand what people say to you?

**Mandarin Chinese Conversation** is a 3-hour, all-audio course to use at any time, whether you want a quick refresher before a trip or you are a complete beginner. The 20 dialogues on CDs 1 and 2 will teach you the Chinese you will need to speak and understand, without getting bogged down with grammar. CD 3, uniquely, teaches skills for listening and understanding. The perfect accompaniment to **Beginner's Chinese** and **Chinese** in the **teach yourself** range.